

L01-01 begin 12'48"

§ Lesson 1 A puma at large 逃遁的美洲狮

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

◆puma	n. 美洲狮
◆spot	v. 看出, 发现
◆evidence	n. 证据
◆accumulate	v. 积累, 积聚
◆oblige	v. 使...感到必须
◆hunt	n. 追猎; 寻找
◆blackberry	n. 黑莓
◆human being	人类
◆corner	v. 使走投无路, 使陷入困境
◆trail	n. 一串, 一系列
◆print	n. 印痕
◆cling (clung, clung)	v. 粘
◆convince	v. 使...信服
◆somehow	adv. 不知怎么搞地, 不知什么原因
◆disturb	v. 令人不安

学习词汇时仅知道汉语语义是不够的, 要把单词放在语句中体会其应用

学习关键句型结构时则要把它放在段落结构或文章里

★spot v. 看出, 发现

pick out / see / recognize / catch sight of
eg: A tall man is easy to spot in the crowd.

He has good eye for spotting mistakes.
他有敏锐的识别错误的能力。

spot(做动词时候) = see: 强调结果、辨别出、看见、识别、发现。

find 强调发现的结果。

find out 查出事实真相。

discover 做出重大发现

notice 注意到

observe 观察

watch 观察活动中的人或画面

spot n. 斑点

eg: There is a white spot on the shirt.
on the spot

1, 立刻, 马上 (at once, immediately)

Anyone breaking the rules will be asked to leave on the spot.

2, at the place of the action 在现场

Wherever she is needed, she is quickly on the spot.

★evidence [u]n. 证据

When the police arrived, he had already destroyed the evidence.

evidence=proof

in evidence: 显而易见的。

He was in evidence at the party.

evidently adv.

evident adj.

★accumulate vt, vi. 积累, 积聚

accumulate 强调积累的过程

As the evidence accumulates, experts from the zoo felt obliged to investigate.

gather vt. 聚集, 把某人召集在某处

collect 收集, 采集

assemble 集合, 集会, vt. 装配

hoard 大量地贮存

The squirrel hoards up nuts for the cold winter.

hoard up= store up

amass 积聚 (主要用于诗歌和文学作品)

★oblige v. 使...感到必须

feel obliged to do sth. 感觉有必要做某事

be obliged to do sth 被迫做某事

★hunt n. 追猎; 寻找

L01-01 end 12'48"

L01-02 begin 13'15"

run after 强调追赶、追求。

seek 追寻 (梦想, 理想) = pursue

chase 追赶。

hunt for

search 搜寻某处为了寻找到某人或某物

★corner v. 使走投无路, 使陷入困境

corner n. 角落

at the corner of the street

in the corner of the room

on the corner of the desk

be cornered被逼得走投无路

常用于被动语态:

The thief was cornered at last.

The problem cornered me. 这个问题把我难倒了。

★trail n. 一串, 一系列

trail= follow vt. 跟踪

eg: The police trailed the criminal to the place where he was hiding.

★cling (clung, clung) v. 粘

eg: She is always clinging to her mother.

He clung to the hope that he would succeed. (抱有, 怀有)

stick 粘住 stick to 坚持 sticky adj. 粘的

★convince vt. 使...信服

convince sb. of sth 使 sb 相信 sth

和宾语从句 that 搭配使用

没有宾语的情况下要采用主系表结构: be convinced

sb be convinced sb 相信

★somehow adv. 不知怎么搞地, 不知什么原因
by some means, in some way, for some reason unknown
somewhat == a little

★disturb v. 令人不安
disturbing adj. 令人不安的 disturbed
感到不安的
surprising 令人吃惊的 surprised
感到吃惊的
exciting 令人激动的 excited
感到激动的

【Text】

§ **Lesson 1 A puma at large** 逃遁的美洲狮
listen to the tape then answer the question below. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.
Where must the puma have come from?

Pumas are large, cat-like animals which are found in America. When reports came into London Zoo that a wild puma had been spotted forty-five miles south of London, they were not taken seriously. However, as the evidence began to accumulate, experts from the Zoo felt obliged to investigate, for the descriptions given by people who claimed to have seen the puma were extraordinarily similar.

The hunt for the puma began in a small village where a woman picking blackberries saw 'a large cat' only five yards away from her. It immediately ran away when she saw it, and experts confirmed that a puma will not attack a human being unless it is cornered. The search proved difficult, for the puma was often observed at one place in the morning and at another place twenty miles away in the evening. Wherever it went, it left behind it a trail of dead deer and small animals like rabbits. Paw prints were seen in a number of places and puma fur was found clinging to bushes. Several people complained of 'cat-like noises' at night and a businessman on a fishing trip saw the puma up a tree. The experts were now fully convinced that the animal was a puma, but where had it come from? As no pumas had been reported missing from any zoo in the country, this one must have been in the possession of a private collector and somehow managed to escape. The hunt went on for several weeks, but the puma was not caught. It is disturbing to think that a dangerous wild animal is still at large in the quiet countryside.

【课文讲解】

at large

- 1: 逃遁的, 没有被控制的。
- 2: 详细的(in detail)
- 3: 总体来讲 (as a whole)

在英文的表达方式中, 首先呈现给读者的是结果。写议论文的时候要注意把握观点

L01-02 end 13'15"

L01-03 begin 13'09"

eg: Pandas are large cat-like animals which are found in Asia.

life-like 栩栩如生的

一般来讲定语从句和同位语从句紧随在被修饰名词后面, 但为了保持句子平衡, 也可以把谓语动词放到从句之前

定语从句只是对于被修饰词的补充说明、修饰。

同位语从句则是讲述被修饰名词的内容

定语从句的引导词:

指人: 主语 who; 宾语 who/whom; 定语 whose

表达事物: that(也可指人)/ which

时间状语: when; 地点状语: where; 原因状语: why

同位语从句: 名词做主语、宾语时, 关系词用 that 而不是 which

时间 when; 地点 where

eg: An idea came to her that she might do the experiment in another way.

I have no idea what has happened to him.

定语从句中没有 what 这个关系词, 但它可以引导同位语从句

(An idea) ... come to sb. 某人突然想到了……

take sth. seriously == deal with sth. seriously
认真(严肃)对待某事

take sth. lightly: 草率对待某事

as 随着

过去分词做定语

声称曾经作过某事: claim to have done sth

I still remember the school where I studied English.

L01-03 end 13'09"

L01-04 begin 11'49"

confirm: be sure, be certain

search=hunt

把某物留在后面: leave behind

Wherever he went, the wounded soldier left

behind him a trail of blood.伤员所到之处，都留下道道血迹。

英文的表达方式重点在于突出客观事实，而中文则善于运用动作的执行者

complain of / about :抱怨

on + 名词: 强调动作正在进行

on the rise:在上升

on the increase: 在增加

on the watch: 在观看

on the match:在比赛中

on the fishing trip:在钓鱼的途中

on holiday: 在度假

fully: completely, entirely

in the possession of sb==in sb's possession
归某人所有

in possession of sth. 拥有某物

take possession of 拥有

eg: The beautiful car is in my possession / in the possession of me.

I am in possession of the beautiful car.

The person in possession of the big house is excited.

It is disturbing to think that 一想到……就心里不安

eg: It is disturbing to think that I felt my examination.

熟读并背诵第一自然段

总结:

at large

take sth. seriously

cling to

leave behind

complain of

in the possession of / in possession of

feel obliged to investigate

a woman picking blackberries

a businessman on a fishing trip

go on several weeks

in the quiet countryside

L01-04 end 11'49"

L01-05 begin 10'29"

【Exercises】

A. Complete these sentences by adding a suitable word to the end of each one:

1 What are you looking _____?

2 Where is your mother going _____?

3 Whom has the letter been sent _____?

4 This is the house I was born _____?

5 What does your decision depend _____?

key: 1 at / for 2 to 3 to 4 in 5 on

B. Write these sentences again changing the position of the words in italics. Where possible, omit the words **whom** or **which**.

1 He is the man **about** whom we have heard so much.

2 The shelf **on** which you put those books has collapsed.

3 **From** whom did you receive a letter?

4 This is the road **by** which we came.

5 Where is the pencil **with** which you were playing?

key:

1 He is the man we have heard so much.

2 The shelf you put those books has collapsed.

3 whom did you receive a letter from?

4 This is the road we came by.

5 Where is the pencil you were playing?

注意: 3 whom 不能省略

定语从句中 **which** 以及指代人的做宾语的 **whom**, 在非正式用法当中可以省略。省略时, 介词不能前置到关系代词 **whom, which** 前, 只能用于非固定的动词短语后面。

以 look 为例

look at: 注视

look for: 寻找 介词不能前置

live in: 居住 介词可以前置

eg: This is the old house in which he lived. / This is the old house he lived in

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题 P17

1. Experts eventually decided to investigate_____.

a. because they did not believe that pumas existed in England.

b. because they wanted a puma for the London Zoo.

c. when a woman saw a puma in a small village.

d. because people's descriptions of the puma had a lot in common.

要求陈述原因:

1. D

in common-similar

2. What particular piece of evidence persuaded the experts that a puma had been seen in the village?

a. The puma had not attacked the woman.

b. The woman had described the animal she had seen as 'a large cat'.

c. A puma had come very close to a

human being.

d. The puma had behaved like a cat.

A 只是一个具体的特定的事例，阅读理解题的时候要把握中心大意

B large cat 关键性用词

2. B

Pumas are large, cat-like animals which are found in America.

3. What was the problem the experts were unable to solve?

a. How the puma had managed to cover such great distances within a day.

b. How the puma had escaped from a zoo.

c. Whom the puma had belonged to.

d. How the puma had climbed a tree.

A 文章中未提到

3. C

做理解题时要紧扣主题，紧扣中心大意

文章最后一句话总结了大意：

It is disturbing to think that a dangerous wild animal is still at large in the quiet countryside.

句型结构题和词汇题是关键

4. The accumulating evidence made the experts ____ the animal was a puma. (lines 4-6)

a. to think b. thinking c. think d. thought

make----make sb. do, be made to do

主动语态中不定式 to 的符号应该省略

被动语态中不定式 to 的符号必须补充完整

L01-05 end 10'29"

L01-06 begin 9'53"

5 People said ____ the puma.(lines 5-6)

a. to have seen b. to see c. they saw

d. they had seen

把say改成claim---People claimed to have seen the puma.

5. D---清楚的道明了动作发生的先后关系

6 ____ , it immediately ran away. (lines 8-9)

a. Observing her b. On being observed c.

Having been observed d. On her being observed

与原句中的when意思要一致，when引导的时间状语从句表示一

结构形式和as soon as 相一致的

如果用主动：On observing her, it immediately ran away.

On seeing me, he waved to me.

6. B

7 Pumas never attack a human being

except ____ cornered.(lines 9)

a. they are b. being c. that they are d.

when they are

原句中unless---if...not / except on the condition that

when=if

except可以和名词/名词性从句进行搭配，也可以是when / if 引导的从句形式。

7. D

8 The experts were now fully convinced that the animal ____ a puma. (lines 13-14)

a. must be b. should have been c. can

only be d. could only have been

must be 只是对客观现实的推测，时态不一致

8. D

情态动词表达推测的语意概念时，对于过去事实推测一定要用于情态动词have以及过去分词形式进行搭配。

9 The woman saw 'a large cat' ____ five yards away from her.(lines 7-8)

a. at least b. four or c. no more than d. within

no more than = only

within = not more than

9. C

10 A puma will not attack a human being unless it feels itself to be ____ .(line 9)

a. in a corner b. in a trap c. at an

angle d. under cover

in a corner 表示处于困境、尴尬的境地

in a trap 表示落于陷阱中

at an angle 表示弯曲的、不直的

10. B

11 A businessman on a fishing trip is probably someone who ____.(line 13)

a. sells fish b. fishes for pleasure c.

nets fish d. earns his living as a

fisherman

fishes for pleasure 钓鱼为了游玩

12 A private collector is a man who collects ____.(lines 15-16)

a. for his own benefit b. on his own c.

in private d. unknown to the public

12. A

on his own = alone

L01-06 end 9'53"

L02-01 begin 11'49"

§ Lesson 2 Thirteen equals one 十三等于

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

- ◆equal v. 等于
- ◆raise v. 募集; 筹(款)
- ◆vicar n. 牧师
- ◆torchlight n. 手电筒

★equal v. 等于

A equal B

与 ... 相匹敌 None of us can equal her, either in beauty or as a dancer.

eg: Mary is quite equal to John in brains.

be equal to + n: 1. 与...相匹敌

2. 有能力做某事 to- 介词

eg: I am equal to running the company.

★raise v. 募集; 筹(款)

raise money 筹款

raise price 提高

raise a horse 饲养

raise a family 供养

raise wheat 种植小麦

raise an army 招募

raise a shout 发出喊声

★vicar n. 牧师

★torchlight n. 手电筒

【Text】

§ Lesson 2 Thirteen equals one 十三等于一

Our vicar is always raising money for one cause or another, but he has never managed to get enough money to have the church clock repaired. The big clock which used to strike the hours day and night was damaged many years ago and has been silent ever since.

One night, however, our vicar woke up with a start: the clock was striking the hours! Looking at his watch, he saw that it was one o'clock, but the bell struck thirteen times before it stopped. Armed with a torch, the vicar went up into the clock tower to see what was going on. In the torchlight, he caught sight of a figure whom he immediately recognized as Bill Wilkins, our local grocer.

'Whatever are you doing up here Bill?' asked the vicar in surprise.

'I'm trying to repair the bell,' answered Bill. 'I've been coming up here night after night for weeks now. You see, I was hoping to give you a surprise.'

'You certainly did give me a surprise!' said the vicar. 'You've probably woken up everyone in the village as well. Still, I'm glad the bell is working again.'

'That's the trouble, vicar,' answered Bill. 'It's working all right, but I'm afraid that at one o'clock it will strike thirteen times and there's nothing I can do about it.'

'We'll get used to that, Bill,' said the vicar. 'Thirteen is not as good as one, but it's better than nothing. Now let's go downstairs and have a cup of tea.'

【课文讲解】

现在进行时和 always 等频度副词的搭配——表示说话人带有的情感色彩

Tom is always doing homework.

Tom is always does his homework.

He is always making noises.

one or another 表示某种、这样或那样

get enough money 筹集足够的资金来做某事

I have to get enough money to have my house repaired.

have the church clock repaired-----have sth. done 找某人来做某事

have the plane repaired have hair cut

某人所遭受到的意外某种情况-----主语必须是发出动作的人

His wallet was stolen. He had his wallet stolen.

used to:过去常常做,而现在不再发生的事情了

He used to smoke every day.

L02-01 end 11'49"

L02-02 begin 12'45"

however 用于口语,主要用于句首,作文中,最好用在句中、句尾,要用逗号分隔开来

He said that it was so, he was mistake, however.

or: He said that it was so, however, he was mistake.

I know his story, however, I wouldn't like to tell you.

I know his story, I, however, wouldn't like to tell you.

however 可用 nevertheless nonetheless 替换

start: 惊跳、惊奇

Eg: The voice made him start.

What a start you give me.你真吓了我一跳

He stood up with a start.

before ...才

Nearly a week past before he could explain what had happen to him.

Armed with a torch...

现在分词和过去分词的用法 looking

分词做状语/定语时，一定要注意它和逻辑主语要呼应一致

In the torchlight

非正式用语中 whom 可以省略掉

recognized sb as 认出某人是

regard sb as, think of sb as, treat sb as (把某人对待为), have on sb as (把某人尊敬为)

whatever: ever 用来加强语气

night after night 一夜连着一夜

day after day / year after year / week after week / bus after bus

you certainly did give me...

did

肯定句中常用 do, did, does 加强语气和情感色彩，一定要位于动词原形之前。

Eg: You do like beauty today.

as well 用在句尾相当于 too, 主要用在肯定句中，但比 too 所表达的语意更优秀

still 用于句首，用逗号分隔开来，表达一个转折的关系。虽然如此，但是

get used to, be used to do, be accustomed to, get accustomed to 都表示习惯于

get 强调渐进的过程，be 强调习惯了的的状态

Eg: We are used to the cold weather here.

You will get used to the cold weather here. 你很快会适应这寒冷的天气的。

L02-02 end 12'45"

L02-03 begin 10'56"

【Special difficulties】P20

In

1. prep 表达惊奇，恐惧，失望或生气等感情色彩的名词搭配连用，在句中起状语的作用

in surprise; in astonishment; in alarm; in embarrassment; in amazement; in despair; in dismay; in anger; in disappointment

2. prep 表达以、用：用于语言，书写材料，色彩或声音等方面

in English; in pencil; in ink; in a few words; in such a high voice; in oil; in red; in code

3, 用于状态、情况或处境

in trouble; in difficulty; in bed; in a hurry; in debt; in love with sb; in tears; in good order; in good repair; in good health; in poor health; in the bad mood; in the good mood; in haste; in a favor of excitement; in poverty; in luxury

【Exercise】

Use a phrase with in in place of the words in italics

1 I left home *very quickly* so as not to miss the train.

2 I suppose I shall finish this *eventually*.

3 In the early morning there was not a person *to be seen*.

4 Shall I write *with a pen or with a pencil*?

5 They haven't many interests *which they share*.

6 Why is that little girl *crying*?

key: 1 in a hurry 2 in the end 3 in sight 4 in ink / in pencil 5 in common 6 in tears

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 The church clock did not work because _____.

a it was too expensive to repair

b it disturbed the vicar's sleep

c Bill Wilkins only worked at night

d the bell had been out of order for many years

1. D ∞ was damaged

2 The vicar was surprised to see Bill Wilkins in the clock tower because _____.

a. Bill Wilkins had been hoping to surprise him

b. it was an unusual time and place to find him

c. he had expected to find a figure

d. the clock had struck thirteen times

2. B

3 The vicar offered Bill Wilkins a cup of tea because _____.

a. he thought that Bill Wilkins was thirsty

b. thanks to him, the clock would now strike once an hour

c. he was grateful for the trouble Bill Wilkins had taken

d. he was pleased to have been woken up for nothing

为...表示感谢: be grateful for / be thankful for
不辞辛劳地做某事: take the trouble to do sth.

3. C

Structure

4 In the past the big clock _____ the hours. (ll 3-4)

a. struck always

b. always struck

c.

was always striking

d. has always been

striking

In the past 是过去时态的标志; always 用在实义动词之前

4. B

5 It was not until the thirteenth stroke_ the bell stopped. (I.7)

a. before b. when c. so that d. that

It was not until...that... 一直到.....才.....

Eg: It was not until midnight that snow stopped.

5. D

6 The vicar asked Bill _____ doing in the church tower.(I.10)

a. what was he b. what he was c. what he is d. whatever was he

宾语从句的语序是陈述句语序

6. B

7 'I _____ it all right, but I'm afraid...'(II.15-16)

a. shall mend b. am mending c. have mended d. mended

突出结果或者对现在的影响, 现在完成时

7. C

8 'We'll get used to _____ that, Bill.'(I.17)

a. hearing b. hear c. the sound d. having heard

to 介词, 表示习惯于

8. A

Vocabulary

9 Money which is collected for a cause is known as _____.(II.1-2)

a. cash b. a fund c. a scholarship d. an investment

fund 基金 cash 现金 scholarship 奖学金 investment 投资

9. B

10 A grocer is a man who _____.

a. runs a shop b. eats a lot c. sells bread d. surprises people

runs a shop 经营商店

10. A

11 'I've been coming here _____ for weeks now.'(I.11)

a. every night b. all night c. the following night d. several nights

night after night = every night

11. A

12 '_____ .I'm glad the bell is working again.' (I.14)

a. Yet b. Good c. Just the same d. Even now

still 尽管如此, 依旧, 仍然= Just the same

12. C

It's raining, still I must go out.

still 连接性副词, 相当于 in spite of that, even

though, just the same

yet 但是, 然而

I have failed, yet I shall try again.

This picture is not too valuable, still I like it.

L03-01 begin 10'59"

§ Lesson 3 An unknown goddess 无名女神

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

◆goddess n. 女神

◆archaeologist n. 考古学家

◆Aegean adj. 爱琴海的

◆explore v. 考察, 勘探

◆promontory n. 海角

◆prosperous adj. (经济上) 繁荣的, 昌盛的

◆civilization n. 文明

◆storey n. 楼层

◆drainage n. 排水

◆worship n. 崇拜

◆sacred adj. 宗教的, 神圣的

◆fragment n. 碎片

◆remains n. 遗物, 遗迹, 废墟

◆classical adj. (希腊罗马) 古文化的

◆reconstruct v. 修复

◆rest v. 倚放, 放置

◆hip n. 屁股, 臀部

◆full-length adj. (裙衣) 拖地长的

◆graceful adj. 优雅的

◆identity n. 身份

★goddess n. 女神

★archaeologist n. 考古学家

★Aegean adj. 爱琴海的

★explore v. 考察, 勘探

The archaeologists are exploring the cave.

exploration n.

explorer n. 探险家

★promontory n. 海角

★prosperous adj. (经济上) 繁荣的, 昌盛的

Our finance is prosperous.

thriving 昌盛的, 兴旺的

booming 蓬勃的, 景气的

flourishing 繁茂的, 健康的

★civilization n. 文明

high level of civilization 高度文明

civilize v.

★storey n. 楼层

★drainage n. 排水

★worship n. 崇拜
respect; admire
Who do you worship in the world?
warship n. 军舰战船

★sacred adj. 宗教的, 神圣的
holy adj. 神圣的, 圣洁的
solemn adj. 庄严的, 庄重的
sacred music 圣乐
sacred promise 神圣的诺言

★fragment n. 碎片

★remains n. 遗物, 遗迹, 废墟

★classical adj. (希腊罗马) 古文化的
classical music 古典音乐
classical education 人文科学教育
classic adj. 第一流的
This is a classic example of love at the first sight.
classic n. 杰作, 经典之作

★reconstruct v. 修复
re-重新, 再次
construct 构造, 建造, 组织
build house 造建筑物
put up a tent
construct a sentence
construct a broken statuary
erect: build high buildings
erect monument 建造纪念碑
erect clock tower 建造钟楼
setup; establish; found 建立
Eg: setup students' union
 establish a school / rule
 found a country
construction n.
constructive adj. 有教育意义的
constructor n. 建设者

★rest v. 倚放, 放置

★hip n. 屁股, 臀部
[口] 在服用兴奋剂, 宗教信仰方面赶时髦的人; 消息灵通人士; adj. 通晓的, 见闻广的
Eg: Mary is a real hip. 玛丽真是赶时髦
The guy isn't a hip. 这家伙什么都不懂
joined at the hip 表示交情极厚的
Eg: These two are joined at the hip.
shoot from the hip 信口开河
Eg: Sorry, I said that I shouldn't have shot

from the hip.

★full-length adj. (裙衣) 拖地长的
a full-length dress

★graceful adj. 优雅的
a graceful lady
elegant (behavior)

★identity n. 身份

【Text】

§ Lesson 3 An unknown goddess 无名女神

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

How did the archaeologists know that the statue was a goddess?

Some time ago, an interesting discovery was made by archaeologists on the Aegean island of Kea. An American team explored a temple which stands in an ancient city on the promontory of Ayia Irini. The city at one time must have been prosperous, for it enjoyed a high level of civilization. Houses--often three storeys high---were built of stone. They had large rooms with beautifully decorated walls. The city was even equipped with a drainage system, for a great many clay pipes were found beneath the narrow streets.

The temple which the archaeologists explored was used as a place of worship from the fifteenth century B.C. until Roman times. In the most sacred room of the temple, clay fragments of fifteen statues were found. Each of these represented a goddess and had, at one time, been painted. The body of one statue was found among remains dating from the fifteenth century B.C. Its missing head happened to be among remains of the fifth century B.C. This head must have been found in Classical times and carefully preserved. It was very old and precious even then. When the archaeologists reconstructed the fragments, they were amazed to find that the goddess turned out to be a very modern-looking woman. She stood three feet high and her hands rested on her hip. She was wearing a full-length skirt which swept the ground. Despite her great age, she was very graceful indeed, but, so far, the archaeologists have been unable to discover her identity.

【课文讲解】

an interesting discovery: 强调 discovery, 体

现发现这个动作被考古学家做出

主动语态难以突出重点 archaeologists made an interesting discovery

L03-01 end 10'59"

L03-02 begin 12'42"

英文表达: 结果、影响、效果为主语, 强调对客观事实的陈述

An American team explored a temple which...
which 引导定语从句, 修饰限定 temple

which stands in an ancient city on...
which = that; stand = lie, situate (vt.) locate (vt.)

An American team explored a temple which is located / situated in...

An American team explored a temple which lie in...

stand 表示高高坐落于, 矗立于

Eg: She stands 1.75m. / A great tree stands on the mount.

The city at one time must have been prosperous, for it...

for 引导原因状语从句, 对主句的附加说明

because 引导原因状语从句, 重点突出原因

Eg: The day broke for the birds were singing.

at one time: 表达曾经, 一度; 过去时态的标志, once

must have been 对过去事实肯定的推测

enjoyed a high level of civilization. 享有高度文明

with...

Eg: a young man with broad shoulders / an old lady with black hair

beautifully decorated 过去分词做定语

a beautifully dressed lady 衣着漂亮的女士 / a deserted carpark 废弃的停车场

a white painted door 被粉刷成白色的门

现在分词做定语, 被修饰词与修饰词之间为: 逻辑主动关系

a boy climbing the tree / the students reading in the room

The city was even equipped with... for... were found...

be equipped with 配备, 装备

Eg: the car was equipped with air

conditioning.

for 引导原因状语从句

beneath the narrow streets / under the narrow streets

prep. beneath = under 正下方

He is standing under / beneath the umbrella.

under: 在进行中, under control 控制之中; under discussion 讨论之中; under repairs 修理之中

below: 在下方, 强调斜下方

Eg: She is sitting below the window.

The temple which...

be used as / be used to be 把...用作为

Eg: The box was used as a desk in the small village school.

The wooden box was used as a bookcase.

The wooden box is used to contain books.

In the most sacred room of...

Each of these represented ... been painted.

represent vt. 代表

I represent all the classmates.

The body of one statue was found...

dating 现在分词, 修饰 remains

the customs dating from 1990

date from 追溯到, 从... 开始

The tradition dates from the time when his grandfather was young.

L03-02 end 12'42"

L03-03 begin 12'56"

The castle dates from the 14th century.

The castle dates back to the century.

Its missing head happened to be among remains of...

happen to 强调事情的偶然发生

Eg: I happen to have driven that kind of car. 我恰巧开过那种汽车。

He happened to find the ticket in his pocket. 他恰巧在口袋里找到那张票。

句式: It happens that.....

Eg: It happens that I met her on my way to work

I happened to meet her on my way to work

happen on 巧遇, 偶然发现, 偶遇

Eg: I happened on this old picture in the

back of the drawer.

Guess, who I happened on while I was in London last month?

reconstruct: put together, piece together, restore

四个形容词: **amazed:very much surprised**

surprised; astonished; amazed; astounded
感到惊讶的, 语气递增

astonished: much surprised

amazed: very much surprised 惊奇

astounded 非常惊讶, 尺愕, 惊奇

to find... / to discover... / to realize...

I'm not surprised to see you here.

turn out 表明结果

turn out (to be) + n./adj.

Eg: Our party turned out (to be) a success

the concert turned out to be failure.

It turned out that..... 原来是(表示结果)

that 从句, 或其他名词从句, it 作形式主语

Eg: It turned out that the diamond had been in the bank all the time.

It turned out that his statement was false.

as it turns out 人们后来发现

Eg: As it turns out, there was not need to worry.

As it turns out, the report was mistaken.
人们后来发现,这篇报告被弄错了。

She stood three feet high and her hands rested on th hips.

rest on = depend on, lean on

His hand rested lightly on my shoulder.

which swept the ground 进一步说明拖地的, 曳地的

despite / in spite of +n. /动名词

It is still a problem for the archaeologists up to now.

so far,up to now 都是完成时的标志

discover her identity: find out he identity

L03-03 end 12'56"

L03-04 begin 12'58"

【Special difficulties】

happen (to) , it happened that...

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 The interesting discovery made by the archaeologists was_____ .

- a. that the city had once been prosperous
- b. that the temple had been used as a place of worship
- c. they found the fifteen statues had been painted
- d. that they were not the first to have found the head of the goddess

It's missing head happened to be among remains of the fifth century B.C.'

1. D

2 The city 'enjoyed a high level of civilization' . This is confirmed by the fact that _____ .

- a. some of the houses were built only one storey high
- b. a great number of fragments were found in the temple
- c. the city had been built on clay
- d. advanced techniques had been employed in building and decorating

This is confirmed by the fact that 引导同位语从句, 补充说明 fact 的内容。

be employed in:被应用在...方面

'...The city at one time must have been prosperous , for it enjoyed a high level of civilization. Houses--often three storeys high--were built of stone . They had large rooms with beautifully decorated walls. The city was even equipped with a drainage system...'

3 In seeking to establish the identity of the reconstructed _____ statue, _____ the archaeologists _____ .

- a. tried to determine which goddess it represented
- b. pieced together the fragments they found
- c. discovered that it was more modern than any of the other statues
- d. wondered whether it belonged to the fifth or the fifteenth century

in doing sth: 在...方面

structure

4 The city had once known _____ .(ll.4-5)

- a, a prosperity b, the prosperous c. the prosperity d. prosperity

重点词汇 know:知道, 认识; 经历过, 曾经有过 (=

experience), 这是一个文学用语, 比 experience 更加正式

5 The temple _____ used as a place of worship since Roman times. (ll.9-10)
a. was b. has not been c. had been
d. was not

since: 自从 主句的主干时态为现在完成时

6 They found _____ that the goddess turned out to be ...(ll.14-15)
a. surprisingly b. with surprise c. to their surprise
d. a surprise

to their surprise: 使某人感到惊讶的是 (在句中可做独立的状语, 句子的主语不必是某个人)

with surprise: 惊讶地 (首先, 必须与行为动词连用, 其次, 句子的主语必须是某个人)

Eg: To my great disappointment the train had already left.

With satisfaction / delight / dismay
He smoked his cigarette with satisfaction.
He went home with dismay.

To our dismay the party proved to be a failure.

7 _____ being very old, she was very graceful. (ll.16-17)
a. Although b. In spite of c. Even d. Even though

despite = in spite of (可以和名词、代词、动名词搭配)

8 So far, the archaeologists _____ to discover her identity. (l.17)
a. have been impossible b. have not been able
c. cannot have been d. could not

so far 现在完成时的标志

如果用 possible / impossible, 要采用形式主语 it
...it has been impossible for the archaeologists to discover her identity.

Vocabulary

9 In the most _____ room of the temple...(l.10)
a. holy b. religious c. frightening d. colourful

原文中用到了 sacred (宗教的, 神圣的)

religious 宗教的

frightening 令人害怕的

colourful 丰富多彩的

10 The head was carefully preserved. It was _____. (l.13)

a. well done b. conserved c. maintained
c. in good condition

state

well done 侧重强调做得好

conserve = keep from being wasted, damaged, lost, destroyed

“不用尽或耗尽某物, 保留”

conserve your energy you needed

we must conserve our forest

maintain: 通过修缮保养, 不使...破损 (强调动作的过程) “维修, 保养”

11 The goddess _____ to be a very modern-looking woman. (l.15)
a. appeared b. proved c. resolved
d. changed

turn out = prove

12 But, _____ the archaeologists have been unable...(l.17)
a. beforehand b. until now c. for a long time
d. at this distance

so far => until now, up till now

beforehand: (adv.) 事先 = in advance

at this distance (of / in time) 时隔已久

Eg: I can hardly remember him at this distance of time.

L03-04 end 12'58"

L04-01 begin 12'30"

§ Lesson 4 The double life of Alfred Bloggs

阿尔弗雷德·布洛格斯的双重生活

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

◆ manual	adj. 体力的
◆ collar	n. 衣领
◆ sacrifice	v. 牺牲, 献出
◆ privilege	n. 好处
◆ dustman	n. 清洁工
◆ corporation	n. 公司
◆ overalls	n. 工作服
◆ shower	n. 淋浴
◆ secret	n. 秘密
◆ status	n. 地位

★ manual adj. 体力的

= physical

manual work: 体力工作

mental work: 脑力工作

★ collar n. 衣领

white-collar: 白领 (do mental work)

blue-collar: 蓝领 (do manual work)

(get) hot under the collar: 怒气冲天

★sacrifice v. 牺牲, 献出

vt. to give up for good purpose

Eg: sacrifice one's life for the country
sacrifice time

n.

make many sacrifices

★privilege n. 好处

= advantage

特权 (=special right)

牺牲掉自己的好处:

sacrifice one's advantage / privilege

特许某人做某事:

give sb. the privilege of doing sth.

privileged adj. 荣幸的

★overalls n. 工作服

男工作服: overall 女工作服

★secret n. 秘密

adj. keep secret:保密

It's between you and me.

I'll keep it to myself.

confidential: 机密的

in secret:私下里

= secretly, in private, privately

I was told about it in secret.

in the secret: 知道内情

He was in the secret from the beginning.

★status n. 地位

= social position

s-t-a-t-u-s

s-t-a-t-u-e: 雕像, 塑像

★corporation n. 公司

★shower n. 淋浴

★dustman n. 清洁工

【Text】

§ Lesson 4 The double life of Alfred Bloggs 阿尔弗雷德·布洛格斯的双重生活

听录音, 然后回答以下问题。

Why did Alf want a white-collar job?

These days, people who do manual work often receive far more money than people who work in offices. People who work in offices are frequently referred to as 'white-collar workers' for the simple reason that they usually wear a collar and tie to go to

work. Such is human nature, that a great many people are often willing to sacrifice higher pay for the privilege of becoming white-collar workers. This can give rise to curious situations, as it did in the case of Alfred Bloggs who worked as a dustman for the Ellesmere Corporation.

When he got married, Alf was too embarrassed to say anything to his wife about his job. He simply told her that he worked for the Corporation. Every morning, he left home dressed in a smart black suit. He then changed into overalls and spent the next eight hours as a dustman. Before returning home at night, he took a shower and changed back into his suit. Alf did this for over two years and his fellow dustmen kept his secret. Alf's wife has never discovered that she married a dustman and she never will, for Alf has just found another job. He will soon be working in an office. He will be earning only half as much as he used to, but he feels that his rise in status is well worth the loss of money. From now on, he will wear a suit all day and others will call him 'Mr. Bloggs', not 'Alf'.

【课文讲解】

people who do manual work => blue-collar workers

people who work in offices / do mental work
=> white-collar workers

far more money

far--副词, 用来强调语气==much

refer to ... as ==regard ... as 把...看作为

I always refer to him as bookworm (书呆子).

for the simple reason => for 引导的原因状语从句

for the reason that 比 because 正式, 因此多用于正式文体

L04-01 end 12'30"

L04-02 begin 8'41"

human nature 人性化

such...that...

that 引导同位语从句, 进一步补充说明 such 的基本内涵

His kindness was such that we will never forget him.

=> Such was his kindness...

Such is human nature that we want to get a lot of things free.

Such用在句首, 要倒装

Such is human nature, that a great many people are often willing to sacrifice higher pay for the privilege of becoming white-collar workers.

介词 for 表示一种目的

be willing to do sth. == be ready to do sth.
心甘情愿做...

give rise to, lead to, cause: 引起, 惹起 = result in

Such conduct might give rise to misunderstandings.

The bad conditions have given rise to a lot of crimes.

in the case of: 至于, 就……而言

Eg: Stealing is no shame in the case of him.

in case of: (连) 万一, 以防

Eg: You should ensure your house in case of fire.

Who 引导定语从句

Too embarrassed to say: 太尴尬而没有说明
be ashamed of

get married

marry v. 如果强调动作: He married the girl...

如果表示状态: get married, be married

如果表明和某人已经结婚多长时间了: be married to sb.

The old man has been married to his wife 50 years.

Too...to..., 太...而不能

L04-02 end 8'41"

L04-03 begin 11'05"

simply adv. 用来修饰限定动词 told

dressed in a smart black suit-----形容词短语表示一种状态

Eg: He got to work dressed in a beautiful coat.

He left home wearing a smart black suit.

Changed into: 换上

Before returning home==Before he returned home

在 before 引导的时间状语从句中, return 的逻辑主语和主句的主语 he 是一致的, 所以这个时间状语是由介词 before 和动名词搭配而成, 相当于 before 引导的时间状语从句。

如果运用动名词形式, 动名词的逻辑主语必须是主句的主语。

After getting home, he had a good rest.

Before having dinner, he finished all his homework.

She never will = she will never discover the secret

在省略句式, never 要放在助动词之前。

'Will you go to see her?'

'I will never go to see her.' / 'No, I never will.'

half as much as (he used to): 是 ... 的一半

half (a quarter, twice, three times) as ...as...
表示倍数

I won't marry a man who is twice as old as me.

We got three times as many people as we expected.

This room is about three times as large as that one.

...as (形容词或副词原形)as... 是 ...几倍

比 ...多几倍: ...times (形容词或副词比较级)

This road is four times longer than that one.

=> This road is five times as long as that one.

is well worth the loss of money

What he obtained is well worth the loss of time

Well 副词用来加强语气, 修饰形容词 worth

L04-03 end 11'05"

L04-04 begin 18'59"

【Special difficulties】难点

A. 英语中的许多动词不能以人作为宾语, 只能代某物或某事。如果需要说明是某人就要用介词 to.

Eg: He explained the difficulty to me

He told a story to me.=> He told me a story.

两类词汇: tell 可以和双宾语搭配 (指物的直接宾语, 指人的间接宾语)

explain, say 只能带一个 (直接) 宾语, 在间接宾语前要介词 to

She speaks English to her husband and Swedish to her children.

He admitted his guilt to the police.

Did you suggest this idea to him?

当直接宾语比较长或者是个从句时, 通常放在间接宾语之后, 但 say 除外

I explained to him the impossibility of granting his request.

He confessed to me that he had fallen asleep during the meeting.

- B. worth adj. 后面只能跟名词或动名词
His suggestion is worth considering.

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

Comprehension

- 1 What does the case of Alfred Bloggs illustrate?
a. That people often care more about the status of a job than the salary.
b. That 'white-collar workers' usually wear a suit to go to work.
c. That manual workers prefer to keep their job a secret.
d. That office workers usually earn less than manual workers.

illustrate: 阐明, 阐述

根据'... a great many people are often willing to sacrifice higher pay for the privilege of becoming white-collar worker'

1. A

- 2 What did Alfred Bloggs do for over two years?

- a. He told his wife he worked for the Corporation, when in fact he did not.
b. He disguised himself as a dustman.
c. He led a double life.
d. He earned twice as much as he used to.
disguise /dis'gaiz/ vt. 假装, 扮作; 隐瞒; n. 假
装; 化装服

Double life

2. C

- 3 Why did Alfred Bloggs consider wearing a suit all day and being called 'Mr. Bloggs' so important?

- a. His new job is worth more than his previous one in every respect.
b. He will no longer need a shower before returning home from work.
c. He can now tell his wife about his previous job without embarrassment.
d. He feels that other people will respect him more.

3. D

'...he feels that his rise in status is well worth the loss of money.'

Structure

- 4 They usually wear a collar and tie ____ ... (l.4)

- a. as they work b. to work c. going to work d. in order to work

to go 可以省略

They usually go to work wearing a collar and

tie.

4. B

- 5 Alf was ____ anything to his wife. (l.9)

- a. so embarrassed he said b. very embarrassed and said
c. very embarrassed, so he said d. so embarrassed he did not say

'Alfred was too embarrassed to say anything to his wife about his job.'

Too...to (不定式 to 表示否定)

So...that: "如此...以至于" (在 that 引导的结果状语从句中, 如果采用否定式, 可以和 too...to 互换)

Eg: The water is too hot for us to drink. => The water is so hot that we can't drink.

- 6 He told her that he worked for the Corporation ____ ... (ll.9-10)

- a. simply b. in a simple way c. and no more d. only

'He simply told her that he worked for the Corporation.'

Simply adv "仅仅是, 再没有别的了" = only, just
无论是 simply, only 还是 just, 往往用在主体之前
I did it simply / only for the money.

I don't like driving. I do it simply / only because I have to go to work each day.

And no more ---放句尾

in a simple way: 简单的, 简朴的

Eg: She was always dressed in a simple way.

- 7 Before he ____ home at night, he took a shower... (ll.11-12)

- a. was returning b. returned c. had returned d. will return

如果主、从的主语一致, 可用介词和动名词形式搭配。
Before—连接词, 引导时间状语从句 (一般使用简单时态, 不用将来时)

Before he returned home...

Before 引导的从句, 常用一般现在时或一般过去时, 不用进行时。

- 8 His earnings were only half the amount ____ ... (l.14)

- a. as they used to b. they used to c. they used to be d. they were used to
'half as much as it used to be'

the amount 要用定语从句进行限定

used to: 当主句的谓语动词是行为动词时, 之后的动词必须省略掉。

Used to be: 当主句的谓语动词是系动词时, 之后必须带有系动词 be。

Eg: I feel the summers are hotter than they used to be.

I feel you are much fatter than you used to be.

8.C

Vocabulary

9 Manual workers often receive much higher _____ than people who work in offices. (I.1-2)

- a. gains b. fees c. payments d. wages

gain 获利，赢得（表示通过努力） ~time, ~reputation, ~speed, ~height

fee (为专业服务支付的)费用 doctor's fees, the lawyer's fees

pay for my university fees

payment (商业、信贷)支付的款项（正式）

wages (体力劳动者的)工资

salary (白领的)薪水

ack 偿还，报复

reward 酬劳

value 价值

comensate for = make up for 弥补

11. C

12 he wanted to be _____ 'Mr. Bloggs', not 'Alf.' (II.15-16)

- a. addressed as b. named c. cried out
d. shouted

'call'

addressed as 被称作

name 命名

cry out 叫

shout 喊

L04-04 § Lesson 4 end 18'59"

L05-01 begin 9'43"

§ Lesson 5 The facts 确切数字

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- ◆editor n. 编辑
- ◆extreme n. 极端
- ◆statistics n. 统计数字
- ◆journalist n. 新闻记者
- ◆president n. 总统
- ◆palace n. 王宫；宏伟的住宅
- ◆publish v. 出版
- ◆fax n. 传真
- ◆impatient adj. 不耐烦的
- ◆fire v. 解雇
- ◆originally adv. 起初，原先，从前

★editor n. 编辑

edit vt. 编辑

edition n. 编辑

editorial adj. 编辑的，主编的；n. 社论，评论

★extreme n. 极端

9. D

10 His _____ kept his secret. (I.12)

- a. brothers b. workmates c. companions d. comrades
workmate 工友
companion 同伴
10. B

11 His rise in status more than _____ the loss of money. (I.14-15)

- a. pays back b. rewards c. compensates for d. values

'well worth the loss of money'

pay b

go to extreme(s) to do 走极端

Eg: He went to extreme to say that the play was the best one.

He went to extremes to say that his girlfriend was the most beautiful in the world. go from one extreme to the other

★statistics n. 统计数字

★journalist n. 新闻记者

journalist (杂志) 新闻记者

reproter (电视台) 记者

correspondent (电台) 记者，通讯员

★president n. 总统

★palace n. 王宫；宏伟的住宅

★publish v. 出版

Eg: They have already published the magazine.

= print vt.

Eg: the book has already been published.

The book has gone to press.

★fax n. 传真

sent a fax

★impatient adj. 不耐烦的

patient adj. 有耐心的

patiently adv. 有耐心地

impatient adj. 不耐烦的

impatiently adv. 不耐烦地

patience n.

impatience

★fire v. 解雇

He was fired from his job.

dismiss (正式)

The manager dismissed him from his company.

sack(俚语) vt. 解雇，辞退

Eg: If you do it wrong again you will be

sacked.

★originally adv. 起初，原先，从前
original adj.

【Text】

§ Lesson 5 The facts 确切数字

Q: What was the consequence of the editor's insistence on facts and statistics?

Editors of newspapers and magazines often go to extremes to provide their readers with unimportant facts and statistics. Last year a journalist had been instructed by a well-known magazine to write an article on the president's palace in a new African republic. When the article arrived, the editor read the first sentence and then refused to publish it. The article began: 'Hundreds of steps lead to the high wall which surrounds the president's palace.' The editor at once sent the journalist a telegram instructing him to find out the exact number of steps and the height of the wall.

The journalist immediately set out to obtain these important facts, but he took a long time to send them. Meanwhile, the editor was getting impatient, for the magazine would soon go to press. He sent the journalist two more faxes, but received no reply. He sent yet another fax informing the journalist that if he did not reply soon he would be fired. When the journalist again failed to reply, the editor reluctantly published the article as it had originally been written. A week later, the editor at last received a telegram from the journalist. Not only had the poor man been arrested, but he had been sent to prison as well. However, he had at last been allowed to send a fax in which he informed the editor that he had been arrested while counting the 1,084 steps leading to the fifteen-foot wall which surrounded the president's palace.

【课文讲解】

go to extremes 走极端

provide = supply 给..., 提供 (通常与介词搭配连用)

provide sb. With sth. / provide sth. for sb.

He provided them with a bed for the night.

He provided a bed for them for the night.

instruct sb. to do sth ==tell sb. formally to do sth. 正式告诉某人做某事

'...a journalist had been instructed by a well-known magazine to write an article on the

president's palace in a new African republic.'

主动语态: A well-known magazine instructed a journalist to write an article on the president's palace in a new African republic.'

The teacher instructed him to take the examination.

on ==about 侧重强调课题专一

A book on radio

L05-01 end 9'43"

L05-02 begin 7'16"

When the article arrived = When the editor received the article

refuse to publish it

refuse: vt. 拒绝 (态度严厉)

decline: vt. 婉言谢绝

repudiate: vt. 断然拒绝

which 指代 the high wall

instructing—现在分词进一步补充说明 fax 的情况

set out to do sth.==decide and try to do 决定, 打算, 着手做=set about doing

Ega: He set out to make his first 1,000,000 in 5 years

take sb. a long time to do sth. 某事花了某人很长的时间

It took me five days to write the article.

two more faxes = another two faxes

fail to

reluctantly = unwillingly 勉强地, 不情愿地

as it had originally been written = in its original way

L05-02 end 7'16"

L05-03 begin 9'35"

倒装简述:

not only 位于句首, 必须采用倒装形式

The poor man had not only been arrested, but had been sent to prison as well.

1. 否定副词位于句首, 要倒装。

Never have I read such stories. 我从来没有读过这样的小说。

Nowhere can he find the book he wants. 无论在哪儿他都找不到他想要的那本书。

Hardly did I think it possible. 我并不认为这是可能的。

常用的否定副词: never, seldom, rarely, little, hardly, scarcely, nowhere, no sooner

2. 含有 **only** 的状语位于句首，句子要倒装

Only then did he realize that he had made a mistake. 只有到那个时候，他才认识到自己犯了个错误。

Only when a great deal more information has been obtained will it be possible to plan a trip.

只有获得比较多的信息之后，才有可能计划去旅行。

3. 还有 **not** 的副词短语位于句首，要倒装。

not for a moment, not in the least, not for an instant, not until

Not in the least is he interested in English literature. 他对英国文学一点都不感兴趣。

Not for an instant did i believe he had lied.

4. 含有 **no** 的短语位于句首，句子要倒装。

at no time, in no way, in no sence, by no means, in no case, on no account, on no condition, under no circumstances. ‘绝不’

Under no circumstances can we accpet the check. 无论如何我们不能接受这笔钱。

On no account must you leave the baby in the house. 你无论如何也不能把婴儿留在房间里。

5. **so,suh** 位于句首，句子也要倒装。

He had at last been allowed = he had at last been permitted

= he had asked for permission

请求允许，被允许：**be allowed to do, be permitted to do, asked for permission to do sth.**

in which ----which 指代 fax

while 和现在分词搭配，做时间状语，表示“正在做某事的过程中”，可以用 **while** 引导的时间状语从句去替换。

while he was counting...

leading to 现在分词，通向

the steps leading to the president's palace
the road leading to the forest

fifteen-foot ----做前置定语，这里的名词必须是单数形式

which 指代 wall (避免和前面的句式结构相同)

L05-03 end 9'35"

L05-04 begin 11'27"

【Special difficulties】

倒装的用法

Exercise

Write these sentences again beginning each one with the words in italics.

1 He has *not only* made this mistake before but he will make it again.

2 I realized what was happening *only* then.

3 I will *never* trust him again.

4 You *seldom* find traffic wardens who are kind and helpful.

key:

1 *Not only* has he made this mistake before but he will make it again.

2 *Only* then did I realize what was happening.

3 *Never* will I trust him again.

4 *Seldom* do You find traffic wardens who are kind and helpful.

warden [5 wC : d [n]n.看护人，守护人

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

Comprehension

1 The editor acted as he did because ____ .

a. he wanted an excuse to fire the journalist

b. he had not read the article beyond the first sentence

c. he was dissatisfied with the factual content of the article

d. he wanted to please the president of the new African republic

1. C

2 The journalist took a long time to sent the details required because ____ .

a. it took him a long time to count all the steps

b. he had not been allowed to fax the information he had obtained

c. he did not realize how soon the magazine would go to press

d. he had been arrested before he had had time to obtain the facts

2. B

3 Why had the journalist been arrested?

a. Because his activities must have appeared suspicious.

b. For having gone to extremes to provide unimortant facts.

c. For climbing the palace wall in order to measure its height.

d. Because the article was published in its original form.

3. A

Structure

4 _____ the first sentence, the editor refused to publish the article. (II.5-6)

- a. Reading b. Having read c. He read
d. Being read

首选从句、分词、独立主格结构,缺少了时间状语从句的连接词

4. B

体会出 and then

Having seen the movie, they went for a walk.

5 The magazine _____ to press. (I.10)

- a. was b. had gone c. was about to go
d. was due

6 He sent the journalist two faxes, but did not receive _____. (II.10-11)

- a. the replies b. the reply c. no reply
d. a reply

表示“任意”

6. D

7 he informed the journalist he would be fired unless he _____. (II.11-12)

- a. was replied b. relied c. would reply
d. did not reply

unless = if not

一般过去时

7. B

8 He informed _____ while carrying out his instructions. (II.15-16)

- a. his arrest to the editor b. the editor
his arrest

- c. the editor of his arrest d. the editor
that his arrest had been

inform sb. of /about sth. 通知某人做某事

8. C

Vocabulary

9 Editors of newspapers and magazines often go to extremes to provide their _____ with unimportant facts and statistics. (II.1-2)

- a. audience b. lectures c. public d.
common

9. C

10 The magazine would soon go to press. It would soon be _____. (I.10)

- a. pressing b. printed c. typed d.
impressed

10. B

print = publish

11 The poor man had been arrested. He was very _____. (I.14)

- a. poor b. stupid c. innocent d.
unfortunate

innocent 无辜的

11. D

12 He had at last been _____ to send a fax. (II.14-15)

- a. admitted b. let c. left d. given
permission

请求允许做某事: ask for permission to do sth

允许某人做某事: be given permission to do sth

12. D

L05-04 end 9'55" (L05 end)L06-01 begin 11'35"

§ **Lesson 6 Smash-and grab** 砸橱窗抢劫

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

◆smash-and-grab n. 砸橱窗抢劫

◆arcade n. 有拱廊的街道(两旁常设商店)

◆Piccadilly n. 皮卡迪利大街

◆jewellery n. 珠宝(总称)

◆necklace n. 项链

◆ring n. 戒指

◆background n. 背景

◆velvet n. 天鹅绒, 丝绒

◆headlight n. (汽车等)前灯

◆blare v. 发嘟嘟声, 吼叫

◆staff n. 全体工作人员

◆raid n. 偷袭

◆scramble v. 爬行

◆fantastic adj. 非常大的

◆ashtray n. 烟灰缸

★smash-and-grab n. 砸橱窗抢劫

smash vt. break sth. into pieces violently

vi. The dishes smashed on the floor.

smash into: 撞击到某处

Eg: The bus smashed into a big tree.

grab: seize suddenly

catch: get hold of sth. / sb. moving

snatch: catch sth. / sb. suddenly and violently

seize: 强调抓住、抓到的结果 Fear seized her.

grasp: 强调掌握

hold: 强调抓牢、抓紧 He is holding an umbrella.

★arcade n. 有拱廊的街道(两旁常设商店)

★Piccadilly n. 皮卡迪利大街

★jewellery n. 珠宝(总称)

★necklace n. 项链

★ring n. 戒指

★background n. 背景

on the background of sth. 以什么为背景

background information

a man of excellent background

★velet n. 天鹅绒, 丝绒

★headlight n. (汽车等) 前灯

★blare v. 发嘟嘟声, 吼叫

★staff n. 全体工作人员

★raid n. 偷袭

★scramble v. 爬行

scramble vi. creep quickly

climb vt. 爬上

mount: 登上

★★★fantastic adj. 非常大的

fantastic: very great / large

fantastics of money

strange

wonderful

★ashtray n. 烟灰缸

【Text】

§ Lesson 6 Smash-and grab 砸橱窗抢劫

How did Mr. Taylor try to stop the thieves?

The expensive shops in a famous arcade near Piccadilly were just opening. At this time of the morning, the arcade was almost empty. Mr Taylor, the owner of a jewellery shop was admiring a new window display. Two of his assistants had been working busily since 8 o'clock and had only just finished. Diamond necklaces and rings had been beautifully arranged on a background of black velvet. After gazing at the display for several minutes, Mr Taylor went back into his shop.

The silence was suddenly broken when a large car, with its headlights on and its horn blaring, roared down the arcade. It came to a stop outside the jeweler's. One man stayed at the wheel while two others with black stockings over their faces jumped out and smashed the window of the shop with iron bars. While this was going on, Mr Taylor was upstairs. He and his staff began throwing furniture out of the window. Chairs and tables went flying into the arcade. One of the thieves was struck by a heavy statue, but he was too busy helping himself to diamonds to notice any pain. The raid was all over in three minutes, for the men scrambled back into the car and it moved off at a fantastic speed. Just as it was leaving, Mr Taylor rushed out and ran after it throwing ashtrays and vases, but it was impossible to stop the thieves. They had got away with thousands of pounds worth of diamonds.

【课文讲解】

本课有许多句型值得模仿

in a famous arcade near Piccadilly 介词短语修饰 shops

Eg: The shoe shop in myneighbourhood was just opening.

Beijing, our capital, is eveloping enormously (at fantastic speed).

L06-01 end 11'35"

L06-02 begin 10'06"

'After gazing at the display for several minutes, Mr Taylor went back into his shop.'

运用 ing 形式结构, 其逻辑主语要和主句的主语保持一致

本课的重点句式: with 的复合结构

如果宾语和宾语补足语在逻辑上有主谓关系, 应该采用动词的 ing 形式:

如果是动宾关系, 应该采用过去分词形式作宾补

如果表达某事将要展开发生, 要用动词不定式 to

She sat staring into the distance with tears streaming down her cheeks.

She stood ther with her hands resting on her hips.

He ran into the room with his face covered with tears.

With his homework finished, he felt happy.

He used to sleep with all the windows open.

He went out with his hat on.

With the meeting over, we went home.

He came in with a knife in his hand.

L06-02 end 10'06"

L06-03 begin 11'13"

Two others with black stockings over their faces jumped out.

With a lot of work to do, he can't go to the cinama.

总结:

with 用于句首或句尾, 常表示状语、行为方式、原因、伴随状况等; 如果跟在名词之后, 是用来修饰限定该名词

a thief with atocking over his face

a teacher with a book under his arm

a room with the windows open

come to 后面常接名词, 表示达到

come to a stop, come to an end, come to a decision, come to an agreement, come to an understanding, come to success, come to fame

停车 stop, draw up, pull up

at the barbar's, at the butcher's, at the

baker's, at the greengrocer's. at the grocer's,
at the stationer's, at the tobacconist's, at
the chemist's

help oneself to: 自便

help yourself to dish

My roommate helped herself to my clothes
without asking me.

at a fantastic speed / at a tremendous speed
/ at a high(full) speed / with great speed

hundreds of thousands of dollars worth of
jewel 数十万美元的珠宝

L06-03end 11'13"

L06-04 begin 14'29"

Word building

前缀构词法

如何运用常见的前缀

dis-

agreeable disagreeable content

discontent

graceful dis graceful honest dis honest

satisfactory dissatisfactory

dis 还可以加在名词前

agreement disagreement

honesty dishonesty

ability disability

grace disgrace

comfort discomfort

dis 可以加在动词前

agree dis agree

appear disappear

believe disbelieve

dis-还可表示除去、解除，在名词前加 dis-得到动
词形式

courage discourage

root disroot

mask dismask

burden disburden

il-加在以 l 开头的形容词之前

legal illegal logical illbogical

literate illiterate

im-加在以 b,m,p 开头的形容词之前

possible impossible

mortal immortal

moral immoral

balanced imbalanced

ir-加在以 r 开头的形容词之前

regular irregular rational irrational

resistible irresistible

in-主要用于其他字母开头的词之前

human inhuman correct incorrect

justice injustice sincere insincere

un-只能用于形容词和动词之前

不

happy unhappy friendly unfriendly

lucky unlucky

无

conditional unconditional limited unlimited

非

official unofficial just unjust

未，主要用于过去分词之前

undecided unfinished unexpected

unhurt

用于动词之前表示做相反的动作

lock unlock tie untie

cover uncover pack unpack

dress undress load unload

Exercise P36

Write these sentences again giving the
correct opposites of the words in italics

1 He was extremely *polite*.

2 I *agree* with you.

3 His handwriting is quite *legible*.

4 This report is *accurate*.

5 Have you *locked* the door?

6 Have you learnt these *regular* verbs?

Key: 1 impolite 2 disagree 3 illegible

4 inaccurate 5 unlocked 6 irregular

L06-04 end 14'29"

L06-05 begin 13'47"

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题 Comprehension

1 While Mr. Taylor was admiring the new
window display, _____.

a. his two assistants were arranging
jewellery in the window

b. some thieves were on their way to raid his
shop

c. he was standing inside his shop

d. his staff were finishing their work for the
day

1. B

on one's way to do

He is on the way to become a lawyer

2 The car headlights were on and its horn
blaring ____.

a. as the thieves wanted to warn people out
of their way

b. as a special signal to their assistants

c. so the thieves could see where they were
going

d. to break the early morning silence

2. A

warn sb. out of one's way
in one's way

3 The thieves chose to raid Mr. Taylor's shop because ____.

- a. it was early in the morning and not many shops were open
- b. they did not expect Mr. Taylor and his staff to try and stop them
- c. it usually had a great deal of valuable jewellery on display
- d. they had a very fast car to get away in

3. C

Structure

4 The expensive shops in ____ were just opening. (II.1-2)

- a, Piccadilly's famous arcade
- b. a Piccadilly famous arcade
- c. a famous Piccadilly arcade
- d. the famous arcade off Piccadilly

名词具有修饰词的时候，语序的排列通常是形容词、名词。

an old village school

4. C

5 He ____ the display for several minutes before re-entering his shop. (II.7-8)

- a. was gazing at
- b. gazed at
- c. had gazed at
- d. had been gazing at

5. B 做句子结构题时要和原文加以对比

6 Using bars made ____ iron, the thieves smashed the shop window. (I.11)

- a. of
- b. from
- c. by
- d. with

6. A

7 He and his staff began ____ furniture out of the window. (I.12)

- a. to throw
- b. by throwing
- c. and threw
- d. the throwing of

begin doing sth. / begin to do sth.

7. A

8 Had he not been so busy taking the diamonds, he ____ the blow. (II.13-14)

- a. would feel
- b. had been feeling
- c. had felt
- d. would have felt

省略 if 的条件状语从句，

8. D

Vocabulary

9 To make the car 'roar down the arcade', the driver must have _____. (II.9-10)

- a. accelerated
- b. sped
- c. run
- d.

reversed

accelerated 加速

speed 加快动作和工作的进程 speed up

Eg: We'd better speed up, if we want to get there in time.

The driver accelerated to pass the other car.

The car sped along the road

reversed: 倒车

Eg: The car reversed through the gate.

9. A

10 Two others, their faces _____ black stockings, jumped out. (II.10-11)

- a. covered with
- b. overdressed with
- c. overlooked by
- d. made up in

two others 和 their faces 同位语关系

overdressed

I felt rather overdressed in this smart suit.

overlooked: 俯瞰

made up in 无这种表达方式

10. A

11 _____, Mr. Taylor was upstairs. (II.11-12)

- a. For the time being
- b. Meanwhile
- c. As it happened
- d. For a while

For the time being = temporarily

Meanwhile = at the same time

As it happened 这类事情的发生

For a while = for a moment

11. B

12 Chairs and tables were _____ into the arcade. (II.12-13)

- a. flown
- b. emptied
- c. hurled
- d. projected

flown 是 fly 的过去分词，vi. 不能用于被动语态 go flying, send sth. flying

Eg: A gust of wind sent the paper flying in all directions.

emptied 倒空，与题意不符

hurled: 用力的去投掷

projected: sent up 发射

L06-05 § Lesson 6 end 13'47"

L07-01 § Lesson 7 begin 15'10"

§ Lesson 7 Mutilated ladies 残钞鉴别组

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

◆mutilate v. 使残缺不全

◆chew v. 咀嚼

◆fiancé n. 未婚夫

◆microwave n. 微波，微波炉

◆oven n. 炉灶

◆safekeeping n. 妥善保管

◆Newcastle n. 纽卡斯尔（英国港市）

◆identify v. 鉴别，识别

◆spokeswoman n. 女发言人

★mutilate v. 使残缺不全

vt. 经常用于被动语态

1, 毁伤, 残害。

He was mutilated in the accident, and now has only one leg.

a mutilated note

2, 把…搞砸了

You've already mutilated the novel by making such changes.

\$ dad president: 美国

mutilation n.

★chew v. 咀嚼

A lot of people love chewing gums.

Don't bite off more than one can chew. 不要自不量力

chew the fat: 聊天

chewed up: (俚) 着急的, 担心的

Don't get **chewed up** / **about** your examination.

★fiancé n. 未婚夫

★microwave n. 微波, 微波炉

micro- = tiny, very very small

microswitch, microfilm, microscope,

microsecond, microphone, microbiology

反义前缀: macro- = great. large

★oven n. 炉灶

★safekeeping n. 妥善保管

keep sth. safe

Please keep your ID card safe

do evil: 干坏事

evil doing

make trouble => trouble making

★Newcastle n. 纽卡斯尔 (英国港市)

★identify v. 鉴别, 识别

identify of sb. or sth.

He can't identify the person.

identity: n.

So far the archaeologists have been unable to discover her identity.

identification n. 命名, 确认

★spokeswoman n. 女发言人

【Text】

§ **Lesson 7 Mutilated ladies*** 残钞鉴别组

Why did Jane cook John's wallet?

Has it ever happened to you? Have you ever put your trousers in the washing machine and then remembered there was a large

bank note in your back pocket? When you rescued your trousers, did you find the note was whiter than white? People who live in Britain needn't despair when they make mistakes like this (and a lot of people do)! Fortunately for them, the Bank of England has a team called Mutilated Ladies which deals with claims from people who fed their money to a machine or to their dog. Dogs, it seems, love to chew up money!

A recent case concerns Jane Butlin whose fiancé, John, runs a successful furniture business. John had a very good day and put his wallet containing £ 3,000 into the microwave oven for safekeeping. Then he and Jane went horse-riding. When they got home, Jane cooked their dinner in the microwave oven and without realizing it, cooked her fiancé's wallet as well. Imagine their dismay when they found a beautifully-cooked wallet and notes turned to ash! John went to see his bank manager who sent the remains of wallet and the money to the social department of the Bank of England in Newcastle: the Mutilated Ladies! They examined the remains and John got all his money back. 'So long as there's something to identify, we will give people their money back,' said a spokeswoman for the Bank. 'Last year, we paid £ 1.5m on 21,000 claims.'

* Damaged bank notes. The Queen's head appears on English bank notes, and 'lady' refers to this.

【课文讲解】

段首或段尾运用疑问句提出问题

段首——主要要引起读者的兴趣和注意力

段尾——进一步巩固、加深与本段所涉及的内容, 进一步引起读者的沉思

rescue 救援, 援救

Hundreds of people went to rescue the plane crash.

L07-01 end 15'10"

L07-02 begin 16'22"

大词小用所起到的目的——加强语气

whiter than white====damaged, mutilated.
损坏, 残缺不全

make mistakes like this

Fortunately for them luckily / happily for them 固定搭配

team 组织

make a claim 提出索赔

feed sth. to

it seems

第二段充分说明了约翰是怎么样把钱从银行里拿回来

concern: 涉及到——is about

run a factory, run a company

I have a very good day. I have a good time to keep it safe

put his wallet which contained....

go horse-riding, go fishing, go hunting, go shopping

dismay: 沮丧

beautifully-cooked wallet: 用一种讽刺的口吻

turned to turned into become

who ----band manager

so long as: on condition that 表假设, 只要 pay for: 为...付款

We paid 80 dollars for the dictionary.

on 强调对 21000 起索赔要求

pay off 还清, 偿还

The couple have already paid their debts off. pay back

1, 把钱归还回去 pay money back

2, 报仇, 报复 pay somebody back

L07-02 end 16'22"

L07-03 begin 12'35" § Lesson 7

【Special difficulties】

如何运用后缀

less 表示否定概念 care careless

ful 表示有、充满了 helpful careful

ly: 形容词+ly = 副词, 名词+ly = 形容词 daily

ic pic energetic 精力充沛的

ish childish womanish

Exercise

Supply the missing words

1 You won't feel any pain. The operation is completely ____.

2 I admired the beauty of the countryside. The countryside is so ____.

3 I visit my mother every day. My mother expects ____ visits.

4 Don't behave like a child. Don't be so ____.

5 She's a wonderful athlete. That explains why she's so ____.

Key : 1. painless 2. beautiful 3. daily 4. childish(-ish 的形容词是贬义色彩) 5. athletic 强壮的, 强健的

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题 Comprehension

1 They call the team in Newcastle 'Mutilated Ladies' because ____.

a. their job involves mutilating bank notes

b. their job is to identify pictures of the Queen on mutilated bank notes

c. ladies are always mutilating bank notes by accident in the wash

d. only ladies have the patience for this difficult job

1. B

2 The Bank of England offers a special service to people who ____.

a. feed their money to the dog b. try to wash large bank notes

c. mutilate bank notes on purpose d. have damaged but identifiable bank notes

2. D

identify => identifiable

return => returnable

eat => eatable

3 You don't get your money back unless ____.

a. you go to Newcastle and see the Mutilated Ladies

b. there is enough evidence to prove your claim

c. your bank manager agrees to help you

c. you have done this sort of thing before unless: if not

3. B

Structure

4 Have you ever forgotten ____ in the pocket of your trousers...? (II.1-3)

a. a large bank note b. large bank note

c. any large bank note d. some large bank note

4. A

any large bank notes

5. If you ____ in Britain, you needn't despair. (II.4-5)

a. do live b. are living c. live d. were living

needn't 真实条件句, 不是虚拟语气

live 动词是不用进行时态的

5. C

6 John is _____, and runs a furniture business. (I.9)

a. fiancé of Jane Butlin b. Jane Butlin's fiancé

c. Jane Butlin who's fiancé d. Jane Butlin whose fiancé

6. B

一般来说, 如果表示某人的, 就用 '

如果采用介词 of 表示所属关系，被修饰名词前要出现定冠词

7 The wallet _____ £ 3,000 from the day's business. (I.10)

- a. containing b. was containing c. contained d. content

简单句，选用一般过去式

7. C

8 John put his wallet into the microwave oven _____. (I.10)

- a. to keep it safe b. for keeping safe c. for the safety d. to keep it safe

8. A

Vocabulary

9 John runs a furniture business. He _____ the business. (I.9)

- a. is in charge of b. is in the charge of c. charges d. bears the charges of

in charge of 负责

in the charge of 由某人负责

9. A

10 Jane discovered that the £ 3,000 had _____ ash. (II.12-13)

- a. turned b. grown c. made d. become

turned to ash

10. D

11 The remains were _____ to the Mutilated Ladies. (II.13-14)

- a. conveyed b. dispatched c. carried d. fetched

sent

dispatched 送，送达 deliver

convey: 运输、传达

fetch: 去取回来

11. B

12 People can get their money back _____ there is something to identify. (II.15-16)

- a. depending b. provided c. supposed d. allowing

12. B

provided providing

Eg: Provided that you reduce the price, I'll take all the goods.

supposed 表假设 suppose, supposing

特别注意: 结构以及词汇题

L07-03 § Lesson 7 end 12'35"

L08-01 begin 12'11"

§ Lesson 8 A famous monastery 著名的修道院

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

◆ monastery n. 寺院，修道院

◆ St. Bernard 圣伯纳德

◆ pass n. 关隘

◆ watchdog n. 看门狗

◆ rashly adj. 莽撞地，冒失地

◆ enclosure n. 围场，圈地

◆ monk n. 和尚，僧侣

◆ privacy n. 清静，隐居

◆ skier n. 滑雪者

◆ Easter n. 复活节

★ monastery n. 寺院，修道院

abbot: 修道院院长

convent nun: 修女

abbess: 女修道院院长

★ St. Bernard 圣伯纳德

★ pass n. 关隘

★ watchdog n. 看门狗

★ rashly adj. 莽撞地，冒失地

boldly adv.

★ enclosure n. 围场，圈地

★ monk n. 和尚，僧侣

★ privacy n. 清静，隐居

★ skier n. 滑雪者

★ Easter n. 复活节

at Easter, at Christmas, at Thanksgiving

【Text】

§ Lesson 8 A famous monastery 著名的修道院

What are the St. Bernard dogs used for?

The Great St Bernard Pass connects Switzerland to Italy. At 2470 metres, it is the highest mountain pass in Europe. The famous monastery of St Bernard, which was founded in the eleventh century, lies about a mile away. For hundreds of years, St Bernard dogs have saved the lives of travellers crossing the dangerous Pass. These friendly dogs, which were first brought from Asia, were used as watch-dogs even in Roman times. Now that a tunnel has been built through the mountains, the Pass is less dangerous, but each year, the dogs are still sent out into the snow whenever a traveller is in difficulty. Despite the new tunnel, there are still a few people who rashly attempt to cross the Pass on foot

During the summer months, the monastery is very busy, for it is visited by

thousands of people who cross the Pass in cars, As there are so many people about, the dogs have to be kept in a special enclosure. In winter, however, life at the monastery is quite different. The temperature drops to -30° and very few people attempt to cross the Pass. The monks Prefer winter to summer for they have more privacy. The dogs have greater freedom, too, for they are allowed to wander outside their enclosure. The only regular visitors to the monastery in winter are parties of skiers who go there at Christmas and Easter. These young people, who love the peace of the mountains, always receive a warm welcome at St. Bernard's monastery.

【课文讲解】

connects / Join Switzerland to Italy / link Switzerland with Italy

connect ... with:把...与某事联系在一起

I can't connect the picture with my friend Mary.

Are you connected with the government?

be connected with 与...有联系

at 2,473 metres:介词短语修饰全句用于句首表示原因、条件或状态

At the age of 25, he is able.

At one point 65 metres, he is a little short.

限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句最大的区别

非限制性定语从句是对主句或主句中所出现的某个名词的补充说明和解释, 去掉对主句影响不大

限制性定语从句是主句中不可缺少的一部分

Mr Smith was a famous person in American history.

Mr Smith, who died on July 17th at 84, was a famous person in American history.

There were very few passengers, who escaped without serious injury.

There were very few passengers who escaped without serious injury.

L08-01 end 12'11"

L08-02 begin 11'56"

The taxi drivers, who knew about the traffic jam, took another road.

The taxi drivers who knew about the traffic jam took another road, and others who didn't know about the traffic jam still took this heavy road.

who 引导的非限制性定语从句主要指人做主语

指代事物在非限制性定语从句当中只能使用 which

He lent me a thousand dollars, which was exactly the sum I needed.

指代时间 when, 地点 where

He was left on the desert island, where he

stayed for as long as their weeks.

found 建立 set up establish

live----lives

which 指代 friend dogs

The panda, which was brought from China, was used as a symbol of friendship.

Now that: 既然

用做时间连接词时, 后面通常跟完成式

Now that you have left university, you have to find a job.

用做原因连接词时, 后面时态不限。

Now that you won't help me, I must do the job myself.

Now that you are grown-up, you must stop the children behave.

whenever, whoever, whatever wherever, whichever, however

no matter when / who / what / where / which / how

You can telephone me whenever you like.

Whichever day you come, we'll be pleased to see you.

L08-02 end 11'56"

L08-03 begin 11'51"

Whenever you go, I'll follow you.

However busy you are, you must spare some time to study English.

Despite 介词——in spite of

rashly 莽撞的 attempt to do sth. ----try to do sth.

there + be

zThere are still a few students studying English in the classroom.

in cars ---by car

about 到处, 周围

Don't litter waste paper about.

look about, go about, run about, wander about

keep: 使某人或某物处于某种状态, 经常和介词短语、形容词、分词(现在分词和过去分词)搭配连用, 表示一种状态

keep him out, keep him in

Do keep the cat in the room.

表示逻辑的主谓关系——现在分词 I'm sorry to keep you waiting.

表示逻辑的动宾关系——过去分词 The lamb was kept tight to a tree.

quite the opposite 恰恰相反

prefer sth. to sth.
I prefer reading to doing nothing.

The regular visitors to Beijing

Mike, who loves chess very much, entered for the game.

L08-03 end 11'51"

L08-04 begin 8'23"

Special difficulties

Exercise P44

Supply the missing words in the following sentences:

1 Now that he's grown up, he does _____ ever he pleases.

2 _____ ever I telephone, the line's engaged.

3 _____ ever told you that, didn't know what he was talking about.

Key: 1. what 2. when 3. who

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题 Comprehension

1 St. Bernard dogs are best known for _____.

- a. being a great summer tourist attraction
- b. having saved people's lives before the new tunnel was built
- c. being able to search people out who have been trapped in the snow
- d. the freedom they have to wander about in the winter

be best known for = be famous for: 众所周知

1. C

2 What is the main advantage of the new tunnel?

- a. It prevents people from endangering their lives by climbing the Pass.
 - b. It brings thousands of tourists to the monastery each summer.
 - c. It provides a fast and safe communication across the Swiss-Italian border.
 - d. It brings the St. Bernard monks into greater contact with the world.
- the main advantage 最大的好处

2. C

3 In what way does life at the St. Bernard monastery differ in winter?

- a. The great number of visitors must come to the monastery on skis.
- b. The dogs are free to save the lives of people lost in the snow.

c. The monks are more welcoming to their visitors.

d. The monks can pursue their occupation relatively undisturbed.

occupation: 事业, undisturbed: 不受打扰的

3. D

Structure

4 The highest mountain pass in Europe is _____ ... (II.1-2)

- a. of 2,473 metres
- b. at 2,473 metres high
- c. high 2,473 metres
- d. 2,473 metres high

4. D

名词作表语, at, 介词短语作状语

5 --a few people who are _____ to cross the Pass on foot. (II.9-10)

- a. rash enough
- b. so rash
- c. too rash
- d. very rash

形容词或副词和 enough to do 搭配

b 选项错在 so rash as to, You are so kind as to help me.

6 _____ so many people about, the dogs have to be kept in an enclosure. (I.12)

- a. With
- b. Being
- c. Because
- d. Having

with 的复合结构形式

A large car, with its headlights on and its horn blaring, roared down the arcade.

With so many people around me, I feel happy.

6. A

7 The monks let _____ outside their enclosure. (I.15)

- a. them to wander
- b. to them wandering
- c. them wander
- d. them wandering

让某人做某事: let sb. do

7. C

8 Parties of skiers _____ the monastery in winter. (II.15-16)

- a. visit to
- b. are visiting at
- c. visit
- d. are visiting

泛泛的概念采取一般现在时

8. C

Vocabulary

9 The great St. Bernard Pass lies _____ Switzerland and Italy. (I.1)

- a. within
- b. between
- c. about
- d. along

强调两者之间

9. B

10 The dogs are sent out into the snow

_____ a traveller is in difficulty. (II.8-9)

- a. if ever b. in case c. all the time
d. while

whenever = if ever 无论什么时候, 只要情况是如此

Whenever / if ever you pour oil on water, it floats.

in case 主要是讨论预防措施

You should insure your house in case there is a fire.

10. A

11 Thousands of people _____ over the Pass. (II.11-12)

- a. trip b. voyage c. conduct d. drive

drive

11. D

12 They are allowed to _____ outside their enclosure. (I.15)

- a. graze b. drift c. roam d. wonder

原文: wander: 闲逛, roam

graze: 吃草, drift: 漂流 = float, wonder: 想知道, 感到奇怪

L08-04 end 8'23"

L09-01 begin § Lesson 9 8'25"

§ **Lesson 9 Flying cats** 飞猫

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

◆fascinate	v. 迷住, 吸引住
◆affectionate	adj. 充满情深的, 柔情的
◆mysterious	adj. 神秘的, 难以理解的
◆submissive	adj. 服从的, 顺从的
◆feline	adj. 猫的
◆independence	n. 独立, 独立性
◆high-rise	adj. 高层的
◆windowsill	n. 窗槛
◆paratrooper	n. 伞兵
◆squirrel	n. 松鼠
◆air-resistance	n. 空气阻力
◆impact	n. 冲击力

★fascinate v. 迷住, 吸引住

vt. 主系表结构: be fascinated with 被...迷住了, 被...吸引住了

He is fascinated with chess.

Are you fascinated with English.

like, love, be fond of

The boy is fond of football.

be crazy about: 着迷

be mad about

He is crazy / mad about music.

He is fascinated with music.

fascination n.

fascinating adj.

Sweet music is fascinating.

★affectionate adj. 充满情深的, 柔情的

Cats are affectionate animals.

affectionately adv.

The lady is looking that man affectionately.

affection n.

★mysterious adj. 神秘的, 难以理解的

a mysterious plan

a mysterious explanation

mystery n. 迷团, 神秘感

His death is a mystery.

★submissive adj. 服从的, 顺从的

obedient

Are you obedient?

Dogs and horses are submissive, but Cats are never submissive to us.

be submissive to sb.

submit v.

Submit oneself to sb. / sth. 屈服于, 顺从于

submission n.

★feline adj. 猫的

★independence n. 独立, 独立性

independent adj.

You have already grown up, you must be independent.

depend 依靠

You must depend on yourself.

depend, dependence

independence, independent

★high-rise adj. 高层的

★windowsill n. 窗槛

★paratrooper n. 伞兵

★squirrel n. 松鼠

★air-resistance n. 空气阻力

★impact n. 冲击力

【Text】

§ **Lesson 9 Flying cats** 飞猫

Q: How do cats try to protect themselves when falling from great heights?

Cats never fail to fascinate human beings. They can be friendly and affectionate towards humans, but they lead mysterious lives of their own as well. they never become submissive like dogs and horses. As a result, humans have learned to respect feline

independence. Most cats remain suspicious of humans all their lives. One of the things that fascinates us most about cats is the popular belief that they have nine lives. Apparently, there is a good deal of truth in this idea. A cat's ability to survive falls is based on fact.

Recently the New York Animal medical Centre made a study of 132 cats over a period of five months. All these cats had one experience in common: they had fallen off high buildings, yet only eight of them died from shock or injuries. Of course, New York is the ideal place for such an interesting study, because there is no shortage of tall buildings. There are plenty of high-rise windowsills to fall from! One cat, Sabrina, fell 32 storeys, yet only suffered from a broken tooth. 'Cats behave like well-trained paratroopers,' a doctor said. It seems that the further cats fall, the less they are likely to injure themselves. In a long drop, they reach speeds of 60 miles an hour and more. At high speeds, falling cats have time to relax. They stretch out their legs like flying squirrels. This increases their air-resistance and reduces the shock of impact when they hit the ground.

【课文讲解】

never fail to do 双重否定==肯定

If you ask for help in the polite way, you never fail to succeed.

L09-01 end 8'25"

L09-02 begin 9'01"

If you receive requests like this, you'll never fail to accept.

常用的双重否定结构（加强语气）

1. never fail to, can't fail to, don't fail to, 否定词+fail to（语气较强烈）

2. 否定的形容词之前加以否定 unreasonable-> not unreasonable

Eg: What he said is not unreasonable.

It is quite common (not uncommon) for us to make mistakes.

3. not + without

Eg: You can't obtain English without working hard.

He doesn't have any meal without meat.

4. no+not

Eg: There is no cat that doesn't like fish.

There is nothing that he can't do.

There is no rule that has no exception.
as well
as a result

have learned to:学会了, 习惯了

People have learned to expect that trains are punctual.

Children have learned to expect that their parents are very able.

be suspicious of sb. 对什么表示怀疑, 存有戒心

One of the things that fascinates us: that 引导定语从句

that 引导同位语从句

One of the things that fascinates us most about planes is the popular fact that they are safe and fast.

truth,不可数名词, a good deal of
apparently 显然, 显而易见

It seems that...

L09-02 end 9'01"

L09-03 begin

A cat's ability to survive falls **is** based on fact.
survive v. fall v.&n.

be based on:基于事实基础之上

base sth. on: 把某事加强在什么基础之上

We base the theory on the fact

The theory is based on fact.

make a study of sth:对什么作出研究

over a period of five months

in common = the same

fall off 坠落, 掉落

die from:死于

死于疾病: die of illness / disease / hunger / thirst,自然的死亡用 of

死于非自然原因: die from shock / injures / wound, 用 from

there is no shortage

shortage:缺乏 = lack, 与 of 搭配, shortage / lack of

shortage of money led to the failure of the experiments.

32storeys

suffer from: 遭受什么痛苦

A lot of people in the world are suffering from terrible disease.

behave like = act like

well-trained: 训练很好的, well-decorated:装饰漂亮的

the further cats fall, the less

典型的 the more...the more...句型,用定冠词 the 修饰形容词或副词的比较级

The harder you study English, the better you can learn it.

The more you eat, the fatter you will be.

be likely to do:有可能如何, 强调可能性

In cold winter, We are likely to catch a cold.

and more 甚至更多

at high speeds

stretch out 充分伸展

L09-03 end 8'58"

L09-04 begin 11'50"

【Special difficulties】

Exercise P48

Supply so, such, such a, or such an:

1 The film was _____ funny, we laughed all the way through it.

2 We all had _____ fun at the seaside. It's a pity you weren't there.

3 It's _____ unusual exhibition, I'm sure you'll enjoy it.

4 The twins are _____ alike, you can't tell the difference between them.

5 There was _____ loud noise, everyone jumped.

Key: 1. so 2. such 3. such an 4. so
5. such a

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 We find cats endlessly fascinating because _____.

a. we feel there is a good deal we do not know about their lives

b. we believe that cats have nine lives

c. they are different from dogs and horses

d. they can reach a speed of 60 miles an hour while falling

1. A

endlessly fascinating 无穷的, 特别吸引人的魅力

2 A recent study of 132 cats in New York proved _____.

a. that it is true that cats have nine lives

b. that cats are related to flying squirrels

c. they are different from dogs and horses

d. that cats falling from great heights are seldom killed

2. D

that the further cats fall, the less they are likely to injure themselves Because they

have got enough time to relax and this increases their air-resistance and reduces the shock of impact.

3 Cats can survive great falls mainly because _____.

a. the further they fall, the less likely they are to injure themselves

b. a cat's ability to survive is based on fact

c. a falling cat relaxed its legs and so increases its air-resistance

d. they are unlikely to exceed a speed of about 60 miles an hour

3. A

that the further cats fall, the less they are likely to injure themselves

Structure

4 Cats have an unfailing fascination _____ most people. (I.1)

a. with b. to c. for d. at

4. C

for 对于人们来讲

with 对于人们来讲, 强调对比概念

with some children, their pocket money goes a long way.

unfailing

endlessly

5 Cats never become submissive _____.(I.3)

a. as dogs and horses b. in the way that dogs and horses do

c. as far as dogs and horses d. as for dogs and horses

5. B

as...as...象...一样

in the way that...以...方式

I love you in the way that you love me.

We like modern art in the same way that we like beautiful...

6 _____ popularly believed that cats have nine lives.(I.7)

a. there is b. Is c. This is d. It is

6. D

It is said that... 据说

It is announced that... 据宣布

It is reported that... 据报道

7 New York is ideal for this study because _____ high-rise buildings. (II.11-12)

a. there is plenty of b. of the number of

c. it has plenty d. the number

7. B

there is plenty of --> there are plenty of

8 Over a period of five months, there was _____ of 132 cats in New York. (I.9)
 a. a study b. studied c. some studies
 d. studying
 8. A

Vocabulary

9 Most cats are suspicious of human beings _____ their lives. (I.5)
 a. during b. throughout c. through
 d. white

9. B

during 在...期间 (时间较徒刑)

during our holiday; during the week

through 侧重强调从空间穿过

through the crowd 穿过人群; through the door

Monday through Friday

throughout their lives 贯穿始终

10 _____ there is a good deal of truth in this idea. (I.7)
 a. As a matter of fact b. In the event c. It would seem
 d. Surprisingly enough

10. C

It would seem (that)... ----apparently

11 That cats can survive falls from great heights is _____ by the facts. (II.7-8)
 a. explained b. tested c. supported
 d. borne

11. C

explain 解释; test 检测; borne 容忍, 忍耐

The theory is supported by the fact.

The theory is based on the fact.

12 One cat fell 32 storeys. _____ she only suffered a broken tooth. (II.12-13)
 a. Even so b. Although c. Moreover
 d. In spite of

12. A

even so 注意上下文的语境

although 让步; 虽然, 但是

in spite of 只用来连接名词、动名词或代词

moreover 表示递进关系

He is very tired, even so he keeps studying English hard.

Lesson 10 The loss of the Titanic “泰坦尼克”号的沉没

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

◆Southampton n. 南安普敦 (英国港市)

◆colossal adj. 庞大的

◆watertight adj. 不漏水的

◆compartment n. (轮船的) 密封舱

◆flood v. 充满水

◆float v. 漂浮, 飘浮

◆tragic adj. 悲惨的

◆liner n. 班船

◆voyage n. 航行

◆iceberg n. 冰山

◆lookout n. 瞭望员

◆collision n. 碰撞

◆narrowly adv. 刚刚, 勉强地

◆miss v. 避开

◆slight adj. 轻微的

◆tremble v. 震颤

◆faint adj. 微弱的

◆horror n. 恐惧

◆abandon v. 抛弃

◆plunge v. 投入, 跳入

◆lifeboat n. 救生船

★Southampton n. 南安普敦 (英国港市)

★colossal adj. 庞大的

big, large, huge, great, vast, immense, enormous, giant, gigantic, tremendous, titanic

colossal: large in size

A ship Titanic was colossal.

a colossal monument; a colossal statue

big: 大的, 重要的

You give me a big surprise.

He is a big person.

The box is big.

large: 体积大, 数量大

an empty large box

a large number of people

great: 伟大

vast: 辽阔, 广阔 vast desert

immense: immeasurable 不可测量的

an immense stadium, immense iceberg

enormous 重点突出数量、程度、体积; 强调程度时, 语意强于 big

Eg: He made a big success. / He made an enormous success.

giant: 巨大的, 高大的

a giant person 巨人; gigantic

tremendous: big, fast, powerful

The plane is traveling at tremendous speed.

titanic 用于修饰人和物, 体积大、力量大

The ship is titanic.

huge: 强调体积大 a huge stone 数量巨大 a huge sum of money

★watertight adj. 不漏水的

a watertight ship

watertight 引申为无懈可击的, 毫无破绽的

watertight arguments 无懈可击的论点

watertight excuse 毫无破绽的借口

waterproof 防水的; waterproof watch 防水手表

waterproof coat 防水雨衣

★compartment n. (轮船的) 密封舱

★flood v. 充满水
vt. & n.
vt. be filled with water; the ship is flooded.
The room was flooded with moonlight.

L10-01 end 10'41"

L10-02 begin 11'00"

Our classroom was flooded with sunshine.
n. 洪水, in flood 河水泛滥; 引申表示连续不断的
During the rains, the river is in flood.
in a flood of words 滔滔不绝的
She blamed her husband in a flood of words on seeing him.

★float v. 漂浮, 飘浮
drift

★tragic adj. 悲惨的
unfortunate; a tragic accident
miserable 苦难的 bitter 痛苦的
tragedy n. 悲剧, 惨剧 in tragedy 以悲剧形式
The holiday ended in tragedy.
comedy 喜剧 comic 喜剧的, 滑稽的 comical 古怪的, 可笑的

★liner n. 班船
★voyage n. 航行
voyage 海上航行
flight 飞行
journey 长途行程
navigation 航海, 航海术
The voyage is more than the old lady can bear.

★iceberg n. 冰山
★lookout n. 瞭望员
★collision n. 碰撞
collide vi 碰撞, 抚触
The plane collided with the mountain
crash v. 坠毁
It is said that there is an airplane that crashed in the mountains.
conflict vi. 和某事(某人)相抵触
My idea conflicts with yours.
clash vi. 相冲突
Eg: His wedding clashed with my examination, so I couldn't go.

★narrowly adv. 刚刚, 勉强地
★miss v. 避开
★slight adj. 轻微的
★tremble v. 震颤
tremble v. 有规律的、小幅度的抖动
Look, your hands are trembling, what's wrong with you?

shiver v. 强调由于寒冷、惧怕而一连串地抖动
I found he's shivering in a cold.
shudder vi. 强调全身的颤栗
The boy is shuddering, why? Because he was frightened.

★faint adj. 微弱的
faint: weak
faint sound / weak sound; weak voice / faint voice
faint: unconscious 失去知觉
He has been faint for a long time.
slight 轻微的, 微不足道的
a slight headache; a slight book

★horror n. 恐惧
★abandon v. 抛弃
abandon 因为某事而被迫放弃自己喜爱的事物
He abandoned his research because of the war.
desert 背弃, 遗弃
desert the army; desert the duty; desert his family

★plunge v. 投入, 跳入
plunge: jump or rush suddenly and wildly
He got so angry that he plunged into the water.
When the ship Titanic sank in the ocean, a large number of people plunged into...
jump: 侧重强调快速地跳
The boy is jumping up and down.
leap: 跳跃 He leapt out of the sleeping bag.
dive 跳水、潜水

★lifeboat n. 救生船

L10-02 end 11'00"

L10-03 begin 11'53"

【Text】

§ Lesson 10 The loss of the Titanic “泰坦尼克”号的沉没
What would have happened if only two of the sixteen water-tight compartments had been flooded?

The great ship, Titanic, sailed for New York from Southampton on April 10th, 1912. She was carrying 1316 passengers and a crew of 891. Even by modern standards, the 46,000 ton Titanic was a colossal ship. At that time, however, she was not only the largest ship that had ever been built, but was regarded as unsinkable, for she had sixteen watertight compartments. Even if two of these were flooded, she would still be able to float. The tragic sinking of this great liner will always be remembered, for she went down on her

first voyage with heavy loss of life.

Four days after setting out, while the Titanic was sailing across the icy waters of the North Atlantic, a huge iceberg was suddenly spotted by a look-out. After the alarm had been given, the great ship turned sharply to avoid a direct collision. The Titanic turned just in time, narrowly missing the immense wall of ice which rose over 100 feet out of the water beside her. Suddenly, there was a slight trembling sound from below, and the captain went down to see what had happened. The noise had been so faint that no one thought that the ship had been damaged. Below, the captain realized to his horror that the Titanic was sinking rapidly, for five of her sixteen watertight compartments had already been flooded! The order to abandon ship was given and hundreds of people plunged into the icy water. As there were not enough life-boats for everybody, 1500 lives were lost.

【课文讲解】

The loss of the Titanic

The great ship, Titanic, sailed for ...背景介绍

sail for 航海去往某处

set out (off) for 出发去往某处

leave for, head for, make for

Eg: He will set out for the Atlantic.

The plane is making for the airport.

We are heading for Canada.

She was carrying...

carry 表示载有; a crew of 一组人员

Even by... by : according to 表示依据

modern standards 现代的标准

by regulation 依据规则 ; by rules 依据条例

by our estimate 根据我们的估计

by one's looks / by one's appearance 根据某人的长相

according to 依据 (事实、课文等客观存在的现实)

according to the fact 依据事实

according to the text 依据这篇课文

在我看来: in my opinion

according to / in accordance with

in accordance with 更加正式

in accordance with law 依据法律

in accordance with rules

at that time 在当时

not only... but (also)... 不仅...而且

be regarded as: be considered to be, be

thought of as 把...看作为

口语中: regard sb. / sth. as + (n. / pron. / adj. / doing / done)

Eg: I regarded his idea as totally unacceptable.

We can't regard the matter as settled.

for 表示原因

be able to 强调有能力

be remembered 被永远记住

go down: sink

on her first voyage 处女航, 首航

with heavy loss of life 损失惨重, 造成大批人员的死亡

four days after setting out... : four days after setting off...

...spotted...: suddenly discovered by a look out

icy waters 水域, 海域

the alarm had been given 发出警

to avoid...不定式表目的

just in time 很及时

missing 现在分词做状语, 表示对主句的补充说明

narrowly 勉强地

which 指代 the immense wall of ice

from below 从下方 from above 从上方

... so faint that no one thought that...

so... that...

to one's horror 使某人感到惊讶

five of her sixteen watertight compartments had been filled with water.

The order was given 命令被下达

to abandon ship 弃船, 不定式做定语

As (because) there were not enough lifeboats... 1,500 lives died.

the order was given. 命令被下达

to abandon ship 弃船 不定式做做定语

ability 能力

the ability to do sth.

order sb. to do sth.

be capable of doing sth. 强调有做某事的能力

capability of doing sth. 做某事的能力

L10-03 end 11'53"

L10-04 begin 10'44"

【Special difficulties】

Word Building 构词法

动词后加-er, 如果是以不发音的-e 结尾的, 只加-r, 表示行为的主动者, 做某事的人。

work----worker teach----teacher

murder----murderer

write----writer read----reader

动词后加-ist, 表示某种主义者、信仰者; 从事某种事业、研究的人

copy----copyist type----typist novel --
-- novelist

drug---- druggist tobacco----- tobacconist

形容词后加-ness, 抽象名词, 表示一种性质、情况、状态

kind----kindness bitter----bitterness

happy----happiness

willing----willingness

某些动词后加-ion, 构成名词

suggest----suggestion ...

以-te 结尾的动词, 把不发音的-e 去掉, 再加-ion

translate----translation complete----
completion

graduate---- graduation

某些以-aim /-ain 结尾的动词, 把-i 去掉, 再加-
ation

explain----explanation exclaim----
exclamation

以-ity 结尾, 放在形容词之后, 构成抽象名词, 表示
性质、状态

以-able / -ible 对尾的形容词变成名词, 充成
-ability / -ibility

able----ability probable----probability
possible----possibility mobile----mobility

Exercese

Supply the missing words in the following
sentences:

1 He studied physics at university. He is a
p____.

2 He works in a mine. He is a m____.

3 Pasteur did a great service to _____
(human).

4 He is trying to make a good _____
(impress).

5 His paintings have been admired for their
_____ (original).

Key: 1. physicist 2. miner 3. humanity
4. impression 5. originality

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 When the Titanic set out from
Southampton _____.

- a. she was carrying a very large cargo
b. she was making a voyage which is only
attempted by very large ships
c. only two of her watertight compartments

were flooded

d. she was sailing on her maiden voyage

1. D

2 What happened once the icebery had
been spotted?

- a. The Titanic got lost in the icy waters of
the North Atlantic.
b. The alarm was given that there was a
collision ahead.
c. The Titanic quickly changed her course.
d. The Titanic turned just as the iceberg rose
steeply out of the water.

2. C

3 The Titanic sank because _____.

- a. she had been badly damaged by an
iceberg
b. the captain was slow to realize the true
nature of the damage
c. no more than five of her watertight
compartments had been flooded
d. instead of trying to save her, people
plunged into the water

3. A

Structure

4 _____ were 1,316 passengers and a crew
of 891. (II.2-3)

- a. On her board b. On board her c.
Boarding her d. On boarding ner

4. B her 指代的是 the great ship
on board the plane / the train

5 No one thought she _____ sink, for she
had sixteen watertight compartments. (II.5-6)

- a. would be possible to b. would be able
to c. should d. could possibly

5. D 表示下沉的可能性

6 She _____ four days when a huge
iceberg was suddenly spotted. (II.9-10)

- a, sailed b. was sailing c. has sailed
d. had been sailing

有了段时间 four, 用过去完成进行时

6. D

7 So faint _____ that no one thought...
(II.13-14)

- a. the noise was b. had been the noise
c. it was the noise d. it had been the
noise

So 位于句首, 句子必须倒装

7. B

8 As there were _____ lifeboats for every body...(ll.16-17)
 a. as little b. so little c. very few d. too few
 not enough lifeboats
 8. D

Vocabulary

9 The great ship _____ sharply to avoid a direct collision. (ll.10-11)
 a. veered b. changed c. went back
 d. cornered
 突然转向
 veer = turn
 9. A

10 The Titanic turned _____ narrowly missing the immense wall...)(ll.11-12)
 a. in next to no time b. on a sudden impulse
 c. with no time to spare d. nearly on time
 just in time 躲得很及时
 in next to no time = at once, immediately
 on a sudden impulse: 凭一时的冲动
 10. C

11. The captain went down to _____. (l.13)
 a. explore b. investigate c. examine
 d. inquire
 重点在于下去调查
 11. B

12 There was not enough _____ in the lifeboats for everybody. (ll.16-17)
 a. room b. place c. volume d. area
 room 空间 volume 容量, 容积 area 地区
 place 地方, 地点
 12. A

L10-04 § Lesson 10 end 10'44"

L11-01 § Lesson 11 begin

§ Lesson 11 Not guilty 无罪

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

◆guilty	adj. 犯罪的, 违法的
◆tolerant	adj. 宽容的
◆declare	v. 申报
◆hardened	adj. 有经验的
◆professional	adj. 职业的, 专业的
◆smuggler	n. 走私者
◆officious	adj. 爱管闲事的
◆confidently	adj. 自信地
◆dreadful	adj. 可怕的, 一团糟的
◆pounce	v. 猛抓, 扑住
◆perfume	n. 香水
◆sarcastically	adv. 讽刺地
◆exempt	adj. 被免除的

◆duty	n. 税
◆gel	n. 凝胶
◆mixture	n. 混合物
◆unscrew	v. 拧开
◆nostril	n. 鼻孔
◆chalk	n. 粉笔
◆baggage	n. 行李

★guilty adj. 犯罪的, 违法的
 He felt guilty when he did what he shouldn't have done.
 He said that with a guilty smile.
 guilt n.
 guiltily a.
 反义词: innocent, innocence n.

★tolerant adj. 宽容的
 a tolerant person must be easy going.
 tolerantly ad.
 tolerance n.
 tolerate vt.
 tolerable adj. 可以忍受的, 说得过去的

★declare v. 申报
 ★hardened adj. 有经验的
 (侧重于老练的)
 a hardened player
 a hardened thief

experienced (侧重于有经验的)
 an experienced teacher

★professional adj. 职业的, 专业的
 a professional player 选手

★smuggler n. 走私者
 ★officious adj. 爱管闲事的
 a lot of old ladies are officious.
 officiously adv.
 officiousness n.
 officious civil servant 好管闲事的公务员
 an officious police officer
 official 官方的, 官员的, 正式的
 An official inquiry will be made into this matter. 对此事将进行一次官方调查

★confidently adj. 自信地
 He went to do the work confidently.
 = with confidence 充满信心的

confident adj.
 confidence n.
 have confidence 有信心
 gain confidence 获得信心
 in confidence 悄悄的, 秘密的 = secretly
 take sb. into one's confidence 以某人为心腹
 Eg: The boss take his secretary into his

confidence.

★dreadful adj. 可怕的，一团糟的
= frightful (表示胆怯的，恐惧的)
dreadful (侧重于可怕的，乱七八糟的)

★pounce v. 猛抓，扑住
★perfume n. 香水
fragrance: (抽象名词) 芬芳，芳香

★sarcastically adv. 讽刺地
★exempt adj. 被免除的
★duty n. 税
Customs Duty: 关税
Stamp duty 印花税
duty free 免税的

同义词 tax income tax 所得税

★gel n. 凝胶
★mixture n. 混合物
mix v. mix sth. with

★unscrew v. 拧开
★nostril n. 鼻孔
★chalk n. 粉笔
★baggage n. 行李
同义词 luggage

【Text】

§ Lesson 11 Not guilty 无罪

Q: What was the Customs Officer looking for?

Customs Officers are quite tolerant these days, but they can still stop you when you are going through the Green Channel and have nothing to declare. Even really honest people are often made to feel guilty. The hardened professional smuggler, on the other hand, is never troubled by such feelings, even if he has five hundred gold watches hidden in his suitcase. When I returned from abroad recently, a particularly officious young Customs Officer clearly regarded me as a smuggler.

'Have you anything to declare?' he asked, looking me in the eye.

'No,' I answered confidently.

'Would you mind unlocking this suitcase please?'

'Not at all,' I answered.

The Officer went through the case with great care. All the things I had packed so carefully were soon in a dreadful mess. I felt sure I would never be able to close the case again. Suddenly, I saw the Officer's face light

up. He had spotted a tiny bottle at the bottom of my case and he pounced on it with delight.

'Perfume, eh?' he asked sarcastically. 'You should have declared that. ' Perfume is not exempt from import duty.'

'But it isn't perfume,' I said. 'It's hair-oil.' Then I added with a smile, 'It's a strange mixture I make myself.'

As I expected, he did not believe me.

'Try it!' I said encouragingly.

The Officer unscrewed the cap and put the bottle to his nostrils. He was greeted by an unpleasant smell which convinced him that I was telling the truth. A few minutes later, I was able to hurry away with precious chalk-marks on my baggage.

【课文讲解】

quite tolerant

我们在运用形容词、动词时，往往需要用副词来强调。

表示“真正的” really

a really officious person

强调“特别，尤其是” particularly

强调“绝对的” absolutely

强调“完全的，彻底的” completely, entirely, fully, thoroughly

L11-01 end 10'35"

L11-02 begin 9'33"

fairly----强调“一般般”

very ----语气程度强烈“非常”

rather----语意程度接近 fairly, 注意修饰形容词和副词，特别是形容词同时修饰名词时，不定冠词的位置。

A fairly good book.

A rather good book / Rather a good book rather too

quite---- ~ right / wrong / mistaken / sure
绝对不能用于 very 替代。

Even really honest people...

a particularly officious young Customs Officer...

the Green Channel = the Custom Office

are made **to** feel guilty

make, have, let 及感官性动词 see, hear, notice, feel 用于主动语态，符合宾语不定式的 **to** 符号应该省略。但这种结构改成被动式时，不定式符号必须还原。

We heard someone come up the stairs.

Someone was heard to come up the stairs.

(On the one hand...,) on the other hand

On the one hand we could stay and help

you, **but** on the other hand it might be better if you went to help him instead.

hidden in his suitcase

过去分词短语作定语, 修饰 watches.

even if / though he has five hundred gold watches hidden in his suitcase.

looking me in the eye: 两眼直盯盯的注视着我

look sb. in the face, stare sb. in the eye = look directly at sb.

Not one of the men dared look him in the eye.

'Would you mind unlocking this suitcase please?'

L11-02 end 9'33"

L11-03 begin 10'44"

The Officer went through the case with great care. = The Officer examined the case carefully.

with great care----强调相当的仔细

in a mess: 乱作一团

介词 in 和名词搭配, 表示一种状态

秩序井然: in good order

身体健康: in good health

心情好: in a good mood

脾气好: in a good temper

light up: 喜气洋洋, 容光焕发

Eg: Masha's face lit up when she saw her old friend.

His face lighted up at the small triumph.

Tom really lighted up when he saw the new bicycle.

light 有两种过去分词, 过去式形式: lit, lighted

但是如果运用过去分词作定语, 表示被点燃的。要用 lighted

一只被点燃的雪茄: a lighted cigar

点燃的火炬: a lighted stick.

介词短语——with delight “欣喜若狂的”

with 和抽象名词搭配, 表示内心充满了一种感情

自信地: with confidence

细心地: with care

骄傲的: with pride

欣喜若狂的: with delight

惊讶的: with surprise

pounce on: 向...猛扑过去, 对...大做文章

Eg: The policeman pounced on the thief.

Don't pounce on my mistake.

should have 和过去分词搭配, 表示本应该做某事

却没有做, 具有谴责性的味道。

You should have arrived here five minutes earlier.

You should have told me about it.

本不应该做某事: shouldn't have done

exempt: 免除的, 被免除的 be ~ from

Drinks are not exempt from import duty.

as----关系代词, 引导非限制性定语从句。他所指代的内容就是主句的整个句子的含义。

As we know, the earth is round. (众所周知)

As Brian pointed out, ... (正如...所指出的)

正如我很快得知的: as sb. mentioned

关系代词 as 和 which 的区别:

as 所引导 的非限制性定语从句, 可用在主句之前

which 引导的非限制性定语从句, 只能用在主句之后。

副词形式: encouragingly

He was greeted by an unpleasant smell...

greet: 问候, 向...致意; 觉察到, 呈现在...眼前, 在...耳边

I woke up and was greeted by a bird's song.

Inside the room a dreadful mess greeted us.

When he went into the kitchen, a smell greeted him.

precious: 珍贵的

L11-03 end 10'44"

L11-04 begin

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 What makes really honest people feel guilty when going through Customs?

a. Having five hundred gold watches hidden in their suitcases.

b. The particularly officious way Customs Officers always ask questions.

c. The fact that they are treated as potential smugglers.

d. Carrying things which are not exempt from import duty.

1. C

2 What made the Customs Officer's face light up?

a. Knowing how difficult it would be for the writer to close his case.

b. Seeing the bottle of hair gel which he could charge duty on.

c. The idea of having found something which should have been declared.

d. discovering an unopened bottle of perfume at the bottom of the case.

what---- 名词

2. C

3 The writer was in a hurry to get away because _____.

- a. he had grown impatient at having taken so long to get through Customs
b. he was anxious to get away from the unpleasant smell
c. he was afraid he might still be stopped for smuggling
d. he was trying to escape with precious chalk marks

3. A

Structure

4 The Customs Officer asked him _____ he had anything to declare. (l.9)

- a. that b. what c. for d. whether

4. D

5 'Have you anything to declare?' he asked, looking _____.(l.9)

- a. direct to me b. me directly c. directly at me d. in my direction
look him in the eye / face = look directly at him

5. C

6 'Would you _____ please? (l.11)

- a. unlock kindly this suitcase b. kindly unlock this suitcase
c. unlock this suitcase kindly d. be kind to unlock this suitcase

Would you kindly do sth. please?

6. B

7 he told him he _____ it. (l.16)

- a. ought to have declared b. must have declared c. had to declare d. needed to declare

7. A

8 _____ the cap, the Officer put the bottle to his nostrils. (l.22)

- a. Having unscrewed b. Unscrewed c. Being unscrewed d. With unscrewed

8. A

Having finished his homework, he went to bed.

Vocabulary

9 Customs Officers are quite tolerant these days. They are _____. (l.1)

- a. tolerable b. placid c. easy-going d. negligent

tolerable 能忍耐的, 可忍受的 placid 平静的

tolerable 宽容的, 好相处的 negligent 疏忽的

9. C

10 A hardened professional smuggler feels _____ his behaviour. (ll.4-5)

- a. unashamed of b. unwronged by c. unshocked by d. guiltless of

10. A

feel ashamed of 为... 感到羞愧

guiltless of 无辜的

★11 As I expected, he was _____. (l.20)

- a. incomprehensible b. incredible c. incredulous d. sceptical

incomprehensible = unable to be understood

The article is full of incomprehensible technical expressions.

incredible = unbelievable 难以置信的

What you said is incredible.

incredulous 不轻信的

skeptical = unwilling to believe 不愿意相信的, 持怀疑态度的

11. D

12 I was able to hurry away with precious chalk marks on my _____. (ll.23-24)

- a. handbags b. luggage c. casement d. equipment

baggage = luggage

12. B

L11-04 end 8'29"

L12-01 begin 7'52"

§ Lesson 12 Life on a desert island 荒岛生活

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

- ◆ desert island 荒岛
- ◆ unrealistic adj. 不真实的
- ◆ Paradise n. 天堂, 乐土
- ◆ wretched adj. 可怜的, 艰苦的
- ◆ Starve v. 挨饿
- ◆ element n. 成分
- ◆ opportunity n. 机会
- ◆ coral n. 珊瑚
- ◆ Virgin Islands 维尔京群岛
- ◆ Miami n. 迈阿密 (美国最南的城市)
- ◆ dinghy n. 救生筏, 小船
- ◆ Caribbean n. 加勒比海
- ◆ spear gun 捕鱼枪
- ◆ lobster n. 龙虾
- ◆ tanker n. 油轮
- ◆ genuinely adv. 由衷地
- ◆ Robinson Crusoe 鲁宾逊·克鲁索 (小说《鲁宾逊漂流记》主人公)

★desert island 荒岛

desert : 沙漠
v. 背弃, 遗弃
dessert: 甜点

★unrealistic adj. 不真实的

★paradise n. 天堂, 乐土

a lot of people imagine the USA as their paradise.

heaven: 天堂, 天国, 也指死亡

★wretched adj. 可怜的, 艰苦的

miserable

lead a wretched / miserable / terrible life

★starve v. 挨饿

starve to death

★element n. 成分

★opportunity n. 机会

golden opportunity 绝佳的机会

opportunity knocks only once 千载难逢的机会

chance 表机会时可以与 opportunity 互换, 表可能性时则不可

I had chance / opportunity of visiting Paris.

There is a chance that I will see him.

The chances are that he will be elected the president.

The chances are that he will pass his examination next week.

+ of, to

He had not opportunity to see her.

★oral n. 珊瑚

★Virgin Islands 维尔京群岛

★Miami n. 迈阿密 (美国最南的城市)

★dinghy n. 救生筏, 小船

★Caribbean n. 加勒比海

★spear gun 捕鱼枪

★lobster n. 龙虾

★tanker n. 油轮

★genuinely adv. 由衷地

He is genuinely thankful to me.

adj. genuine

n. genuineness

★Robinson Crusoe 鲁滨逊·克鲁索 (小说《鲁滨逊漂流记》主人公)

【Text】

§ **Lesson 12 Life on a desert island** 荒岛生活

What was exceptional about the two men's stay on the desert island?

Most of us have formed an unrealistic picture of life on a desert island. We sometimes imagine a desert island to be a sort of

paradise where the sun always shines. Life there is simple and good. Ripe fruit falls from the trees and you never have to work. The other side of the picture is quite the opposite.

Life on a desert island is wretched. You either starve to death or live like Robinson Crusoe, waiting for a boat which never comes. Perhaps there is an element of truth in both these pictures, but few of us have had the opportunity to find out.

Two men who recently spent five days on a coral island wished they had stayed there longer. They were taking a badly damaged boat from the Virgin Islands to Miami to have it repaired. During the journey, their boat began to sink. They quickly loaded a small rubber dinghy with food, matches, and tins of beer and rowed for a few miles across the Caribbean until they arrived at a tiny coral island. There were hardly any trees on the island and there was no water, but this did not prove to be a problem. The men collected rain-water in the rubber dinghy. As they had brought a spear gun with them, they had plenty to eat. They caught lobster and fish every day, and, as one of them put it 'ate like kings'. When a passing tanker rescued them five days later, both men were genuinely sorry that they had to leave.

【课文讲解】

form an unrealistic picture of sth. 对...抱有不着实际的幻想

L12-01 end 7'52"

L12-02 begin

A large number of people have formed an unrealistic picture of the job.

imagine sth. to be / imagine sth. as

Some people imagine flying to be more dangerous than traveling by train.

A large number of people imagine the USA as their paradise.

quite the opposite: 恰恰相反

either...or...

Either you or I am going to the party. 谓语动词和最接近的主语保持一致。

Either coming or go out don't stand on the doorway. 要么进来, 要么出去, 不要站在门口。

An element of truth: a bit of truth

Optimistic: 乐观的

Pessimistic: 消极的, 悲观的

Wish 做谓语动词, 其后的宾语从句中要使用虚拟语气; 虚拟语气的结构形式取决于所表达的实际情况:

1. 如果表达对现在的遗憾或与现在相反的情况, that 从句中的动词要采用过去时, be 动词要用 were
I wish you could drive a car.
2. 如果表达对过去的遗憾或与过去相反的情况, that 从句中的动词要采用过去完成时
I wish I hadn't spent so much money.
I wish that you had written to him.

L12-02 end 8'18"

L12-03 begin 8'09"

3. 如果表达与将来事实相反或将来不可能实现的心愿, that 从句中要使用 would, could 等情态动词的过去时
I wish that I could go abroad tomorrow.
I wish that you could come here tomorrow.

if only 要比 wish 更富有戏剧性和感情色彩
If only the weather would change.
I wish the weather would change.
We wish that we knew where to look for him.
If only we knew to look for him.
If only we could have gone to the party.
If only you hadn't said that.
If only you would come here tomorrow.

Have sth. Repaired

load with 把...装载到...上
Eg: The workers are loading the truck with goods.
Unload: 卸
hardly any: very little / few
Eg: Hardly anybody likes him because he is so rude.

You hardly eat anything, what's wrong?
prove to be == turn out to be
put: express
If only we could have stayed on the desert island a little bit longer.

L12-03 end 8'09"

L12-04 begin 11'11"

【Special difficulties】

wish, if only

Exercise P60

- 1 It was silly of me not to buy that dress. I wish I _____.
- 2 You are making a lot of noise. I wish you _____.
- 3 It's a pity John's away. If only he _____.
- 4 He. I wish I _____.
- 5 I never studied at all when I was at school. I wish I _____.
- 6 I'm sorry I mentioned it to him. I wish I _____.

_____ .
Key: 1. had bought it. 显然说明的是过去的情况 "was "

2. couldn't / wouldn't make such noise...
3. were here... 强调 "他在这儿, 该有多好"; 运用 be 动词, 说明现在情况相反的概念, 无论什么人称, be 动词应该使用 were
4. could play the piano so well
5. had studied hard then. (studied)
6. hadn't mentioned it to him

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

- 1 In what way are the pictures we form of life on a desert island unreal?
a. They fail to present the wretchedness of such a situation.
b. We forget that we would be too weak to work and only imagine the pleasure of idleness.
c. They are either unduly optimistic or unduly pessimistic.
d. They lack any truth at all as most of us have never visited one.
1. C 要么是过度乐观, 要么是过度的悲观

- 2 What was the equipment the men had brought that proved essential to their survival?
a. Tools with which they had been going to repair their boat.
b. Food, matches and tins of beer.
c. Rainwater, lobster and fish.
d. A spear gun and a rubber dinghy.
Essential = very necessary 绝对必要的, 必不可少的
2. D

- 3 What made the men wish to stay on the desert island?
a. Discovering how pleasant life can be finding for oneself.
b. Having seen very few trees and no rainwater on the coral island.
c. The fact that they were able to eat the same food as kings eat.
d. Knowing they no longer needed to take their boat to Miami for repair.

3. A
find for oneself: 独立的照料某人
虚拟语气

Structure

- 4 We sometimes think of a desert island _____ a sort of paradise. (l.1)
a. to be b. as being c. is d. be
think of sb. / sth. as : 把某人、某事看作为...
4. B

5 But _____ have had the opportunity to find out. (II.7-8)

- a. we few b. hardly anybody c. little people d. not many

few of us: 我们当中, 没有几个人

5. D

6 After _____ a few miles across the Caribbean, they arrived at a small coral island. (II.11-12)

- a. they rowed b. rowed c. rowing d. to row

after prep 其后要和名词、动名词搭配, and 前后连接的并列成分, 时态是应该相呼应的

原句: They quickly loaded a small rubber dinghy with food, matches, and tins of beer and rowed for a few miles across the Caribbean until they arrived at a tiny coral island. 一般过去时形式

after 引导的时间状语从句, 表示动作在前

6. C

7 _____ were scarce there and there was no water. (II.12-13)

- a. The trees b. Trees c. Any trees d. Trees on the island

7. C

在表示类指概念的时候, 可以采用名词的复数形式; 或者运用名词的单数形式, 注意冠词的修饰。(a tree, the tree)

Refrigerators are useful. = A refrigerator is useful.

7. C

8 Both men genuinely regretted _____ . (I.16)

- a. their leave b. to have to leave c. having to leave d. they must have left

为做过的事情后悔: regret + 动名词

8. C

Vocabulary

9 A desert island is _____ place. (II.1-2)

- a. an unpopular b. an uninhabited c. a deserted d. a barren

inhabited: 有人居住的

uninhabited: 无人居住的

unpopular: 不流行的

barren: 贫瘠的

9. B

10 The other side of the picture is _____ different. (II.4-5)

- a. naturally b. rather c. really d. entirely

完全的不同

10. D

11 But this was not _____ to be a problem. (I.13)

- a. demonstrated b. thought c. shown d. found

原句: this did not **prove** to be a problem

觉得、发现苛人或某事怎么样: find sb. / sth. to be

They found the trip to be interesting. / very exciting.

某人或某事被发现怎么样: 常用被动语态

The car is found to be beautiful.

demonstrate: 论证, 表明, 举行, 示威

11. D

12 And, as one of them _____ it, they 'ate like kings'. (I.15)

- a. expressed b. placed c. told d. said

原文: as one of them **put** it

12. A

L12-04 end 11'11"

L13-01 begin

§ Lesson 13 'It's only me' “是我, 别害怕”

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| ◆costume | n. 化装服 |
| ◆consist | v. 由...组成 |
| ◆sheet | n. 被单 |
| ◆effective | adj. 有明显效果的, 有作用的 |
| ◆comfortable | adj. 舒适的 |
| ◆storeroom | n. 储藏室 |
| ◆electricity | n. 电 |
| ◆metre | n. 电表 |
| ◆pace | n. 一步 |
| ◆flee | v. 逃走 |
| ◆slam | v. 砰地关上 |

◆costume n. 化装服
costume ball 化妆舞会
costume party
fancy (dress) party
suit 西服, 西装
dress 裙子

◆consist v. 由...组成
consist of--由...组成(表示被动概念) ==be made up of ==comprise ==be composed of (强调由什么成分所构成)

Eg: Our class consist of 100 students.

The United Kingdom consists of G.B. and Northern Ireland.

The house consists of six rooms.

be composed of----

Water is composed of oxygen and hydrogen.

constitute v.----由部分构成整体

The committee **consists of** 10 members.
= Ten members **constitute** the committee.

◆sheet n. 被单

◆effective adj. 有明显效果的, 有作用的

The costume is quite effective.

His words was effective.

influential: 有潜移默化影响力的

What our parents do is influential to children.

efficacious: (医药) 有效的, 灵验的

The drug is efficacious.

fruitful: 有成效的

Their experiment is fruitful.

◆comfortable adj. 舒适的

反义词: uncomfortable

comfort n. 舒适 adj. 安慰

discomfort n. 不舒适

In spite of discomforts he is determined to stay here.

◆storeroom n. 储藏室

◆electricity n. 电

◆metre n. 电表

◆pace n. 一步

◆flee (fled, fled) v. 逃走

flee:(vt.)(vi.)(总称)泛泛强调逃离危险的境地

Eg: The people fled in panic when the bull got loose.

escape:逃出监狱, 逃出牢笼

vt. 逃掉, 逃出

Eg: He was able to escape from the house.

L13-01 end 10'33"

L13-02 begin 10'09"

I am sorry your name escaped me. 很抱歉, 我忘记你的名字了。

They tried to escape death.

◆slam v. 砰地关上

slam the door.

同义词: bang

【Text】

§ Lesson 13 'It's only me' “是我, 别害怕”
What did the man expect to find under the stairs?

After her husband had gone to work, Mrs Richards sent her children to school and went upstairs to her bedroom. She was too

excited to do any housework that morning, for in the evening she would be going to a fancy dress party with her husband. She intended to dress up as a ghost and as she had made her costume the night before, she was impatient to try it on. Though the costume consisted only of a sheet, it was very effective. After putting it on, Mrs Richards went downstairs. She wanted to find out whether it would be comfortable to wear.

Just as Mrs Richards was entering the dining-room, there was a knock on the front door. She knew that it must be the baker. She had told him to come straight in if ever she failed to open the door and to leave the bread on the kitchen table. Not wanting to frighten the poor man, Mrs Richards quickly hid in the small store-room under the stairs. She heard the front door open and heavy footsteps in the hall. Suddenly the door of the store-room was opened and a man entered. Mrs Richards realized that it must be the man from the Electricity Board who had come to read the meter. She tried to explain the situation, saying 'It's only me', but it was too late. The man let out a cry and jumped back several paces. When Mrs Richards walked towards him, he fled, slamming the door behind him.

【课文讲解】

too...to...太... 而不能

不定式 to,在大部分情况下, 表示否定概念。

not / never too ... to ...: 并不太... 所以能够

One is never too old to learn.活到老, 学到老

The question is not too difficult for me to answer.

如果在副词 too 前发现修饰语 all, but only, 不定式 to 的概念也是肯定的

Eg: They are all too satisfied to work with you. 他们都非常满意很想和你一起工作

I am only too glad to have someone to speak to.我太高兴了, 很想找个人说话

He was but too eager to get home.他太急于要回家了。

intended to = mean to :有什么打算, 意图

dress up as: 化妆成为

the night before:前一个晚上 (以过去的某一个时间为基准点)

last night:昨天晚上 (以现在为基准点)

The night before she got everything ready.

She was impatient (eager, anxious) to try it on.

be impatient to do sth: 急于要做某事, 迫不及待
= eager, anxious, hungry, thirsty, desperate,
can't wait (口)
更焦急的情况用 desperate(be desperate to do
sth), 口语中用 can't
wait.(can't wait to do sth)

try on: 试穿

After putting it on: 穿上以后

动词不定式 to wear, 用来修饰说明 comfortable,
作它的状语

The book is difficult to read.

The dress is easy to wash.

Your handwriting is easy to recognize.

it would be comfortable (for her) to wear.

It is easy for me to read

主动形式——表达被动概念

L13-02 end 10'09"

L13-03 begin 10'08"

The music is sweet to hear.

The machine needs repairing

“需要……” 被动概念, 用 need, want 和动名词形式
直接搭配

Eg: The dictionary is worth buying.

The book is worth reading.

The house is under construction

The puma is under control.

The problem is under discussion.

The thief is under arrest.

介词 under 可以表达被动的意味

Eg: The airport came into use again.

came into use: 不及物动词短语

Our time has already gone to waste. (浪
费掉, 付诸东流)

She is a respectable person. (被尊敬的人)

-able 形容词后缀, 跟在动词后表达 “能够被...
的 “

This is a returnable bottle.

“由...所组成”: consist of, comprise 本身表
达被动概念, 结构形式为主动。

there was a knock on the front door: 人有
敲门

come in: 进来

straight: 直接地, 径直地

if ever---ever 用语条件句, 表示任何时候, 任何场
合==when ever

Eg: If ever you see George give him my best
regards.

When ever he is in trouble I'll be on the
spot.

Not wanting----分词的否定结构形式, 做原因状
语。多用于句首, 也可插入句中, 主谓之间。

Eg: Not wanting to make her nervous, the
doctor didn't fully explain the seriousness of
her condition.

= The doctor, not wanting to make her
nervous, didn't fully explain the seriousness
of her condition.

read the metre: 查电表

saying---现在分词做伴随状语

let out a cry 大叫了一声===utter / give a cry.

let out 发出==give

shout 高呼, 高喊, 有目的的

shout to sb 对某人高声喊

shout at sb 对某人大喊大叫

jump back several pases

L13-03 end 10'08"

L13-04 begin 14'49"

【Special difficulties】

wear

形容词 + 动词不定式

he was delighted o learn that...

I was glad to hear that...

He was anxious to leave...

感情形容词后的不定式通常是表示原因, 在句中做原
因状语

happy, relieved, astonished, amazed,
surprised, horrified, disappointed, sad,
embarrassed, shocked

He was frightened when he saw the snake.

He was frightened to see the snake.

I was sorry when I learnt that...

I was sorry to learnt that...

不定式也可以放在表语之后, 主语是不定式的实际宾
语。

The car is hard to park.

Some questions are awkward to answer.

在少数几个动词后, 可用作结果不定式。

learn, find, see, hear, be told

he lived to see his inventions come to
success.

he woke up to find everyone gone.

He went to his house only to find him out.

在不定式前加 **only**, 表示意想不到的, 出乎意料的结果.

Eg: He hurried to the post office **only** to find it was shut (closed).

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 Mrs. Richards went upstairs because _____.

- a. she did not need to do any housework
- b. she still had to finish the costume she was going to wear
- c. she wanted to change her clothes before doing the housework
- d. she wanted to change into her fancy-dress costume

1. D

She wanted to know whether that costume was comfortable to wear.

2 Mrs. Richards did not go to the door because _____.

- a. she was upstairs changing her clothes
- b. she did not want to make a bad impression on the baker
- c. she thought the baker might be taken in by her disguise
- d. the baker had already left the bread on the kitchen table

take sb in 使某人信以为真, 让某人上当
disguise 伪装

At that moment, she was dressed up as a ghost. She didn't want to frighten the poor man. she hid as quickly as possible in the small storeroom under the stairs.

2. C

3 By saying 'It's only me', Mrs. Richards hoped _____.

- a. the man would realize she was alone
- b. to persuade the man he was seeing a ghost
- c. the man would recognize her
- d. the man would not close the door of the storeroom

3. C

Mrs. Richard hoped that the man wouldn't be shocked.

Structure

4 After her husband had gone to work and the children _____ to school, she went upstairs ... (II.1-2)

- a. had sent
- b. were sent
- c. had been sent
- d. were sending

4. C and 前后连接时态要呼应, 表示并列关系。

5 She wanted to find out how _____ to wear. (I.8)

- a. comfortable it was
- b. comfortable it would be
- c. it was comfortable
- d. it would be comfortable

how 修饰限定形容词

At that moment, she hadn't put on the costume.

5. B

6 _____ to frighten the poor man, Mrs. Richards quickly hid under the stairs. (II.11-12)

- a. Not anxious about
- b. Anxious not
- c. being not anxious
- d. Not being anxious for

...not wanting to frighten the poor man.

动词不定式的否定形式是在动词不定式符号之前直接加否定词 **not, never**

anxious 形容词做原因状语

6. B

7 trying to explain the situation, she _____ 'It's only me'. (I.14)

- a. was saying
- b. said
- c. had said
- d. has been saying

7. B 强调过去的一个动作

8 On seeing Mrs. Richards _____ towards him, he fled. (II.15-16)

- a. to walk
- b. having walked
- c. walk
- d. walked

see sb. do sth. 看见某人做某事 做宾语补足语时, 不定式符号 **to** 被省略

8. C

Vocabulary

9 _____ Mrs. Richards was entering the dining room... (I.9)

- a. At the very moment
- b. So long as
- c. Only when
- d. During the time

9. A

at the very moment 就在此刻

as long as / so as 用来引导条件句, 表示只要

You can go out as long as you promise to be back before 11 o'clock.

only when 引导时间状语从句

9. A

10 ...if she ever _____ the door and to leave the bread... (II.10-11)

- a. missed opening
- b. forgot to open
- c. did not succeed in opening
- d. happened not to open

miss+动名词, 表示错过什么事情

Eg: I don't want to miss seeing that film on television tonight.

forget to do sth. 表示忘记去做某事
yesterday, I forgot to lock the door.
succeed in doing sth. 表示成功做了某事

if……happen to……表示某事偶然发生

Eg: If you happen to pass the baker's, pick me up a brown loaf, would you? (pick sb up sth:帮某人捎带某样物品)

If you happen to finish the work early, give me a ring.

11 It was the man from the Electricity Board who had come to take a metre- _____. (ll.13-14)

a. reading b. measurement c. regulation d. study

11. A

reading 表示仪表或者仪器上的指数、读数

What are the temperature readings for the week?

take a metre-reading 读电表上的数字

measurement 测量尺寸、大小调节稳定

What's your waist measurement?

regulation 调节; regulation of body heat 体温调节

12 The man _____ a cry. (l.15)

a. escaped b. gave c. left d. shouted

let out 发出==give

shout 高呼,高喊,有目的的

shout to sb. 对某人高声喊

shout at sb. 对某人大喊大叫

Don't shout at the elders.

12. B

§ Lesson 14 A noble gangster 贵族歹徒

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

◆gangster	n. 歹徒,强盗
◆Chicago	n. 芝加哥 (美国城市)
◆protection	n. 保护
◆promptly	adv. 准时地
◆destroy	v. 毁掉; 消灭
◆remarkable	adj. 不寻常的
◆band	n. 帮, 团伙
◆Florence	n. 佛罗伦萨 (意大利城市)
◆city-state	n. (古代) 城邦
◆hire	v. 租出, 雇给
◆prince	n. 君主, 诸侯
◆Florentine	n. 佛罗伦萨人
◆funeral	n. 葬礼
◆dedicate	v. 奉献, 题献给
◆memory	n. 纪念
◆valiant	adj. 英勇的

★gangster n. 歹徒, 强盗

a band of gangsters 一伙强盗

robber 抢劫犯, 抢劫者;

bandit 强盗, 土匪

brigand (书面用语) 强盗, 土匪, 盗贼, 草寇

hooligan 流氓, 不良分子

hoodlum (口语) 罪犯, 恶汉

rascal (口语) 淘气, 捣蛋鬼

★Chicago n. 芝加哥 (美国城市)

★protection n. 保护

protection money 保护费

protect v. protect from

We must protect our eyes from the sunshine.

protective adj. 保护的

protector n. 保护者

protege n. 被保护者

★promptly adv. 准时地

I give him a ring and he call me back promptly.

He was so sleepy that he went to sleep promptly.

on time 准时/ in time 及时

punctually adv. 守时地

★destroy v. 毁掉; 消灭

destroy 强调毁灭, 消灭, 完全的摧毁

Eg: The earthquake destroyed the city. / You destroyed his dream.

damage 强受损程度不很严重, 可以被修复

break 强调弄坏, 弄断

Two of the strings were broken.

spoil 强调把事情搅和了

Eg: spoil the party. / spoil the holiday

★remarkable adj. 不寻常的

remarkable adj. : unusual; uncommon; extraordinary

a remarkable event 不同寻常的事件

an extraordinary event

outstanding adj. 突出的, 杰出的, 卓越的

Eg: Our headmaster is an outstanding youth.

distinguished adj. 杰出的, 卓越的, 不同非凡的

eminent adj. 显赫的, 杰出的, 有名的, 优良的

Eg: a distinguished physicist; an eminent surgeon; an eminent judge; a distinguished lawyer

以上都可以用来修饰那些在严肃领域的人, 比如科学, 医学等等

well-known adj. 强调众所周知的

famous adj. 因卓越的贡献和成绩而流芳百世的

Eg: She is well-known in the musical world. /

This is well-known fact.

He is a famous moviestar. / Luxun is

famous for his articles.
notorious adj. 臭名昭著的, 臭名远扬的; be famous for bad things
infamous adj. 声名狼藉的(语气较弱)
renowned adj. 某人或某事以其独特的品质、个性而闻名
Eg: Hangzhou is renowned for its beautiful...

L14-01 end 13'00"

L14-02 begin

★band n. 帮, 团伙
a band of robbers 一伙强盗
mob n. 表示贬义色彩的团伙、帮派
a mob of hooligans 一伙流氓
gang n. 一伙 a gang of thieves
nest n. 窝; a nest of bandits
pack n. 团伙、帮派; a pack of hoodlums

★Florence n. 佛罗伦萨(意大利城市)
★city-state n. (古代)城邦
★hire v. 租出, 雇给
hire; rent; let; employ
hire out; rent out 租给
Eg: Does this firm hire out cars? 这家公司出租汽车吗?
rent out 租给, 雇给: 主要强调出租房屋
Eg: He rent out his house to a tourist.
let 出租房屋: let his house / please let your house to me.
hire from/ rent from 租进来
Eg: He hired a car from us. / I rent a room from Mrs. Johnson.
hire 指短期雇佣体力劳动者
employ 指长期雇佣或聘请脑力劳动者
We employed her as our advisor.
The factory employed 500 workers.
He hired two helpers. 他雇佣了两个临时帮手。

★prince n. 君主, 诸侯
★Florentine n. 佛罗伦萨人
★funeral n. 葬礼
★dedicate v. 奉献, 题献给
dedicate to 奉献给……比 devote 更为正式而庄重
Eg: He dedicated his first book to his mother.
I devote my time to helping my students.
He dedicates his life to his motherland.
He dedicated his life to science.

put sb of business 使某人失业
put sb/sth out of ……使某人失去……
Eg: You are putting me out of patience.
put it out of your mind 忘记这件事情吧! = forget it.

★valiant adj. 英勇的
brave adj. 勇敢的
The boy is brave.
During war, soldiers are valiant.
fearless adj. 大无畏的, 无所畏惧的
We are fearless in time of danger.
courageous adj. 有胆量的, 有勇气的

★memory n. 纪念
You have a good memory.
in memory of / to the memory of
Eg: if my memory serves me well, you're Tom. 如果我没记错的话, 你是 Tom。

【Text】

§ Lesson 14 A noble gangster 贵族歹徒 Q: How did Hawkwood make money in times of peace?

There was a time when the owners of shop and businesses in Chicago had to pay large sums of money to gangsters in return for 'protection'. If the money was not paid promptly, the gangsters would quickly put a man out of business by destroying his shop. Obtaining 'protection money' is not a modern crime. As long ago as the fourteenth century, an Englishman, Sir John Hawkwood, made the remarkable discovery that people would rather pay large sums of money than have their life work destroyed by gangsters.

Six hundred years ago, Sir John Hawkwood arrived in Italy with a band of soldiers and settled near Florence. He soon made a name for himself and came to be known to the Italians as Giovanni Acuto. Whenever the Italian city-states were at war with each other, Hawkwood used to hire his soldiers to princes who were willing to pay the high price he demanded. In times of peace, when business was bad, Hawkwood and his men would march into a city-state and, after burning down a few farms, would offer to go away if protection money was paid to them. Hawkwood made large sums of money in this way. In spite of this, the Italians regarded him as a sort of hero. When he died at the age of eighty, the Florentines gave him a state funeral and had a picture painted which was dedicated to the memory of 'the most valiant soldier and most notable leader, Signor Giovanni Hawkwood'.

【课文讲解】

pay large sums of money to sb. 向某人付大笔大笔的费用

in return for 目的是为了换取...作为对...的回报
Eg: He gave me some books in return for my help.

when 引导状语从句修饰 time
Eg: There was a time when mini skirt was in fashion.

promptly: innediately
put a man out out of business: 使某人失业
put sb. / sth. out of ... 使某人失去.....
Eg: You are putting me out of patience.
You have already put everything out of order.

put it out of your mind 忘记这件事情吧

by destroying his shop 通过.....手段
Eg.: You are putting me out of patience by disturbing me. 你快把我弄得失去耐心了, 如果再这样打扰的话。

L14-02 end 13'15"

L14-03 begin 13'17"

Obtaining...
obtaining: getting

as long ago as 追溯到: dating back to / date from
Eg.: I knew Jane as long ago as the year 1980.

John hawkwood's discovery was quite remarkable.
make the remarkable discovery 做出不同寻常的发现

would rather do sth than do sth 宁愿而不
Eg.: He would rather die than surrender.
I would rather play tennis than swim.

==would prefer to do.....than do
==would prefer doing.....to doing
Eg.: He would prefer to die than surrender.
He would prefer dying to surrendering.

would rather: sooner + that 从句 (过去式)
Eg: I would rather that you were not here.
我宁愿你不在这儿。
Eg: I would rather that I didn't see you. 我宁愿没见到你。
life work 毕生的事业
Eg.: I want to have the tree cut down.

Six hundred years ago...
a band of..... 一伙.....

settled near Florence 定居在 Florence 附近

make a name for himself ===become famous
Eg.: They soon made quite a name for themselves as pop singers.

come to / get to 渐渐的
come to be known 渐渐的被人所熟知
Eg.: I come to be known to my students.
I got to know him.

whenever 无论什么时候

at war 交战 at war with 与.....交战

hire 表示出租
who 指代 prince
he demanded: Hawkwood demanded

in times of peace 在和平期间
in times of.....在.....期间

march into 大踏步进军

would offer to do=== would promise to do
burn down 烧毁/ burn up 烧光 / burn out 烧空
Eg.: the house was burned out only...

in spite of this 尽管如此

People in different countries have different ipinions.
Eg.: the Italians regarded him as a sort of hero.

give sb. a state funeral 给某人举行国葬
have sth. done
Signor (意大利语) 先生
which 指代 picture
be dedicated to the memory of sb.
the most valiant 比较级的最高级形式

★★★课文要背熟★★★

L14-03 end 13'17"

L14-04 begin 10'06"

【Special difficulties】

would rather, would sooner:
would rather do than do
would rather that (that 宾语从句中要出现动词的过去时)

Exercise P 68

Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

- 1 I'd rather _____ (go) to the cinema.
- 2 I'd rather he _____ (leave) earliest.
- 3 I'd rather you not _____ (speak) to him.
- 4 I'd rather not _____ (speak) about him.
- 5 I'd rather my father _____ (settle) the account.
- 6 She'd rather you not _____ (tell) anyone about it.

Key: 1. go
 2. left (rather 后省略了 that)
 3. ...did not speak...
 4. not speak... (否定形式结构: “宁愿不做.....” would rather not do
 5. settled...
 6. ...didn't tell...

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

- 1 What 'protection' did Chicago gangsters give to those who aid them?
 a. They saved those people's businesses from destruction.
 b. They left those people's business premises unharmed.
 c. They roctected those people against criminals like Sir John Hawkwood.
 d. They did not take those people' lives.

1. B

premises: 房产

unharmed 替代原文的 destroy

- 2 Sir John Hawkwood's Italian name, 'Giovanni Acuto', was one which _____.
 a. he gave himself in order to become better known to the Italians
 b. he earned through his sharp practice of selling his 'protection'
 c. he needed in order to hire his soldiers to Italian princes
 d. was given him in recognition of his services to the Italian states

他获取自己的名字是依据自己的所作所为

2. B

- 3 The Italians regarded Hawkwood as a sort of hero _____.
 a. in that they could not help admiring his boldness and bravery
 b. as he helped the citizens in peacetime when business was bad for them
 c. despite the protection money he offered to those whose farms he burnt
 d. for he lived so long and was given a state funeral by the Florentines

in that ==because “因为”，表示一种原因

3. A

Structure

- 4 Obtaining 'protection money' is a crime which _____ practised for a long time .(I.5)

a. has been b. is c. was d. in being

段时间——for a long time (现在完成时)

4. A

- 5 People prefer paying large sums of money _____ their life work destroyed by gangsters. (II.7-8)

a. than have b. to have c. to having
 d. than they have

prefer doing + to + 动名词

5. C

- 6 Princes used to hire _____ Hawkwood. (II.11-12)

a. his soldiers from b. soldiers from c. soldiers of d. some soldiers of

hire: 从某人租得某物

6. B

- 7 They would refuse to go away _____ rotection money was paid to them. (II.13-14)

a. unless b. provided that c. except that d. without

if not: 如果不 = unless

provided----条件是.....

7. A

- 8 _____ at the age of eighty, the Florentines gave him...)II.15-16)

a. On dying b. Having died c. On his death d. Dead

介词 on 和名词 death 相搭配，表示去世的状态

8. C

介词 on 和动名词搭配，表示一个动作：“一.....就”

Eg: On seeing him, I ran away.

Vocabulary

- 9 Six hundred years have _____ since Sir John Hawkwook arrived in...(II.9-10)

a. ast b. passed c. been d. departed

动词的过去分词

9. B

- 10 ...princes who were _____ to pay the high price he demanded. (II.11-12)

a. agreeable b. accepting c. desirable
 d. prepared

prepared: 心甘情愿的 == (willing)

be willing to do == be prepared to do

agreeable: 宜人的，惬意的

desirable: 吸引人的 (= attractive)

10. D

11 Hawkwood made large sums of money _____. (l.14)

- a. by the way b. with such manners c. on this road d. like this

12 'the most _____ soldier and most notable leader'... (ll.16-17)

- a. valuable b. worthy c. brave d. hardy

12. C

L14-04 continued 3'33"

L14-04 3'33

§ Lesson 15 Fifty pence worth of trouble 五十便士的麻烦

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

- ◆appreciate v. 欣赏, 感激
- ◆pocket money 零用钱
- ◆rattle v. 格格作响
- ◆thrifty adj. 节俭的
- ◆nephew n. 侄子, 外甥
- ◆bounce v. 弹起, 跳起
- ◆pavement n. 人行道
- ◆stick (stuck, stuck) v. 卡住, 夹住, 不能再动
- ◆brigade n. 旅, (消防) 队
- ◆grease n. 润滑油

◆appreciate v. 欣赏, 感激

Eg.: The poem is too difficult for me to appreciate.

I appreciate your help. = be thankful / grateful to sb.

◆pocket money 零用钱

beer money: 留给丈夫的零花钱

mad money: 妇子留作应急之用的私房钱

green money: 美金

soft / folding money: 纸币, 钞票

hard money: 硬币

◆rattle v. 格格作响

◆thrifty adj. 节俭的

同义词: economical

◆nephew n. 侄子, 外甥

◆bounce v. 弹起, 跳起

The coin was bounced.

同义词: jump (跳跃), leap (跃), hop (单足跳), spring (弹跳; n. 弹簧), skip (跳跃; 略过)

◆pavement n. 人行道

◆stick (stuck, stuck) v. 卡住, 夹住, 不能再动
stick: 不能跳跃, 卡住; 坚持, 粘贴

Eg.: You must stick to your idea.

Stick the stamp on the envelop.

stick with: 忠实于..... (=be faithful to)

His arm was stuck. 他的胳膊被卡住了。

◆brigade n. 旅, (消防) 队

fire brigade: 消防队

= fire department

= fire station

◆grease n. 润滑油

【Text】

§ Lesson 15 Fifty pence worth of trouble 五十便士的麻烦

Q: Did George get anything for his fifty pence? What?

Children always appreciate small gifts of money. Father, of course, provides a regular supply of pocket-money, but uncles and aunts are always a source of extra income. With some children, small sums go a long way. If sixpences are not exchanged for sweets, they rattle for months inside money-boxes. Only very thrifty children manage to fill up a money-box. For most of them, sixpence is a small price to pay for a satisfying bar of chocolate.

My nephew, George, has a money-box but it is always empty. Very few of the sixpences I have given him have found their way there. I gave him sixpence yesterday and advised him to save it. Instead, he bought himself sixpence worth of trouble. On his way to the sweet shop, he dropped his sixpence and it rolled along the pavement and then disappeared down a drain. George took off his jacket, rolled up his sleeves and pushed his right arm through the drain cover.

He could not find his sixpence anywhere, and what is more, he could not get his arm out. A crowd of people gathered round him and a lady rubbed his arm with soap and butter, but George was firmly stuck. The fire-brigade was called and two firemen freed George using a special type of grease. George was not too upset by his experience because the lady who owns the sweet shop heard about his troubles and rewarded him with a large box of chocolates.

【课文讲解】

Children always appreciate small gifts of money. 孩子们总是喜欢得到些零花钱。

Husbands always appreciate small gifts of beer money.

provide a regular supply of ...定期地提供.....

provide sth. for sb./ provide sb. with sth. 为

某人提供某物品

a source of extra income
small gifts of money
pocket money
extra income

go a long way 可以买很多东西，维持很久

Eg: The money we have will go a long way.

go a long way towards: 对……大有帮助

Eg: This will go a long way towards overcoming the difficulty.

With frugal housewives, they made their small income go a long way.

介词 With 和 For 的区别: “对于……来说”

介词 for---- “关于，对于……来说，考虑到……的事实”

Eg.: The weather is quite warm for November.

For him, this will be an entirely new hobby.

介词 with---- “在某一方面” (多用于二者的比较)

Eg.: With some people, pleasure is more important than work.

Some people may accept that excuse, but it won't work with me.

L15-01 end 10'05"

L15-02 begin 9'50"

pence: 便士 (penny 便士的复数; pennies)

a fifty pence: 一个五十便士的硬币

a fifty pence: 五十个一便士的硬币

exchange for: 换取，以……来交换

rattle: 叮当作响 ==tinkle

roar: 呼啸 (重点突出老虎、狮子等大动物的鸣叫声)

shout at: 大喊大叫 = bark at

he is grunting. 咕哝的，哼哼唧唧的

slam: 砰的一声

fill up: 装满

1. up ----表示方向

to----目的地、说话者所在处

up to ----表示到达目的地

towards----表示朝某个方向

2. 表示沿着，走向更远的地方，侧重强调距离更远了

They walked up the street.

The children run up the garden path to greet their father.

3. 系列动词 + up ---- 表示消费，摧毁，彻底，光，用完

Drink up your whisky.

Eat up your vegetable.

Finish it up.

burn up

use up 用光

4. 表示积存，从少到多，积少成多

We must lay up some boiled food for the winter.

= store up, hold up, gather up

5. 表示从河的上游到下游，河流入口处以上到源头的某一点

They are sailing up the Thames.

The house is up the river.

6. 动词 + up ----表示包起来、封住、盖住

button up 扣上钮扣

wrap up 包裹起来

lock up 锁上 lock the house up

fasten up 栓起来

save up 赚钱

wash up 洗碗盆

do up 包扎，包装，系好

fifty pence is a small price = fifty pence is not much: 装满

fifty pence is not much to pay

a small price = not much money: 并不是很多

L15-02 end 9'50"

L15-03 begin 10'04"

For him, two thousand dollars is a small price to pay for it.

For me, five hundred yuan is not a small price to pay for a bicycle.

find their way there = reach 抵达，到达，找到自己的去处

Rivers find their way to the sea.

How did such a foolish statement find its way into print. 这样愚蠢的话怎么会印出来呢。

All my books have already found their way there.

advise: 建议

advise sb. to do sth. : 说服某人做某事 (失败的结果)

persuade sb. to do sth.: 说服某人做某事 (成功的结果)

instead: 相反的是

fifty pence worth of trouble: 五十便士的麻烦

系列的动词构成平行结构: take off, rolled up, push

roll vi. 滚动; vt. 滚动

vi. The pencil rolled under the table.

vt. He rolled the ball towards the puppy.
roll up: 卷起, 挽起

We will need to roll up the carpet.

what 引导的插入语

what is more important 更重要的是

what is worse 更糟糕的是

what is more 甚者

what is rare 更罕见的是

Eg.: He went to the meeting, and what was worse, insist on speaking.

gather round 聚在周围

rubbed his arm with sth. ... 用.....涂抹

firmly: 坚定的, 稳固的 (加强语气)

using----现在分词做状语, 强调一种方式

reward ... with: 用...来奖赏某人

L15-03 end 10'04"

L15-04 begin 8'08"

【Special difficulties】 P72

Complete these sentences using the correct form of the following verbs: **do, save, wind, sail, wrap, button, go, eat.**

1 If I can _____ up enough money, I shall go abroad.

2 The steamboat _____ up the river.

3 It was very cold so I _____ up my coat before going out.

4 _____ up what is on your plate and I'll give you some more.

5 I _____ up to a policeman and asked him the way to the station.

6 He _____ the fish up in a piece of newspaper.

7 My watch has stopped because I forgot to _____ it up.

8 It takes children a long time to learn how to _____ up their shoelaces.

注: shoelace: 鞋带

Key:

1. save 2. sail 3. buttoned 4. eat 5. went (go up to sb 走到某人面前) 6. wrapped 7. wind 8. do

【Multiple choice questions】 P72

Comprehension

1 What do most children do with the money they are given?

a. They put it in their pockets.

b. They wait until their money boxes are full before spending it.

c. They go straight to a sweet shop and spend it.

d. They spend a little of it on chocolate.

1. C

2 When the writer gave him fifty pence, George _____.

a. did not hear the writer's advice

b. decided that saving it was more trouble than it was worth

c. waited until the next day before deciding to spend it on sweets

d. set out for the sweet shop, but lost it on his way

2. D

3 Once the fire fighters had come to George's rescue _____.

a. George had his arm greased and was able to get it out of the drain

b. George took his fire fighters and got some chocolate at the sweet shop

c. the lady who had failed to rescue George gave him a box of chocolates

d. George was rewarded by the owner of the sweet shop for his trouble

have sth. done

get sth. out of 某物从某处取出来

3. A

Structure

4 Fifty pence is not _____ to pay for a bar of chocolate. (II.6-7)

a. many b. much c. plenty d. big

4. B

plenty 仅用于肯定句中

much 可用于肯定句, 疑问句, 否定句中

5 I gave him fifty pence yesterday and advised him he _____ it. (II.9-10)

a. saves b. should save c. would save

d. was saving

advise sb. to do sth.

advise sb. that...

that 引导的宾语从句中必须要出现 should + 动词原形的虚拟结构

Eg.: I advise my students that they should read English for more than an hour.

6. B

6 He _____ to the sweet shop when he dropped his fifty pence. (II.10-11)

a. had gone b. was going to go c. went d. was going

6. D

如果句中的 when 表达的概念是“就在这时”、“恰恰这时”、“正当此时”, 那么其前的主句结构往往采用进行时态

Eg.: I was having dinner at a restaurant when Harry Steele came in. (二册 L11)

7 He could not find his fifty pence anywhere _____ get his arm out. (ll.12-13)

- a. nor could he b. nor he could c. neither he could d. either he could not

“也不”: neither / nor (用于句首句子必须倒装)

7. A

8 A lady put _____. (ll.13-14)

- a. on his arm soap and butter b. his arm on soap and butter
c. soap and butter on his arm d. on his arm with soap and butter

8. C

put sth. + (prep.)

Vocabulary

9 With some children, small sums _____. (ll.3-4)

- a. last a long time b. are very durable
c. have far to go d. gain in value

9. A

durable:持久的,耐久的

10 A crowd of people gathered _____ and a lady... (ll.13-14)

- a. on a tour b. in turn c. in a circle
d. in a cycle

10. C

in turn:轮流地

cycle:周期,循环

circle 圆圈,环状物

draw a circle, the cycle of the seasons

11 George was _____ stuck. (l.14)

- a. strictly b. well and truly c. hardly
d. by no means

well and truly: completely (口语用法)

Tom was well and truly drunk. Tom 烂醉如泥。

hardly 几乎不

by no means 无论如何决不

(in no way, on no account, in no sense)

11. B

12 George was not too _____ by his experience. (l.15)

- a. moved b. distressed c. excited d. embarrassed

12. B

moved 移动,打动

excited 激动

embarrassed 窘迫

Eg.: They look at each other embarrassed.

他们困窘地互相注视对方。

distressed 使难过,使悲伤

Eg.: Please don't distress yourself. 请你不要再忧愁了。

He was most distressed to hear the sad news. 他听到这悲伤的消息时十分地难过。

L15-04 end 11'46"

L16-01 begin 12'06"

§ Lesson 16 Mary had a little lamb 玛丽有一头小羔羊

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| ◆prize | adj. 珍贵的, 宝贵的 |
| ◆tie | v. 拴, 系 |
| ◆theft | n. 偷盗案 |
| ◆accuse | v. 指控 |
| ◆deny | v. 否认 |
| ◆ashamed | adj. 感到羞耻, 惭愧 |
| ◆apologize | v. 道歉 |
| ◆dye | v. 染 |

★prize adj. 珍贵的, 宝贵的

可以表示“珍贵的, 宝贵的”的词包括: prize, valuable, precious, cherishable, dear

Eg.: Mary has got a prize lamb.

The cat is prize to the old lady.

★tie v. 拴, 系

tie sth to

1. 把...拴在...上

Eg: I tie the dog to a tree

2. 与...有联系

Eg: He is tied to his family

3. n. 领带; 关系 (强调血缘关系)

★theft n. 偷盗行为, 偷盗案

Eg.: He reports the theft to the police.

★accuse v. 指控

accuse sb of doing sth 因为某事指控某人, 指控某人做了某事

Eg.: He accused his neighbour of stealing his bicycle.

= charge sb with doing sth

accuse 比 charge 语意弱: accuse 强调“严厉的指责” charge 强调“控告”

★deny v. 否认

deny doing sth. 否认做了某事

He denied stealing the lamb.

He denied the truth.

deny sb. nothing 百依百顺

Eg: He denies his wife nothing

deny oneself: 克制自己

Eg: On some occasions we must deny ourselves.

★ashamed adj. 感到羞耻, 惭愧
be ashamed of
He is ashamed of being a dustman.
shameful: 可耻的
The theft is shameful.
shameless: 无耻的
The thief is a shameless person.

★apologize v. 道歉
apologize to sb. (for sth.)
apology n.

★dye v. 染
Dye the cloth black.

【Text】

§ **Lesson 16 Mary had a little lamb** 玛丽有一头小羔羊

Q: Was Dimitri right to apologize to his neighbour? Why not?

Mary and her husband Dimitri lived in the tiny village of Perachora in southern Greece. One of Mary's prize possessions was a little white lamb which her husband had given her. She kept it tied to a tree in a field during the day and went to fetch it every evening. One evening, however, the lamb was missing. The rope had been cut, so it was obvious that the lamb had been stolen.

When Dimitri came in from the fields, His wife told him what had happened. Dimitri at once set out to find the thief. He knew it would not prove difficult in such a small village. After telling several of his friends about the theft, Dimitri found out that his neighbour, Aleko, had suddenly acquired a new lamb. Dimitri immediately went to Aleko's house and angrily accused him of stealing the lamb. He told him he had better return it or he would call the police. Aleko denied taking it and led Dimitri into his back-yard. It was true that he had just bought a lamb, he explained, but his lamb was black. Ashamed of having acted so rashly, Dimitri apologized to Aleko for having accused him. While they were talking it began to rain and Dimitri stayed in Aleko's house until the rain stopped. When he went outside half an hour later, he was astonished to find that the little black lamb was almost white. Its wool, which had been dyed black, had been washed clean by the rain!

【课文讲解】

in the tiny village of...在一个小小的山村
in the big city of Beijing

in the beautiful city of Paris

possession: 所有物
Eg: What I possess is valuable/ My possessions are valuable. 我所拥有的一切都很值钱。

belonging: 随身携带物 (通常是用复数形式)

keep: 使.....处于某种状态
keep 后的复合宾语 (宾语补足语) 可以是形容词、介词短语、分词
keep 和过去分词搭配做宾语补足语, 过去分词和宾语之间是逻辑上的动宾关系。

I keep my windows closed.

宾语补足语和宾语是主谓关系, 那么宾语补足语是现在分词结构

I kept the boy standing outside.

It is obvious that...显而易见

set out to do sth. 开始着手做某事

it would not prove difficult, 是不难做到的
prove 是连系动词, 作“证明是”讲, 本句子与 it would not be difficult 相同。

tell sb. about sth. 把某事告知某人

L16-01 end 12'06"

L16-02 begin 8'22"

Eg.: He told the police about the theft.

or: 否则

Eg.: He can't be ill or he wouldn't have come.
or else: (口语) 否则.....

Eg: Your room is so dirty. Clear it promptly, or else...

It is true that..., but... 诚然....., 但是.....

Eg.: It is true that the work is hard, but we'll finish it ahead.

Ashamed of having acted so rashly, ... 其前省略了 being, 现在分词结构 (形容词结构) 做状语, 此处相当于原因状语, 放在主句前后均可。

Angry at everybody here, he left suddenly.

Anxious for a quick decision, he called his friends.

Nervous, the man opened the letter.

L16-02 end 8'22"

L16-03 begin 8'57"

【Special difficulties】
had better do sth.

had better not do sth.

Exercise P76

Rewrite the following sentences using **had better** in place of **it would be advisable**.

- 1 It would be advisable for us to have lunch.
- 2 It would be advisable for her to renew her passport.
- 3 It would not be advisable for you to ask so many questions.
- 4 It would not be advisable for us to stay any longer.
- 5 It would be advisable for the children to get an early night.
- 6 It would be advisable for me to consult my solicitor.

Key:

- 1 We had better have lunch.
- 2 She had better renew her passport.
- 3 You had better not ask so many questions.
- 4 We had better not stay any longer.
- 5 The children had better get an early night.
- 6 I had better consult my solicitor.

注: solicitor 律师, 法律顾问

【Multiple choice questions】P76

Comprehension

- 1 Every evening, Mary used to go and _____.
a. cut the lamb from the rope it had been tied on
b. untie the lamb so it could wander in the field at night
c. bring her lamb back home for the night
d. make sure that her lamb was not missing
1. C
- 2 It would not be difficult to find the thief because _____.
a. the lamb had been one of Mary's prize possessions
b. news travels fast in a small community
c. Dimitri had a lot of friends in the village
d. the rain would soon wash the black dye off the lamb
2. B
community: 社区 village
- 3 When Aleko first showed Dimitri the lamb in his backyard _____.
a. he was truthful about how he had acquired the lamb but not about its colour
b. Dimitri admitted that the lamb could not be his wife's
c. it was clear that the lamb had been dyed black
d. it started to rain before Dimitri had time

to identify the lamb as his

3. B

Structure

4 Mary and her husband Dimitri lived in Perachora, _____ tiny village in southern Greece. (II.1-2)

- a. in a b. the c. in the d. a
4. D

5 ----was a little white lamb which had been _____ from her husband. (II.2-3)

- a. present b. presented c. presenting
d. a present

present --> absent

presented +to / with

When Mr Brown left firm, the director presented a gold watch to him.

a present from sb.

Eg.; The gold watch was present from the director.

5. D

6 On her husband's return, _____ what had happened. (II.7-8)

- a. his wife told him b. she told Dimitri
c. Mary told him d. Dimitri was told
6. C

7 ----it would not prove difficult in a village of _____ size. (II.8-9)

- a. a such small b. so small c. the smallest d. so small a
so small a size **or** such a small size

7. D

8 He told him if he _____ it, he would call the police. (I.11)

- a. was not returning b. did not return
c. has not returned d. had not returned
8. B

Vocabulary

9 One of Mary's most _____ possessions...(I.2)

- a. valued b. worthwhile c. worthy d. expensive

9. A

valued advice 宝贵的忠告

valued friend 珍贵的朋友

worthwhile 值得的

Eg.: Any exercise is worthwhile.

Studying hard is worthwhile.

worthy: 配得上的

Eg.: The chain is worthy of the watch.

His deeds are worthy of our praise. 他的行为值得我们表扬。

10 After _____ the theft to several of his

friends... (l.9)

a. telling b. reporting c. expressing
d. counting

tell somebody about something

10 B

report something to somebody

11 During their _____, it began to rain.
(ll.13-14)

a. chat b. argument c. conversation
d. speech

11. C

talk == conversation

12 When he went _____ half an hour later ...
(ll.14-15)

a. out of doors b. into the open c. in
the open air d. inside out

12. A

out of doors---outside 反义词: indoors

in the open air 在野外, 在露天

inside out: 里外反穿

Eg.: He put his socks on inside out. 他把袜子穿反了。

L16-03 end 8'57"

L17-01 begin 12'46"

§ Lesson 17 The longest suspension bridge in the world

世界上最长的吊桥

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

- ◆suspension n. 悬, 吊
- ◆agreeable adj. 宜人的
- ◆situation n. 地点, 地方
- ◆locate v. 位于
- ◆immortal adj. 永生的, 流芳百世的
- ◆Brooklyn n. 布鲁克林 (纽约一区名)
- ◆Staten n. 斯塔顿 (岛)
- ◆span n. 跨度
- ◆cable n. 缆索
- ◆concrete n. 混凝土
- ◆suspend v. 悬挂
- ◆length n. 根, 段
- ◆estimate v. 估计
- ◆immensity n. 巨大
- ◆capacity n. 承受量
- ◆elegant adj. 优美别致的
- ◆faintly adv. 微细地

★suspension n. 悬, 吊

suspension bridge 吊桥

suspend: 悬挂

Eg.: The light is suspended from the ceiling.
暂停

Eg.: The train was suspended because of the
heavy rain.

suspense: n. 担心, 挂念, 悬念

Eg.: The wonderful film give me a deep
impression because of its suspense.

He didn't tell us the truth *in cap* to me in
suspense all day.

suspenders 吊袜带

★agreeable adj. 宜人的

Today is agreeable.

agreeable situation

His house is in a agreeable situation.

★situation n. 地点, 地方

location

situate v.

locate v.

Beijing is located in the North of China.

Japan is located to the East of China.

is located to...

★locate v. 位于

★immortal adj. 永生的, 流芳百世的

★Brooklyn n. 布鲁克林 (纽约一区名)

★Staten n. 斯塔顿 (岛)

★span n. 跨度

★cable n. 缆索

★concrete n. 混凝土

★suspend v. 悬挂

★length n. 根, 段

★estimate v. 估计

underestimate 低估

overestimate 高估

Eg.: At a rough estimate, the car is worth
500 thousand RMB.

estimation n. 判断

in my estimation

★immensity n. 巨大

★capacity n. 承受量

Are you clear about the capacity of the
cinema?

做某事的能力

have a capacity for doing sth.

have a capacity to do

ability 成功地做到了

We have ability to finish the work in two
days.

capability 内在的潜力

have capability to do

have capability of doing

Any chile has capability of learning a foreign
launguge well.

Any chile has capability to learn a foreign
launguge well.

faculty 侧重于“主观的能力”

the faculty of seeing

the faculty of hearing

competence 胜任工作的能力、资格

I have competence for the job.

★elegant adj. 优美别致的

The lady is elegant.

graceful: 强调一个人的体型

elegant: 还表示人的举止很得体, 大方

delicate: 精致的

★faintly adv. 微细地

【Text】

§ Lesson 17 The longest suspension bridge in the world 世界上最长的吊桥

Q: How is the bridge supported?

Verrazano, an Italian about whom little is known, sailed into New York Harbour in 1524 and named it Angouleme. He described it as 'a very agreeable situation located within two small hills in the midst of which flowed a great river.' Though Verrazano is by no means considered to be a great explorer, his name will probably remain immortal, for on November 21st, 1964, the greatest bridge in the world was named after him.

The Verrazano Bridge, which was designed by Othmar Ammann, joins Brooklyn to Staten Island. It has a span of 4260 feet. The bridge is so long that the shape of the earth had to be taken into account by its designer. Two great towers support four huge cables. The towers are built on immense underwater platforms made of steel and concrete. The platforms extend to a depth of over 100 feet under the sea. These alone took sixteen months to build. Above the surface of the water, the towers rise to a height of nearly 700 feet. They support the cables from which the bridge has been suspended. Each of the four cables contains 26,108 lengths of wire. It has been estimated that if the bridge were packed with cars, it would still only be carrying a third of its total capacity. However, size and strength are not the only important things about this bridge. Despite its immensity, it is both simple and elegant, fulfilling its designer's dream to create 'an enormous object drawn as faintly as possible'.

【课文讲解】

L17-01 end 12'46"

L17-02 begin 10'54"

sailed into.. ----句子的主干

about whom----Italian

describe sth. as 把.....描绘成....., 认为

常见的动词有: see, view, look upon, recognize, regard, treat, accept

Eg.: I should describe the attempt as a failure.

His mother regards him as genius.

I accept his words as true.

located within two small hills in the midst of which flowed a great river 位于两座小山之间, 一条大河滔滔流过。

located... 是过去分词短语作定语, 修饰 situation;

in the midst of which 引导一个定语从句, which指 two small hills. 句子结构要倒装(flowed in a great river 之前)

in the midst of, 在.....之中。

in the midst of two small hills flowed a great river

A great river flowed in the middle of the two hills.

in the middle of the night == at midnight

in the middle of the winter

in the middle of the summer

I like the village located within two small hills.

Eg.: 我们来到了一个农庄, 在这个农庄的前面有一座大山。

We arrived at a farm house. in front of which is a mountain. 动词位于主语之前
though / although / even though 引导让步状语从句

用了 though, although 不能使用 but, yet 可以用——强调转折关系。

by no means 决不, 绝对不 (加强语气)

E.: It is by no means pleasant to take a crowded bus. 乘坐一辆拥挤的公交车无论如何不是一件令人高兴的事。

not by any means

not at all

He isn't satisfied with a job at all.

in no way

in no case

in no sense

in no circumstances

remain immortal

be named after

be named for

take one's name from

L17-02 end 10'54"

L17-03 begin 11'08"

a span of: 跨度, 桥长

take into account / take into consideration / take account of 考虑到

Eg.: We have to take the date into account when we have the meeting.

support : hold up 支撑

extend 延伸, 伸展

a railway extends to the next city

extend to a depth of 深度

extend to a length of 长度

extend to a width of 宽度

rise to 上升的高度

which 指代先行词 cables

It has been estimated / expected that... 据估计

It is said

It is reported

It has been estimated / expected

be packed with... 作“挤满.....; 装满”解
were 虚拟语气

carry 承载

a third 三分之一

immensity----size

despite==in spite of

fulfilling: 分词做状语表结果

The bus was held up by the snowstorm, causing the delay.

her husband died in 1970, leaving her with two children.

At last he passed his examination, fulfilling his dream to go abroad. 他终于通过了这次考试, 实现了出国的梦想(现在分词做结果状语, 表示一种主动的概念。)

【Special difficulties】 P80

He is by no means considered to be a great explorer. (II.4-5) 动词不定式(compare ISD 84)
(对比第二册第 84 课难点)

Instead of saying: I find that he is quite unsuitable for the job.

We can say: I find him to be quite unsuitable for the job.

find sb. to be 好多动词后面既可以跟宾语从句, 又可以和动词不定式 to 搭配连用, 其意义无差别。常见的动词如下:

believe, consider, find, declare, feel, know, suppose, think, presume, estimate, understand

Eg.: I consider that he is the best candidate.

I consider him to be the best candidate.

We estimated that this picture is worth at least 500 pounds.

We estimated this picture to be worth at least 500 pounds.

L17-03 end 11'08"

L17-04 begin 9'55"

【Multiple choice questions】P80 Comprehension

1 Verrazano's name will probably remain immortal because _____.

a. it was after he discovered New York Harbour that a bridge was built

b. he named the river that the new bridge crosses

c. he was an explorer of considerable means

d. it has been given to the world's longest suspension bridge

1. D

the longest suspension bridge was named after Verrazano.

2 The Verrazano Bridge was built with so wide a span because _____.

a. it had to cover a wide stretch of water

b. of the unusual shape of the earth around Brooklyn and Staten Island

c. the water that lies between Brooklyn and Staten Island is very deep

d. the number of wires in each cable is so great

2. A

a wide stretch of water 连续不断的水域

3 In designing the Verrazano Bridge, Othmar Ammann _____.

a. had to account for the curvature of the earth's surface

b. spent over a year building the platforms that form the bridge's base

c. had to consider the number of vehicles that might cross the bridge as much as possible.

d. wished to reduce the size of the bridge as much as possible

3. A

The bridge is so long that the shape of the earth had to be taken into account by its designer.

account for 考虑

take account of / take into account

curvature 弯曲度

Structure

4 He described it _____ situated. (II.2-3)

a. as being very agreeably

b. was very

agreeable to be

c. very agreeably having been d. very agreeably as being
describe sth. as

4. A

situated 动词过去分词接受 agreeably 的限定

5 The Verrazano Bridge, _____ the design of Othmar Ammann. (I.8)

a. is b. was c. were d. has been

5. A

6 The length of the bridge is _____ the shape of the earth. (II.9-10)

a. so that b. such that c. that which d. thus

6. B

强调桥梁的长度就是如此，所以地球的形状被考虑 such that

7 The towers are built on _____ which are sunk beneath the water. (II.0-11)

a. ferro-concrete immense platforms
b. immense made of ferro-concrete platforms
c. and made of ferro-concrete immense platforms
d. immense ferro-concrete platforms

重点突出 platforms

7. D

不能用连接词 and

immense adj. 描述性形容词用于物质名词的前面

8 Even if the bridge were packed with cars, it could still _____ three times the load. (II.14-15)

a. be carrying b. be able to carry c. only carry d. carry

the load: the total capacity

can 不能与 be able to 搭配连用

can + 动词原形，表示一般的能力

8. D

Vocabulary

9 'a very agreeable situation with two small hills lying _____.' (II.3-4)

a. on either side b. on every side c. besides d. side by side

9. A

either 表示两者中的每一方的

He sat in the car with a policeman on either side of him.

on either side of the street

either adj. 修饰名词的单数形式

both adj. 修饰名词的复数形式

every adj. 用于三者或三者以上， all

in every direction / in all directions

side by side 肩并肩的，并排

The two bottles stood side by side on the table.

walk side by side

10 The Verrazano Bridge _____ Brooklyn with Staten Island. (I.8)

a. attaches b. unifies c. links d. relates

10. C

link with / join to

attach to 把.....牢牢地系上

She attached a check to the order form.

relate to (with) 表示在.....之间建立联系

I can't relate what you say happened with what I saw.

11 A bridge which is hung from cables is known as a _____ bridge. (II.12-13)

a. suspended b. suspense c. suspension d. suspender

11. C

suspension bridge 吊桥

suspended 推迟的，延期的

The judge gave him a suspended sentence. 法官判了他缓刑。

suspense 担心，不安，悬念

The competitors in the beauty contest were kept in suspense waiting for the result.

suspender 吊索，吊袜带

12 If the bridge were loaded with as many cars as it could _____, it would still... (II.14-15)

a. sustain b. endure c. receive d. take

12. D

take 容纳，装载

The tank will take about twelve gallons.

sustain 支撑，承受住

I don't think this floor will sustain the weight of the grand piano.

endure 经受，承受痛苦、苦难

receive 收到

§ Lesson 18 Electric currents in modern art 现代艺术中的电流

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

◆ current	n. 电流
◆ sculpture	n. 雕塑
◆ mistaken	adj. 错误的
◆ gallery	n. 美术馆
◆ exhibit	n. 展品，陈列品
◆ oddly	adv. 古怪的
◆ attach	v. 连，系
◆ sphere	n. 球体
◆ magnetize	v. 使磁化
◆ repel	v. 排斥

◆flicker	v. 闪烁
◆emit	v. 放射
◆flash	v. 闪光
◆prehistoric	adj. 史前的, 老掉牙的
◆electronic	adj. 电子的
◆peculiar	adj. 奇异的
◆shock	v. 令人震惊, 刺激人
◆emotionally	adv. 感情上

★current n. 电流

current n. the flow of electricity 电流

a continuous movement of water
水流

adj. 目前的, 现在的; current affairs 时事

currency n. 流通(货币)

currently adv. 普遍地, 通常地, 现在, 当前

★sculpture n. 雕塑

sculptural adj. 雕刻的, 雕刻般的

sculptor n. 雕刻家

★mistaken adj. 错误的

mistaken adj. incorrect; wrong;
misunderstood

Eg.: The teacher has mistaken opinion of his pupil. He doesn't use simple plain language and he is often mistaken.

make a mistake / by mistake 弄错了

He took my umbrella by mistake.

and no mistake 确实如此(口语)

Eg: He is honest and no mistake.

mistake vt.

mistake sb. for 把某人误认为

Eg.: Yesterday, I mistook him for my classmate.

★gallery n. 美术馆

★exhibit n. 展品, 陈列品

exhibit: show in public

exhibition n. 展览会

Eg.: Yesterday we went to an exhibition to visit exhibits.

★oddly adv. 古怪的

oddly: strangely

odd adj. 古怪的

strange adj. 因为陌生而奇怪的

queer adj. 奇特的

Eg.: Look, he is wearing a queer hat.

fantastic adj. 奇妙的

eccentric adj. 怪癖的; He is an eccentric person.

★attach v. 连, 系

attach vt. 系, 拴, 粘上, 贴上

attach to

Eg.; he attached the lamb to a tree.

attach to sb. for sth. 因为某事而把.....加在某人身上

Eg.: We didn't attach blame to him for his failure.

attach importance to sth. 对某事非常重视

Eg.: We attach importance to education.

be attached to sth. 喜欢, 喜爱

Eg.: I'm very attached to her.

attachment n. 固定, 爱慕, 友情, 附着

★sphere n. 球体

★magnetize v. 使磁化

magnetized vt.

Eg.: The iron was magnetized.

His speech magnetized the listeners.

★repel v. 排斥

repel vt.: to drive back; cause feelings of dislike

Eg.: the different sexes attract each other and the same sexes repel on the contrary.

Let me go at once, you repel me. 让我走, 你真让我恶心。

★flicker v. 闪烁

★flash v. 闪光

flicker v. shine unsteadily

flash v. shine for a moment

★emit v. 放射

emit v. give off

emit sound / emit smell / emit light / emit

heat / emit smoke

L18-01 end 9'38"

L18-02 begin 9'53"

★prehistoric adj. 史前的, 老掉牙的

peculiar adj. strange and unusual

Eg.: The food has peculiar taste.

I'm feeling rather peculiar.

★electronic adj. 电子的

◆peculiar adj. 奇异的

peculiar adj. strange and unusual

Eg.: The food has peculiar taste.

I'm feeling rather peculiar.

◆shock v. 令人震惊, 刺激人

get shocked 受震动

At the news, he got shocked.

shock n. 震惊; get a big shock

◆emotionally adv. 感情上

emotional adj. 易激动的, 情绪的, 感情脆弱的

Eg.: I think you agree with me, women are often said to be more emotional than men.
反义词 unemotional
emotion: n. 感情:

Eg.: love, hatred, and grief are emotions.
feeling n. 某时的内心感受

Eg. : I can't describe my feeling now.

emotive adj. 引起情绪反应的

The word home is more emotive than house.
emotionally; emotional; unemotional;
emotive; emotion; feeling

【Text】

§ Lesson 18 Electric currents in modern art 现代艺术中的电流

Q: How might some of the exhibits have been dangerous?

Modern sculpture rarely surprises us any more. The idea that modern art can only be seen in museums is mistaken. Even people who take no interest in art cannot have failed to notice examples of modern sculpture on display in public places. Strange forms stand in gardens, and outside buildings and shops. We have got quite used to them. Some so-called 'modern' pieces have been on display for nearly fifty years.

In spite of this, some people--including myself--were surprised by a recent exhibition of modern sculpture. The first thing I saw when I entered the art gallery was a notice which said: 'Do not touch the exhibits. Some of them are dangerous!' The objects on display were pieces of moving sculpture. Oddly shaped forms that are suspended from the ceiling and move in response to a gust of wind are quite familiar to everybody. These objects, however, were different. Lined up against the wall, there were long thin wires attached to metal spheres. The spheres had been magnetized and attracted or repelled each other all the time. In the centre of the hall, there were a number of tall structures which contained coloured lights. These lights flickered continuously like traffic lights which have gone mad. Sparks were emitted from small black boxes and red lamps flashed on and off angrily. It was rather like an exhibition of prehistoric electronic equipment. These Peculiar forms not only seemed designed to shock people emotionally, but to give them electric shocks as well!

【课文讲解】

rarely: seldom

We are not surprised at modern sculpture...

that 引导同位语从句, 修饰限定 the idea 的内容。

Eg. : The idea that one can learn English well in English-speaking countries is mistaken.

重点句式结构

who take no interest in art 修饰说明 people

take interest in 对.....感兴趣

take delight in 对.....感到高兴

take pride in 对.....感到骄傲

show interest in 显示对.....的兴趣

cannot; failed to 双重否定意味着肯定; 加强语气
he must have passed his examination last week.

He cannot have failed to pass his examination last week.

You must keep your promise.

You can't fail to keep your promise.

On display / on show

We can see sculptures everywhere.

用夸张的口吻表明事实

in spite of this 尽管如此

作者表明了自己的观点

重点句型

The first thing I saw when I entered the art gallery was a notice which said:

The first thing... was a notice which said...

定语从句省略 that

The sculpture can move

Oddly...

Oddly shaped forms that are suspended from the ceiling and move in response to a gust of wind are quite familiar to everybody.

Oddly...that...

that 引导的定语从句用来限定 shaped forms
are ...familiar to... 谓语

句子主干: Oddly shaped forms are familiar to everybody

that 定语从句中: in response to / in reaction to 作为对.....的反应

be familiar to sb. 对某人来说很熟悉

Eg.: The house is familiar to him.

I don't really remember where I have seen him before, but he looks very familiar to me.

be familiar with 熟悉, 熟知

Eg.: Are you familiar with the play of Shakespeare?

I'm familiar with that book too.
be familiar to sb. / be familiar with sth.

lined up 过去分词做状语, 与 long thin wires 为被动关系

attached to metal spheres 过去分词做定语, 修饰 long thin wires

定语从句

there were long thin wires that were attached to metal spheres.

the center of the hall 展厅的中央
coloured lights 彩色灯泡

continuously adv. 不停止的

go mad 发疯, 发狂 run mad

Eg. : he must have gone mad to do such a thing.

on and off: continuously

Eg: It has been raining on and off since noon.

It was rather like===It was more like 看起来更像

Key structure

...not only seemed designed to do sth.

not only... but ... as well

seem 系动词+名词/形容词/分词

Key structure

介词 (IKS94) (参见第二册第 94 课关键句型)

Exercise

Supply the missing words in the following sentences. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

1 Even people who take no interest _____ art cannot have failed to notice examples of modern sculpture _____ display in public places.

2 We have got quite used _____ them.

3 Oddly shaped forms that are suspended _____ the ceiling and move _____ response _____ a gust of wind are quite familiar _____ everybody.

4 There were long thin wires attached _____ metal spheres.

Key: 1. in / on ; 2. to 3. from / in / to
4. to

Spelling in Special difficulties

以元音加 y 结尾的名词, 加 s 时, y 不做任何改变; 动词也是如此

day—days way—ways enjoy—enjoys
buy—buys

以辅音加 y 结尾的词, 加 s 时, y 改作 -ies

lady—ladies berry—berries
reply—replies

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 Modern sculpture rarely surprises us any more because _____.
a. even if not in museums, we see it in and around other public places

b. despite people's lack of interest in art, it is out on display
c. people not only display it in their houses but in their gardens also

d. museums have been exhibiting it for nearly eighty years
1. A

2 What surprised the writer when he visited a recent exhibition of modern sculpture?

a. The fact that people were forbidden to touch the exhibits.

b. The oddly shaped forms that were suspended from the ceiling.

c. The way in which electrical energy was used to produce mobile effects.

d. The prehistoric electronic equipment used to activate the exhibits.
2. C

3 The pieces of sculpture on display at the exhibition were _____.
a. noticed because they were dangerous

b. either hung on wires or built into the middle of the hall
c. flickering continuously with different coloured lights

d. such that one could not pass them unnoticed though it seemed wiser to pass them untouched
3. D

one could not pass them unnoticed
can not pass sth. unnoticed

The dress is so beautiful that I can't pass it unnoticed.

Structure

4---'modern' pieces _____ on display nearly eighty years ago. (ll.6-7)

a. have been b. are first c. were first
d. had been

4. C

eighty years ago

5 The first thing I saw _____ to the art gallery...(I.9)
a. on my arrival b. on entering c. at the entrance d. having arrived
5. C
at the entrance arriveal in / at

6 The notice prohibited people _____ the exhibits. (II/9-10)
a. to touch b. from touching c. touching d. not to touch
prohibit : 阻止、禁止 prohibit sb from doing sth 重点强调法律或条例明文禁止 forbit sb. to do sth.
6. C

7 The sheres had been magnetized _____ attracted or reelled each other... (I.13)
a. so that they b. so they were c. so as they had d. in order that they so that 表示目的和结果
7. A

8 These peculiar forms _____ to shock people emotionally and to ... (II.17-18)
a. both seemed designed b. seemed both designed
c. seemed both designed and d. seemed both designed both...and
8. D

Vocabulary

9 ----forms that are susended from the ceiling and move _____ are ... (II.10-11)
a. at one blow b. all of a sudden c. with a light touch d. at the slightest breath
9. D
at one blow 强调一次重击
all of a sudden--->suddenly 突然, 出乎意料地
with a light touch 以轻松愉快的格调

10 Small black boxes _____ sparks ... (I.15)
a. gave off b. sent by c. gave over
d. throw off
gave off
10. A

11 There were a number of tall structures _____ in different colours. (I.14)
a. enlightened b. illuminated c. alighted d. burning
11. B
illuminate: 照亮
alighted vi. 下来, 下车
形容词相当于 burning

12 These peculiar forms not only seemed _____ to shock people ... (II.17-18)
a. drawn b. planned c. intended d. created
12. C
The book is designed / intended for English learners.
be intended for
draw:画 draw a picture 支取

§ Lesson 19 A very dear cat 一只贵重的宝贝猫

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语
◆dear adj. 亲爱的, 珍贵的; 昂贵的
◆kidnapper n. 绑架者, 拐骗者
◆considerable adj. 相当大的
◆wealthy adj. 富的, 有钱的
◆orderly adj. 有规律的
◆disappearance n. 失踪
◆anonymous adj. 匿名的
◆ransom n. 赎金
◆cardboard n. 硬纸板
◆withdraw (withdrew, withdrawn) v. (从银行) 取钱
◆punctually adv. 准时地
◆astound v. 使吃惊

★dear adj. 亲爱的, 珍贵的; 昂贵的
I can't afford the car because it's too dear.
The cat is dear to me.
cost sb dear 花了某人很多钱

★kidnapper n. 绑架者, 拐骗者
kidnap 绑架

★★★considerable adj. 相当大的
a considerable business 大规模企业
He has got a considerable success.
considerably adv.
It's considerably colder today than yesterday.
considerate adj. 体贴的
be considerate to sb 对某人很体贴入微
Are you considerate you wife?
considered 经过考虑的
It's my considered opinion. 这是我经过考虑的看法。

all things considered 就各方面而言
Eg: All things considered, he finished the work well.
considering prep & conj. & adv.
Eg.: Considering his age, the little boy reads

very well.

considering (that)

considering adv.

He studies English well, considering.

★wealthy adj. 富的, 有钱的

★orderly adj. 有规律的

★disappearance n. 失踪

★anonymous adj. 匿名的

★ransom n. 赎金

pay ransom to sb.

The old lady paid a ransom of one thousand pounds to the kidnapper.

hold sb to ransom 绑票 (索取赎金)

They kidnapped the boy and held him to ransom.

★cardboard n. 硬纸板

★withdraw (withdrew, withdrawn) v. (从银行) 取钱

★punctually adv. 准时地

not early nor late

punctual adj.

punctuality n.

★astound v. 使吃惊

语意程度比 surprise 要强得多

吃 惊 程 度

astound>amaze>astonish>surprise

He was astounded to hear of her death.

They were amazed to find the lazy girl came very early.

surprising----> surprised

L19-01 end 10'44"

L19-02 begin 13'00"

【Text】

§ **Lesson 19 A very dear cat** 一只贵重的宝贝猫

Q: Why was Rastus 'very dear' in more ways than one?

Kidnappers are rarely interested in Animals, but they recently took considerable interest in Mrs Eleanor Ramsay's cat. Mrs Eleanor Ramsay, a very wealthy old lady, has shared a flat with her cat, Rastus, for a great many years. Rastus leads an orderly life. He usually takes a short walk in the evenings and is always home by seven o'clock. One evening, however, he failed to arrive. Mrs Ramsay got very worried. She looked everywhere for him but could not find him.

Three day after Rastus' disappearance, Mrs Ramsay received an anonymous letter. The writer stated that Rastus was in safe hands and would be returned immediately if Mrs Ramsay paid a ransom of &1000. Mrs Ramsay was instructed to place the money in a cardboard box and to leave it outside her door. At first, she decided to go to the police, but fearing that she would never see Rastus again --the letter had made that quite clear--she changed her mind. She drew &1000 from her bank and followed the kidnapper's instructions. The next morning, the box had disappeared but Mrs Ramsay was sure that the kidnapper would keep his word. Sure enough, Rastus arrived punctually at seven o'clock that evening. He looked very well, though he was rather thirsty, for he drank half a bottle of milk. The police were astounded when Mrs Ramsay told them what she had done. She explained that Rastus was very dear to her. Considering the amount she paid, he was dear in more ways than one!

【课文讲解】

seldom take interest in

take great interest in

share sth. with sb.

I share the room with my friend.

for a long time

disciplined regular

take a short walk go for a stroll

however

look for find

after 可以和名词搭配

Three days after~ arrival

state; 非常正式的声明

instruct: order

be instructed to do sth.

The journalist was instructed to obtain...

fearing 现在分词做原因状语

make it clear to sb that

The teacher has made it clear to us that we must read English aloud every day.

keep his promise

word 表示诺言时, 要采用单数形式

keep his word break his word give sb. one's word

as good as one's word 表示守信用，侧重点在于强调一个结果

go back on one's word 食言

sure enough 果然，无疑

I said would happen, and sure enough it did happen.

half a bottle of milk

in more ways than one (way) in many ways

双重意义: dear price 昂贵; expensive 珍贵

用英语练习将此故事讲给朋友听。

L19-02 end 13'00"

L19-03 begin 14'57"

【Special difficulties】

The comma 逗号的用法

三个或三个以上的词、短语或句子只用一个并列连接词来连接，他们之间就要用逗号，并列连接词前也要用逗号。

插入语或同位语前后必须用逗号分开

状语从句位于句首时也要用逗号和主句分隔开来，放在句尾则不需要

非限制性定语从句必须用逗号分开

语次转变词也应该用逗号将其和句子其他成分分开

介词短语和分词短语位于句首时也必须加逗号加以分隔

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 Some kidnappers took considerable interest in Mrs. Ramsay's cat because _____ .

- a. Mrs. Ramsay could and would day a lot to get her only companion back
- b. Mrs. Ramsay clearly loved her cat to have kept him so long
- c. Rastus was an orderly cat and would be easy to look after if kidnapped
- d. Mrs. Ramsay missed her cat whenever he was not back home on time

1. A

could would

2 On what conditions did the kidnapper

promise the safe return of Rastus?

a. His name was not to be revealed and he wanted a ransom of £1,000.

b. Mrs. Ramsay was not to inform the police and had to pay £1,000.

c. Mrs. Ramsay had to leave her flat until the box with the money had gone.

d. Mrs. Ramsay was to withdraw £1,000 from her bank and follow his instructions.

2. B

3 How was Rastus dear to Mrs. Ramsay in more ways than one?

a. She was very fond of him and it had cost her a lot to get him back.

b. Besides the high ransom paid on his behalf, he drank a lot of milk.

c. He was so dear that she had not dared tell the police of the kidnapping.

d. He was very valuable and she valued him greatly.

3. A

Structure

4 Mrs. Eleanor Ramsay is a very wealthy lady who _____ a flat with her cat Rastus, for a great many years. (II.2-4)

- a. shares b. has shared c. shared d. had shared

for a great many years

4. B 现在完成时

5 She searched for him but could not find him _____. (II.7-8)

- a. nowhere b. somewhere c. everywhere d. anywhere

5. D

6 Her first reaction _____ the police. (II.11-12)

- a. was to call b. was calling c. she would call d. being to call

根据语法规则，当主语是 ambition, goal, hope, idea, intention, mistake, plan, policy, purpose, reaction, suggestion 等名词的时候，句子的表语必须是 to 不定式短语，该不定式短语是说明其内容的。

His purpose in life was to seek truth instead of money.

6. A

7 But _____ never seeing Rastus again, she changed her mind. (II.12-13)

- a. afraid b. afraid of c. for fear d. afraid for

fearing

7. B

for fear + of / that

They are working hard for fear that they should fail.

afraid for 侧重点表示为.....感到担心, 害怕失去

8 Considering _____ money she paid, he was dear ... (ll.17-18)

a. the great b. how many c. how much of d. what a lot of

8. D

Vocabulary

9 Rastus leads a _____ life. (l.4)

a. correct b. measured c. regular d. disciplined

measured: 慎重的, 有节奏的

regular: 强调有规则的

9. D

10 He usually goes _____ in the evenings... (ll.4-5)

a. on a trek b. for a stroll c. for a trot d. on foot

go on a trek 进行艰苦的跋涉

go for a stroll == go for a walk

trot 小跑

I'm going for a trot down the lane.

11 _____, Rastus arrived punctually... (l.15)

a. Certainly b. Without a doubt c. As expected d. As a matter of fact

11. C

sure enough == As expected

without a doubt 毫无疑问

12 He appeared very _____, though... (ll.15-16)

a. healthy b. satisfied c. good-looking d. sane

12. A

satisfied 满意的

good-looking 长相好看的

sane 明智的

§ Lesson 20 Pioneer pilots 飞行员的先驱

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

◆pioneer

n. 先驱

◆lord

n. 对(英国)贵族的尊称;

勋爵

◆Calais

n. 加来(法国港市)

◆overland

adj. 陆上的

★pioneer n. 先驱

young pioneer

同义词 advocate 倡导者

pioneer adult education

★lord n. 对(英国)贵族的尊称; 勋爵

lordless 无郡主的

lordship

lordly 昂迈的

duke 公爵

marquis 侯爵

earl 伯爵

viscount 子爵

baron 男爵

★Calais n. 加来(法国港市)

★overland adj. 陆上的

overnight 一夜之间的

overpopulated 人口众多的

overseas 海外的

over + 动词 表示超过

Eg: overeat, 吃多了

oversleep 睡过头了

overwork 工作过量

overcharge 索要价钱过高

overestimate 过高估计

【Text】

§ Lesson 20 Pioneer pilots 飞行员的先驱

Q: What was the name of the first plane to fly across the English Channel?

In 1908 Lord Northcliffe offered a prize of £1000 to the first man who would fly across the English Channel. Over a year passed before the first attempt was made. On July 19th, 1909, in the early morning, Hubert Latham took off from the French coast in his plane the 'Antoinette IV'. He had travelled only seven miles across the Channel when his engine failed and he was forced to land on the sea. The 'Antoinette' floated on the water until Latham was picked up by a ship.

Two days later, Louis Bleriot arrived near Calais with a plane called 'No. XI'. Bleriot had been making planes since 1905 and this was his latest model. A week before, he had completed a successful overland flight during which he covered twenty-six miles. Latham, however did not give up easily. He, too, arrived near Calais on the same day with a new 'Antonette'. It looks as if there would be an exciting race across the Channel. Both planes were going to take off on July 25th, but Latham failed to get up early enough. After making a short test flight at 4.15 a.m., Bleriot set off half an hour later. His great flight lasted thirty seven minutes. When he landed near Dover, the first person to greet him was a local policeman. Latham made another attempt a week later and got within half a mile of Dover, but he was unlucky

again. His engine failed and he landed on the sea for the second time.

【课文讲解】

背诵: In 1908 Lord Northcliffe offered a prize of £1000 to the first man who would fly across the English Channel.

the first man to fly across...

序数词和动词不定式 to 搭配连用中以代替其后的定语从句

She was the only one to survive the plane crash.

如果 before 所引导的时间状语从句之前出现段时间, 则最佳翻译方法: 才。。。

offer a prize of sth(奖励) to sb 给予某人……奖励

Eg: He offered a prize of 1,000 to the first man who fly cross the English Channel.

attempt in one's attempt

Eg: She failed in her attempt to swim the tunnel.

make an attempt on 尝试, 试图

make an attempt to do 尝试, 试图

make no attemp 没有……企图, 尝试

at that moment

failed: break down

fail 失败, 忽视

She failed to win the prize.

be forced to do 被迫做……

pick up

with a plane: with 具有、带有

had been making planes

背熟: **A week before, he had completed a successful overland flight during which he covered twenty-six miles.**

during which----during flight

It looked as if: 似乎, 看起来

It looked as if there would be a heavy storm.

make a short test flight

make another attempt

介词和关系代词搭配连用, 当定语从句的关系代词是介词的宾语时, 能够把可移位的介词提前放在关系代词的前面。(正式)

在非正式问题和口语当中, 介词一般要放在从句的末尾

定语从句中介词位置

决定介词位置的 4 个因素:

1. 如果是口语, 介词位于句尾, 同时关系代词可以省略。

2. 非正式问题, 介词位于从句句尾。

3. 有些动词+ 介词, 合成词组被看成是不可分割的语言单位, 这个时候介词必须紧跟动词, 不可移动

take after account for

4. 在很多情况下, 介词和关系代词构成独立的介词短语, 在句中起状语作用, 与从句的谓语动词毫无关系, 而不是谓语动词的一部分, 这时介词始终位于关系代词之前

Eg: He described it as a very agreeable situation located within two small hills

In the midst of two small hills, flowed a great river.

Eg: He described it as a very agreeable situation located within two small hills in the midst of which flowed a great river.(in the midst of 跟后面的谓语动词 flow 没有任何关系)

Mrs. Ramsay received an anonymous letter in which the writer stated that Rastus was in safe hands.

请完成难点中的练习题

L20-01 end 18'18"

L20-02 begin 6'07"

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 In Hubert Latham's first attempt to fly the English Channel _____.

a. Lord Northcliffe offered a prize of £1,000

b. his engine failed with only seven miles to go before reaching Dover

c. his plane developed engine trouble only seven miles after take-off

d. both Latham and his plane were rescued by a passing ship

1. C

2 When Bleriot made his successful crossing _____.

a. he was flying a plane he had made in 1905

b. he had already flown overland the distance across the English Channel

c. he set out for Dover half an hour before Latham did

d. he was arrested as soon as he landed in England

2. B

3 Latham failed at his second attempt

because _____.

- a. he did not get up early enough
 - b. he had to make another forced landing
 - c. he only got within half a mile of Dover
 - d. his plane had not been repaired properly
- make another forced landing ----迫降

3. B

Structure

4 The first man _____ across the English Channel would receive Lord Northcliffe's prize. (II.1-2)

- a. who was going to fly
- b. flying
- c. to fly
- d. having flown

序数词和不定式搭配连用

4. C

5 The first attempt _____ over a year later. (II.2-3)

- a. was not made till
 - b. was made in
 - c. was made after
 - d. was made until
- not till not until

5. A

6 He, too, _____ near Calais with a new 'Antoinette'. (II.10-11)

- a. just arrived
- b. was just arriving
- c. had just arrived
- d. arrived just

6. C

当谓语动词有 just 修饰时，一般要使用完成时。

He has just left.

Eg: He, too, had just arrived near Calais with a new plane.

7 It _____ to be an exciting race across the Channel. (II.11-12)

- a. would promise
- b. would have promised
- c. was promising
- d. promised

7. D

promised : 有什么的可能，有发生的迹象——好 threat:凶兆

8 Latham made another attempt a week later. _____ he got within half a mile of Dover. (II.14-15)

- a. This time
- b. That time
- c. When
- d. Then

8. A

Vocabulary

9 He had travelled _____ seven miles when... (II.5-6)

- a. farther than
- b. no longer than
- c. no further than
- d. a space of

no further: 修饰距离

no longer: 修饰时间或长度

no more: 修饰某物

Eg: I can walk no further. 我再也走不动了。

He no longer lives here. 他不再住这儿了。

I can eat no more. 我再也吃不下任何东西了。

9. C

10 The 'Antoinette' _____ until Latham was picked up... (I.7)

- a. held water
- b. was watertight
- c. stayed at sea
- d. rode the waves

10. D

rode the waves 在水面上漂浮，冲浪前进

Eg: The ship rode the waves.

hold water: 论点，观点站得住脚，说得通(多用语疑问句和否定句)

Eg: What you said doesn't hold water.

watertight adj. 密封的，无懈可击的， watertight box 密封盒； a watertight plan 密封的计划

11 After making a short test flight, Bleriot set off at quarter _____ five. (II.12-13)

- a. to
- b. of
- c. before
- d. past

11. A

12 His _____ flight lasted thirty-seven minutes. (II.13-14)

- a. immense
- b. long
- c. grand
- d. remarkable

immense: 修饰面积大得难以测量

grand:宏伟的

12. D

L20-02 L20 end 6'07"

L21-01 begin 8'34" [Lesson 21 31:00]

§ **Lesson 21 Daniel Mendoza** 丹尼尔·门多萨

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- boxing n. 拳击
- boxer n. 拳击手
- bare adj. 赤裸的
- prizefighter n. 职业拳击手
(尤指古时赤手拳击手)
- crude adj. 粗野的
- marquis n. 侯爵
- technically adv. 严格根据法律意义地
- science n. 科学
- popularity n. 名望
- adore v. 崇拜，爱戴
- alike adv. 一样地
- fame n. 名声
- eminent adj. 著名的，杰出的
- bitterly adv. 厉害地
- bet (bet, bet; betted, betted) v. 打赌
- academy n. 专业学校
- extravagant adj. 浪费的，奢

侈

●poverty

n. 贫困

■boxing n. 拳击

■boxer n. 拳击手

■bare adj. 赤裸的

bare uncovered

bare (部分的)赤裸

bare fist 赤手空拳

bare foot 光着脚的

bare handed 光着手的

bare legged 光着腿的

naked 全裸

He's walking in bare feet.

He is naked.

nude adj. 光秃秃的; n. 裸体 (雕像, 油画)

a nude hillside 光秃秃的山坡

■prizefighter n. 职业拳击手 (尤指古时赤手拳击手)

■crude adj. 粗野的

be crude to sb 对……粗鲁, 无理, rude 语气比

crude 要弱

He is crude to the girl.

■marquis n. 侯爵

■technically adv. 严格根据法律意义地

■science n. 科学

■popularity n. 名望

in popularity 受欢迎, 受喜爱

Instant foods are getting in popularity. 即食食品越来越受欢迎。

popular songs are in popularity.

popular with 受人喜爱

popularity 名望, 受人欢迎的状态

fame 出名的名声 famous adj.

reputation 声誉

■adore v. 崇拜, 爱戴

More and more people adore the famous address.

■alike adv. 一样地

He was adored by rich, and poor alike.

The teacher is adored by boy, girl and alike.

■fame n. 名声

■eminent adj. 著名的, 杰出的

eminent scientist

distinguished

■bitterly adv. 厉害地

It is blowing bitterly.

bitter: 苦的、辛酸的、刺骨的

bitter pills may have wholesome effects 良药 15

L20-02_21-01 end 15'00"

L21-02 begin 15'39"

■bet (bet, bet; betted, betted) v. 打赌

bet on sth. 以...打赌

bet sb. that 跟某人打赌

bet one's bottom dollar on somebody 对……孤注一掷

He bet his bottom dollar on his last attempt.

bet on the wrong horse 对……做出了错误的判断

I bet 我肯定, 我断言

■academy n. 专业学校

■extravagant adj. 浪费的, 奢侈

extravagant habit

thrifty frugal economical

■poverty n. 贫困

in poverty 在贫困当中

indigence 贫困 (正式)

destitution 赤贫

penury 诘据

【Text】

§ Lesson 21

Daniel Mendoza 丹

尼尔·门多萨

Listen to the tape

then answer the

question below.

How many

unsuccessful

attempts did

Mendoza make

before becoming

Champion of all England?

Boxing matches were very popular in England two hundred years ago. In those days, boxers fought with bare fists for Prize money. Because of this, they were known as 'prizefighters'. However, boxing was very crude, for there were no rules and a prizefighter could be seriously injured or even killed during a match.

One of the most colourful figures in boxing history was Daniel Mendoza who was born in 1764. The use of gloves was not introduced until 1860 when the Marquis of Queensberry drew up the first set of rules. Though he was technically a prizefighter, Mendoza did much to change crude prizefighting into a sport, for he brought science to the game. In his day, Mendoza enjoyed tremendous popularity.

He was adored by rich and poor alike.

Mendoza rose to fame swiftly after a

boxing match when he was only fourteen years old. This attracted the attention of Richard Humphries who was then the most eminent boxer in England. He offered to train Mendoza and his young pupil was quick to learn. In fact, Mendoza soon became so successful that Humphries turned against him. The two men quarrelled bitterly and it was clear that the argument could only be settled by a fight. A match was held at Stilton where both men fought for an hour. The public bet a great deal of money on Mendoza, but he was defeated. Mendoza met Humphries in the ring on a later occasion and he lost for a second time. It was not until his third match in 1790 that he finally beat Humphries and became Champion of England. Meanwhile, he founded a highly successful Academy and even Lord Byron became one of his pupils. He earned enormous sums of money and was paid as much as £100 for a single appearance. Despite this, he was so extravagant that he was always in debt. After he was defeated by a boxer called Gentleman Jackson, he was quickly forgotten. He was sent to prison for failing to pay his debts and died in poverty in 1836.

参考译文

两百年前，拳击比赛在英国非常盛行。当时，拳击手们不戴手套，为争夺奖金而搏斗。因此，他们被称作“职业拳击手”。不过，拳击是十分野蛮的，因为当时没有任何比赛规则，职业拳击手有可能在比赛中受重伤，甚至丧命。

拳击史上最引人注目的人物之一是丹尼尔·门多萨，他生于 1764 年。1860 年昆斯伯里侯爵第一次为拳击比赛制定了规则，拳击比赛这才用上了手套。虽然门多萨严格来讲不过是个职业拳击手，但在把这种粗野的拳击变成一种体育运动方面，他作出了重大贡献。是他把科学引进了这项运动。门多萨在的全盛时期深受大家欢迎，无论是富人还是穷人都对他崇拜备至。

门多萨在 14 岁时参加一场拳击赛后一举成名。这引起当时英国拳坛名将理查德·汉弗莱斯的注意。他主动提出教授门多萨，而年少的门多萨一学就会。事实上，门多萨不久便名声大振，致使汉弗莱斯与他反目为敌。两个人争吵不休，显而易见，只有较量一番才能解决问题。于是两人在斯蒂尔顿设下赛场，厮打了一个小时。公众把大笔赌注下到了门多萨身上，但他却输了。后来，门多萨与汉弗莱斯再次在拳击场上较量，门多萨又输了一场。直到 1790 年他们第 3 次对垒，门多萨才终于击败汉弗莱斯，成了全英拳击冠军。同时，他建立了一所拳击学校，办得很成功，连拜伦勋爵也成了他的学生。门多萨挣来大笔大笔的钱，一次出场费就多可达 100 英镑。尽管收入不少，但他挥霍无度，经常债台高筑。他在被一个叫杰克逊

绅士的拳击手击败后很快被遗忘。他因无力还债而被捕入狱，最后于 1836 年在贫困中死去。

【课文讲解】

in popularity

fought with bare fists: 赤手空拳的打斗

背熟: One of the most colourful figures in boxing history was Daniel Mendoza who was born in 1764. one of the most famous people

introduce: bring in

Potatoes were introduced into Europe from South America.

drew up: 制定，起草

Sb. did much to do sth.

in his full time in his good day

rise to fame = become famous

attract sb.'s attention == attract the attention of sb.

turn against sb 与……反目成仇
severely

背熟: **It was not until his third match in 1790 that he finally beat Humphries and became Champion.**

as much as 多达

in debt: 欠债

本课重点: 定语从句(限制性和非限制性)

L21-02 end 15'39"

L21-03 begin 15'32"

【Multiple choice questions】P109 Comprehension

1 Richard Humphries offered to train Mendoza because ____.

- a. he wanted to learn the techniques that Mendoza had introduced to boxing
- b. for one so young, Mendoza had displayed an unusual grasp of the game
- c. he had attended the boxing match which led to Mendoza's early fame
- d. he was anxious to establish himself as a superior boxer to Mendoza

2 At the match between Humphries and Mendoza at Stilton ____.

- a. Mendoza lost a great deal of money to the public
 b. after an hour's fighting Humphries became champion of England
 c. Mendoza lost twice to Humphries
 d. the argument between the two men was settled in favour of Humphries

3 Apart from the money he earned at matches, Mendoza ____.

- a. earned a lot from the Academy which he founded after becoming Champion
 b. earned so much money that he became a rich man
 c. greatly supplemented his income by teaching the art of boxing
 d. was given enormous sums by Lord Byron
 apart from: 除了什么之外还有

Structure

4 In those days, _____ 'prizefighters' because they fought with bare fists for prize money. (ll.2-3)

- a. they called boxers b. boxers called
 c. boxers being called d. they were called boxers

5 A prizefighter could suffer a serious injury or _____ during a ... (ll.4-5)

- a. even be killed b. be even killed c. even killed
 d. was even killed
 even could be killed : could 被省略了

6 Mendoza _____ boxing into a sport. (ll.8-9)

- a. was much changed by b. did a great deal to change
 c. changed a great deal of d. much changed

7 He was so extravagant that he _____ people money. (l.20)

- a. always owed to b. always owed c. owed always
 d. was always owing to
 原文: in debt

owe money to people

(**L21-03_22-01 8'49"**) [Lesson 22 31:54]

§ Lesson 22 By heart 熟记台词

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| ●run | v. (戏剧、电影等) |
| ●lines | n. (剧本中的) 台词 |
| ●part | n. 剧中的角色, 台词 |
| ●falter | v. 支吾, 结巴说 |
| ●cast (cast, cast) | v. 选派.....扮演角色 |
| ●role | n. 角色 |
| ●aristocrat | n. 贵族 |
| ●imprison | v. 关押 |

owe money to sb == owe sb money

Vocabulary

8 One of the most _____ in boxing history was ... (ll.6-7)

- a. vivid personalities b. famous people
 c. painted images d. imaginative characters

personality : 个性 == character

image: 偶像

9 ----after a boxing match at the _____ young age of fourteen. (l.11)

- a. marvellously b. singly c. exceptionally d. unequally

exceptionally => unusually: 不同寻常的

marvellously => wonderfully: 奇妙的, 奇异的

singly : 单独的

unequally : 独一无二的

Ex.: an exceptionally beautiful girl

10 Mendoza's _____ to fame was noted by Richard Humphries. (ll.11-12)

- a. rise b. rose c. raise d. claim
 名词形式, 名词所有格, rise: vi.&n.

11 Humphries soon became _____ Mendoza's success. (ll.13-14)

- a. jealous of b. disinterested in c. revolted by
 d. changed by

12 Mendoza finally _____ Humphries and became Champion of England. (ll.17-18)

- a. conquered b. gained c. won d. beat

beat = defeat

conquer: 征服

gain: 赢得, 获得

win: 赢得 (比赛)

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. A 6. B 7. B
 8. B 9. C 10. A 11. A 12. D

L21 end (L21-03 6'39") [Lesson 21 31:00]

●Bastille .

巴士底狱

●gaoler

n. 监狱长, 看守连演,

连映

●colleague

n. 同事

●curtain

n. (舞台中的) 幕布

●reveal

v. 使显露

●cell

n. 单人监房, 监号

●blank

adj. 空白的

●squint

v. 眯着 (眼) 看, 瞄

●dim

adj. 昏暗

●sire

n. (古用法) 陛下

●proceed

v. 继续进行

■run v. (戏剧、电影等)

The film is so successful that it runs for several weeks.

■lines n. (剧本中的) 台词

■part n. 剧中的角色, 台词

■falter vi. 支吾, 结巴说

stammer

He has practised the poem several times, so he has no cause to falter.

falter v. 蹒跚而行 (=stagger)

He faltered home.

■cast (cast, cast) v. 选派.....扮演角色

●role n. 角色

The actor was cast in the role of hero.

■aristocrat n. 贵族

■imprison v. 关押

put sb imprison: 关押

He was imprisoned for 10 years.

imprisonment: n.

sentence sb to life imprisonment: 判某人终生监禁

监狱: prison, jail, gaol

把.....送进监狱

send sb. to prison == put sb in prison ==

throw sb into prison

in prison 坐牢

the prison 监狱

He is in prison / jail.

He is behind bars.

■Bastille . 巴士底狱

■gaoler n. 监狱长, 看守连演, 连映

■colleague n. 同事

■curtain n. (舞台中的) 幕布

■reveal v. 使显露

The secret hasn't been revealed.

reveal:揭露, 揭穿, 把什么露出来

A curtain was up and revealed the beautiful scenery.

disclose:揭发

disclose the truth

discover: 发现

uncover: 揭开具体的盖子

A very tight dress reveals the beautiful figure.5

紧身的裙子露出了漂亮的身段。

revealable adj. 可展现的

revealer: 探测器

■cell n. 单人监房, 监号

■blank adj. 空白的

■squint . 眯着(眼)看, 瞄

squint one's eyes 眯上眼睛

Eg.: He squinted his eyes and looked at the letter.

peer at : 眯着眼睛看

■dim adj. 昏暗

The room is too dim so I can't read the letter.

gloomy:(天气, 心情)抑郁的

The weather is gloomy today.

He is in gloomy mood.

dusky:(天色)昏暗的

Towards evening is getting dusky.

murky:(天色)漆黑的, 黑暗的

I can't go out at murky night.

misty:多雾的, 迷蒙的

L21-22_22-01 end 15'32"

L22-02 begin 16'07"

The building is out of sight on such a misty day.

■sire n. (古用法)陛下

■proceed v. 继续进行

proceed vi. particular after stopping

proceed to / with:进行继续某事

Let's proceed to business.

You must proceed with your work.

proceed from 从什么着手开始继续

They proceed from lesson 1.

proceed from 起诉某人

Eg: He decided to proceed against his neighbour.

【Text】

§ **Lesson 22 By heart** 熟记台词

Listen to the tape
then answer the
question below.

**Which actor read
the letter in the
end, the aristocrat
or the gaoler?**

Some plays are so
successful that they
run for years on end.

In many ways, this is unfortunate for the poor actors who are required to go on repeating the same lines night after night. One would expect them to know their parts by heart and never have cause to falter. Yet this is not always the case.

A famous actor in a highly successful play was once cast in the role of an aristocrat who had been imprisoned in the Bastille for twenty years. In the last act, a gaoler would always come on to the stage with a letter

which he would hand to the prisoner. Even though the noble was expected to read the letter at each performance, he always insisted that it should be written out in full.

One night, the gaoler decided to play a joke on his colleague to find out if, after so many performances, he had managed to learn the contents of the letter by heart. The curtain went up on the final act of the play and revealed the aristocrat sitting alone behind bars in his dark cell. Just then, the gaoler appeared with the precious letter in his hands. He entered the cell and presented the letter to the aristocrat. But the copy he gave him had not been written out in full as usual. It was simply a blank sheet of paper. The gaoler looked on eagerly, anxious to see if his fellow actor had at last learnt his lines. The noble stared at the blank sheet of paper for a few seconds. Then, squinting his eyes, he said: 'The light is dim. Read the letter to me.' And he promptly handed the sheet of paper to the gaoler. Finding that he could not remember a word of the letter either, the gaoler replied: 'The light is indeed dim, sire. I must get my glasses.' With this, he hurried off the stage. Much to the aristocrat's amusement, the gaoler returned a few moments later with a pair of glasses and the usual copy of the letter which he proceeded to read to the prisoner.

参考译文

有些剧目十分成功，以致连续上演好几年。这样一来，可怜的演员们可倒霉了。因为他们需要一夜连着一夜地重复同样的台词。人们以为，这些演员一定会把台词背得烂熟，绝不会临场结巴的，但情况却并不总是这样。

有一位名演员曾在一出极为成功的剧目中扮演一个贵族角色，这个贵族已在巴士底狱被关押了 20 年。在最后一幕中，狱卒手持一封信上场，然后将信交给狱中那位贵族。尽管那个贵族每场戏都得念一遍那封信。但他还是坚持要求将信的全文写在信纸上。

一天晚上，狱卒决定与他的同事开一个玩笑，看看他反复演出这么多场之后，是否已将信的内容记熟了。大幕拉开，最后一幕戏开演，贵族独自一人坐在铁窗后阴暗的牢房里。这时狱卒上场，手里拿着那封珍贵的信。狱卒走进牢房，将信交给贵族。但这回狱卒给贵族的信没有像往常那样把全文写全，而是一张白纸。狱卒热切地观察着，急于想了解他的同事是否记熟了台词。贵族盯着纸看了几秒钟，然后，眼珠一转，说道：“光线太暗，请给我读一下这封信。”说完，他一下子把信递给狱卒。狱卒发现自己连一个字也记不住，于是便说：“陛下，这儿光线的确太暗了，我得去眼镜拿来。”他一边说着，一边匆匆下台。贵族感到非常好笑的是：一会儿工夫，狱卒重新登台，拿来一副眼镜以及平时使用的那封信，然后为那囚犯念

了起来。

【课文讲解】

by heart 熟记台词

on end

1. == continuously: 连续的，位于具体的时间之后

Eg: He sat there for hours on end.

We had hardly anything to eat for days on end.

2. == upright 竖着

Eg: The cat's fur stood on end.

I got a big shock so my hair stood on end.我吓了一跳，以致于毛骨悚然。

who = actor, 关系代词做主语，不能省略

Eg.: The student who was required to recite the poem 100 times is really poor.

learn/ know by heart: 把……牢记在心

Eg.: The sentence is so important that you must learn it by heart.

heart and soul 全心全意的，全身心的

Eg: We serve the students heart and soul

take heart 鼓起勇气，恢复信心

lose heart 失去信心

lose heart to sb= give heart to sb: 轻信于某人

Eg: The boy lost his heart to the girl

put one's heart into sth: 致力于某事

Eg: **Nothing is difficult if you put your heart into it.**世上无难事，只怕有心人

have one's heart in one's boots 提心吊胆

Eg: He had his heart in his boots when he went out alone at night.

even though = even if = though / although
at each performance = at every performance

insist: 坚决要求, suggest: 建议, order: 命令,
demand: 要求, require: 要求

表示建议/要求/希望，和 that 宾语从句搭配，that 从句必须出现 should + 动词原形的虚拟，should 可以省略。

in full == fully == completely

play a joke(cheek) on sb: 开某人玩笑

on the final act == in the last act

with, 独立主格结构

hand to == present sth. to == pass to 把……递给某人

as usual

look on 旁观
anxious, 形容词短语做伴随状况状语

stare at 一眨不眨地
squinting: ing 形式, 做方式状语, 伴随状况状语

promptly == immediately

with this 说完这话
hurry off
much, 用来加强语气

play a joke on 开玩笑; play a trick on 捉弄, 单方面取乐
have a joke with sb. 和某人开玩笑, 强调两人共同取乐
Eg.: He laughs best who laughs last. 笑到最后的才是笑得最好的。

L22-02 end 16'07"

L22-03 begin 11'11"

【Multiple choice questions】 Comprehension

1 Which of the following proverbs suits the gist of the story best?
a. He laughs best, who laughs last.
b. Speech is silver, but silence is golden.
c. Look before you leap.
d. Don't count your chickens before they are hatched.

2 The play in which the two actors took part _____.
a. had had a highly successful run of twenty years
b. was about the plight of a nobleman
c. ended with the imprisonment of the aristocrat
d. had been performed so often that audiences were bored by it
end with 以.....结束

3 Which statement is true?
When the aristocrat was presented with a blank sheet of paper, _____.
a. he improvised the words which he had forgotten
b. the gaoler was eagerly waiting to take the aristocrat's part
c. he pretended that the light was not good enough for him to read by
d. he asked the gaoler to fetch him some glasses

Structure

4 A gaoler would come on stage with a letter _____ to the prisoner. (ll.7-8)
a. to be delivering b. and delivered
c. to deliver d. delivered
with a letter 独立主格结构, 只有动词不定式 to 有要做某事
倘若应用 for, 此句应改为 with a letter for the prisoner.

5 He always insisted _____ in full. (l.9)
a. on its being written out b. on writing it out
c. to have it written out d. that it would have to be written out
insist that + should
insist on + 名词, 动名词
d 选项中 would 改为 should

6 --to find out if he _____ the contents of the letter by heart. (ll.10-11)
a. had known b. was knowing c. knew
d. know

7 But he gave _____ which had not been written out in full. (ll.13-14)
a. the copy to him b. a copy him c. him a copy d. him the copy
give him a copy
a 表示任意的一份, the 表示特指
a 选项中 the copy to him 改为 a copy to him 即可

8 _____ remember a word of the letter, so he replied.. (ll.17-18)
a. But neither could the gaoler b. Nor the gaoler could
c. Also the gaoler could not d. Either the gaoler could not
neither, nor 用于句首, 句子倒装

Vocabulary

9 The gaoler decided to _____ his colleague. (l.10)
a. have a joke with b. play the fool with
c. make fun of d. play a trick on
play a joke on 开玩笑; play a trick on 捉弄, 单方面取乐
have a joke with sb. 和某人开玩笑, 强调两人共同取乐
Eg.: I've just had a joke with my classmate.

10 He wanted to see if his fellow actor had _____ learnt his lines. (ll.10-11)
a. lastly b. in the end c. conclusively
d. finally
finally 最后(用于句中)
lastly 顺序上的最后

in the end 强调最终失败的结果（用于句首或句尾）

Eg.: He worked harder and harder, but in the end he failed.

conclusively 总结的

11 Then, _____ about him, he said,...(l.16)
a. searching b. peering c. blinking
d. staring

peer about 眯着眼睛看

Eg: When you enter a cinema, you often have to peer about.

search: 搜寻, 寻找: search for sth.

blink 眨眼睛

(**L22-03_23-01 4'06"**) [Lesson 23 47:22]

§ Lesson 23 One man's meat is another man's poison 各有所爱

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

●poison n. 毒药

●illogical adj. 不合逻辑的, 无章法的

●octopus n. 章鱼

●delicacy n. 美味, 佳肴

●repulsive adj. 令人反感的, 令人生厌的

●stomach n. 胃

●turn v. 感到恶心, 翻胃

●fry v. 油炸

●fat n. (动物、植物) 油

●abuse n. 辱骂, 责骂

●snail n. 蜗牛

●luxury n. 奢侈品, 珍品

●associate v. 联想到

●despise v. 鄙视

●appeal v. 引起兴致

●shower n. 阵雨

●stroll n. 溜达, 散步

●impulse n. 冲动

●dozen n. 12 个, 一打

●fancy v. 喜爱, 喜欢

■poison n. 毒药

poison n.& vt.

He was poisoned by pesticide.

give poison to sb/ give poison to sth. 使某人或某事中毒

hate each other like poison 彼此互相恨透

name one's poison

Name your poison, please. 说出你要喝点什么酒啊。

What's your poison? 你要喝什么酒?

■illogical adj. 不合逻辑的, 无章法的

■octopus n. 章鱼

■delicacy n. 美味, 佳肴

Eg.: He considered chicken to be a great

stare: 盯着看: stare at

12 Agreeing that the light was dim, the gaoler _____ he would get his glasses. (l.18)

a. spoke b. informed c. said d. rejoined

informed 表示正式的通知

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. A 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. C 8. A 9. D 10. D 11. B 12. C

L22 end (L22-03 7'02") [Lesson 22 31:54]

delicacy.

delicate adj. 美味的, 可口的, 清淡的

delicious adj. 味道美的

■repulsive adj. 令人反感的, 令人生厌的

disgusting adj.

The dish is repulsive.

■stomach n. 胃

■turn v. 感到恶心, 翻胃

■fry v. 油炸

fry v.: be cooked in hot oil

fried egg 煎鸡蛋

fried bread

fring pan 煎锅

L22-02_23-01 end 11'11"

L23-02 begin 11'44"

fry up 加热

Fry up the food, please.

fry in one's own fat 自作自受

have other fish to fry 另有要事要做

Eg: Hello, Lucy, let's go have dinner.

That's good idea, but I have other fish to fry. Thank you very much.

■fat n. (动物、植物) 油

put on fat 长胖, 发胖

fat adj. 胖的 运用此 adj. 时常很不礼貌, 因此用 large, heavy, overweight 替代。

■abuse n. 辱骂, 责骂

Don't abuse your authority.

He greeted his wife with a stream of abuse. 他骂妻子的声音不绝于耳。

■snail n. 蜗牛

■luxury n. 奢侈品, 珍品

The diamond ring is a luxury to me.

luxurious adj. 奢侈的, 奢华的

a luxurious hotel

■associate v. 联想到

associate v. connect in one's mind

A with B 把……跟……联想到一起 = connect with.

Eg: I can't associate you with your wife.

Can you associate snails with delicious food.

associate with ==connect with==link with
== be bound up with

■despise v. 鄙视

despise vt. regard as worthless

Eg.: We despise him for a coward. 我们把他看作一个懦夫。

look down upon 鄙视, 瞧不起

Eg: Don't look down upon anyone.

■appeal v. 引起兴致

appeal to sb 引起某人兴趣

Eg: Eating snails never appeals to me.

appeal 上诉, 呼吁

appeal for sth. 为某事而上诉

■shower n. 阵雨

■stroll n. 溜达, 散步

stroll n. slow walking for pleasure in street or in garden.

go for a stroll; take a stroll; == go for a walk; take a walk

stroller 散步的人

stroll vi.

He is strolling along the road.

ramble 海岸, 林中的漫步

The couple are irambling in the forest.

roam 不安定的漂泊, 徘徊

The tramp roams every day.

wander 流浪, 徘徊

He has nothing to do, so he is wandering along the street.

■impulse n. 冲动

impulse : a sudden wish to do sth.

on impulse 冲动的

He rushed out to catch up (with) the lady on impulse.

be driven by impulse to do sth. 情不自禁的做某事

Why did you do it?

I should say I was driven by impulse to do it like this.

impulsive adj. 冲动的

impulsively adv. 冲动地

■dozen n. 12 个, 一打

dozen: a group of twelve

by the dozen 成打的

dozens of 许多的

two dozen eggs, a dozen roses. (其用法和 hundred, thousand 一样)

a dozen of the (these) roses 这些玫瑰中的一打

数词 +dozen +物品: ……打…… (物品)

Speak nineteen to the dozen 说个不停

Eg.: The old lady is speaking nineteen to the dozen.

■fancy v. 喜爱, 喜欢

Eg.: I don't fancy living in the cold room.

fancy 想像, 设想 (=image) (表示一种惊讶的心情) (其后接动名词做宾语)

Fancy meeting you here. 没想到在这儿见到你。

fancy oneself 自以为是, 自命不凡

Do you fancy yourself?

【Text】

Lesson 23 One man's meat is another man's poison 各有所爱

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

what was it about snails that made the writer collect them for his friend on that day in particular?

People become quite illogical when they

try to decide what can be eaten and what cannot be eaten. If you lived in the Mediterranean, for instance, you would consider octopus a great delicacy. You would not be able to understand why some people find it repulsive. On the other hand, your stomach would turn at the idea of frying potatoes in animal fat---the normally accepted practice in many northern countries.

The sad truth is that most of us have been brought up to eat certain foods and we stick to them all our lives.

No creature has received more praise and abuse than the common garden snail. Cooked in wine, snails are a great luxury in various parts of the world. There are countless people who, ever since their early years, have learned to associate snails with food. My friend, Robert, lives in a country where snails are despised. As his flat is in a large town, he has no garden of his own. For years he has been asking me to collect snails from my garden and take them to him. The idea never appealed to me very much, but one day, after a heavy shower, I happened to be walking in my garden when I noticed a huge number of snails taking a stroll on some of my prize plants. Acting on a sudden impulse, I collected several dozen, put them in a paper bag, and took them to Robert. Robert was

5

10

15

20

delighted to see me and equally pleased with my little gift. I left the bag in the hall and Robert and I went into the living room where we talked for a couple of hours. I had forgotten all about the snails when Robert suddenly said that I must stay to dinner. Snails would, of course, be the main dish. I did not fancy the idea and I reluctantly followed Robert out of the room. To our dismay, we saw that there were snails everywhere: they had escaped from the paper bag and had taken complete possession of the hall! I have never been able to look at a snail since then.

参考译文

在决定什么能吃而什么不能吃的时候，人们往往变得不合情理。比如，如果你住在地中海地区，你会把章鱼视作是美味佳肴，同时不能理解为什么有人一见章鱼就恶心。另一方面，你一想到动物油炸土豆就会反胃，但这在北方许多国家却是一种普通的烹饪方法。不无遗憾的是，我们中的大部分人，生来就只吃某几种食品，而且一辈子都这样。

没有一种生物所受到的赞美和厌恶会超过花园里常见的蜗牛了。蜗牛加酒烧煮后，便成了世界上许多地方的一道珍奇的名菜。有不计其数的人们从小就知道蜗牛可做菜。但我的朋友罗伯特却住在一个厌恶蜗牛的国家中。他住在大城市里的一所公寓里，没有自己的花园。多年来，他一直让我把我园子里的蜗牛收集起来给他捎去。一开始，他的这一想法没有引起我多大兴趣。后来有一天，一场大雨后，我在花园里漫无目的散步，突然注意到许许多多蜗牛在我的一些心爱的花木上慢悠悠的蠕动着。我一时冲动，逮了几十只，装进一只纸袋里，带着去找罗伯特。罗伯特见到我很高兴，对我的薄礼也感到满意。我把纸袋放在门厅里，与罗伯特一起进了起居室，在那里聊了好几个钟头。我把蜗牛的事已忘得一干二净，罗伯特突然提出一定要我留下来吃晚饭，这才提醒了我。蜗牛当然是道主菜。我并不喜欢这个主意，所以我勉强跟着罗伯特走进了起居室。使我们惊愕的是门厅里到处爬满了蜗牛：它们从纸袋里逃了出来，爬得满厅都是！从那以后，我再也不能看一眼蜗牛了。

【课文讲解】

People become quite illogical when they try to decide what can be eaten and what cannot be eaten.

人们在决定吃什么或者不吃什么的时候，往往变得不合情理。

当涉及到或谈及到叙述客观事实的时候

it comes to sth

it comes to doing sth

用于 when 引导的时间状语从句

L23-02 end 11'44"

L23-03 begin 11'19"

Eg.: He never complains when it comes to helping his wife with the house work.

for instance == for example

consider (to be)...

on the other hand 转折连接词，表示而另一方面

at the idea of: at 介词搭配作状语，表示当.....

就.....; 一.....就.....

at the idea of 一想到

at the sight of 一看到

at the mention of 一提到

at the news of 一听到.....消息

at the touch of 一触摸到.....东西

at the sound of 一听到.....声音

at the thought of 一想到

Eg.: I was glad at the thought of getting something to eat.

I always love at the mention of ghost story.

stick to + 名词 == insist on doing sth == persist in doing sth

practice 表示习俗，做法

habit 表示个人习惯

custom 社会的风俗或习俗

Eg.: Early to bed and early to rise is good habit.

It is now quite common practice for married women not to take their husband's second name.

The practice of closing shops on Sundays.

My practice to study English is to read everyday.

the custom of giving present at Christmas

Social customs vary greatly from country to country.

in many northern countries.

The sad truth is that most of us have been brought up to eat certain foods and)

that 引导表语从句，说明 truth 的内容

bring up 抚养

Eg.: Joe is born in England, but brought up in France.

She was brought up to believe that money is the most (great) important thing in life.

他从小到大一直认为金钱是生活中最重要的东西。

被动语态形式，表自小长大，在成长的过程当中已经习惯于.....

I've been brought up to eat fish, just because my mother is fond of fish as well.

He has been brought up to eat fring

potatoes just because his parents are fond of that.

He gave much attention to bring up his children.

stick to = keep to; not give up

Eg.: We stick to them all our lives.

I made my decision and I am going to stick to it. (to 介词)

stick to the idea

stick to the plan

insist on doing sth. 坚持做某事

persist in doing sth. 坚持做某事

L23-03 end 11'19"

L23-04 begin 11'44"

People become quite illogical when they try to decide what can be eaten and what cannot be eaten.

No creature has received more praise and abuse than the common garden snail.

比较级表达最高级的概念

Nobody is more beautiful than you.

He is more intelligent than anyone else in my class.

The common garden snail often receive more praise and abuse than other creatures.

cooked 过去分词做定语, 与 snails 构成被动关系。

countless: 无数的, 数不尽的 (=numerous)

who 引导定语从句

associate sth. with sth. 把某物与某物相联系

People there, don't consider snails to be a great delicacy.

no garden of his own 没有自己的庭院

Robert is fond of snails very much.

The idea never interested me very much...

happened to do 恰巧, 碰巧

I happened to be out when he called.

We both happened to be travelling on the same plane.

happen / chance

It happened that I was out when he called.

It chanced that I was out when he called.

when

表示正在这时突然, 通常使用过去进行时, 过去完成时等搭配; 位于句中

He was having a bath when the telephone suddenly rang.

We had not ... like this when ... came in.

We were about to start when it rained.

snails (that were) taking a stroll...

现在分词做定语, 修饰 snails

on a sudden impulse 一时的, 冲动的

Acting on a sudden impulse, he went shopping to buy several dresses.

Robert was delighted to see me and equally pleased with my little gift. ==Robert was not only delighted to see me, but also pleased with my little gift.

be delighted to do

be pleased to do

when 特殊用法, 表示就在这个时候

reluctantly: unwillingly 不情愿的

to our dismay 使我们感到惊愕的是

Eg.: Before we came back, all the snails had already escaped from the paper bag and had taken complete possession of the hall.

take possession 占据, 占有

The soldiers took possession of enemies' fort.

The terrorists took possession of the embassy. 恐怖分子占领了大使馆。

The writer doesn't fancy snails.

The writer doesn't consider snails to be a great delicacy.

L23-04 end 11'44"

L23-05 begin

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 In a country where snails are eaten, you would expect _____ .

a. to find a great many snails in people's gardens

b. to find that people cooked them in wine

c. snails to be so popular that they are a luxury only the rich can afford

d. people to be amazed by anyone who refused to eat them

2 The idea of collecting snails never appealed to the writer very much until _____ .

a. the sight of the snails made him think of Robert

b. a heavy shower of rain led him to look for them in his garden

c. a sudden impulse made him decide to visit

the country where Robert lived
d. he felt obliged to remove them from his prize plants

3 When the writer arrived at Robert's flat _____.

- a. Robert welcomed him warmly because of the snails he had brought
- b. Robert immediately invited him to dinner in order to eat the snails
- c. he forgot about giving Robert the snails until two hours later
- d. he gave Robert the snails, little thinking Robert would propose a dinner with snails as the main dish

Structure

4 People are quite illogical when _____ deciding what... (II.1-2)

- a. it comes to
- b. they come to
- c. they come
- d. coming to

it comes to 经常用于 when 所引导的时间状语从句中，“当涉及到，当提及到”

5 Most of us have been brought up to eat certain kinds _____ .(I.7)

- a. food
- b. of food
- c. of the foods
- d. foods

kinds 和介词 of 搭配

foods: 各种各样的食物

certain kinds of food == certain foods

6 No creature _____ abused more often than...(I.9)

- a. is being praised and
- b. is praised nor
- c. has been praised or
- d. has been praised and

and 和 or

在肯定句中，and 表示并列关系

She smokes and drinks.

在否定句中，有两个对等的谓语、宾语、状语或者从句时，习惯用 or, 把两个成分都否定掉。

She doesn't smoke or drink.

She couldn't remember who she was or where she lived.

如果否定句中出现了 and, 语义表示转折，相当于 but.

The room is not big and comfortable.

7 Having left the bag in the hall, _____ into the living room. (II.16-17)

- a. I accompanied Robert
- b. Robert took

(L23-05_24-01 1'39") [Lesson 24 39:49]

§ Lesson 24 A skeleton in the cupboard “家丑”

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

●skeleton

n. 骷髅

me c. we went d. I and Robert went left 的逻辑主语是主句的主语

8 We saw the snails _____ from the paper bag... (II.19-20)

- a. escaping
- b. escape
- c. had escaped
- d. to escape

we saw (that) the snails ...

Vocabulary

9 On the other hand, you would _____ at the idea... (II.5-6)

- a. be sick
- b. sick
- c. sicken
- d. feel sick

sicken: 感到作呕，难受 (==feel sick) (但非常不常用)

Eg.: He began to feel sick as soon as the ship started to move.

be 动词只是强调延续的状态，而不是一种突然间的一种感觉

10 Snails would, of course, be the main _____ . (II.18-19)

- a. meal
- b. food
- c. plate
- d. course

be the main dish == be the main course

11 ---- I went into the living room where we talked for _____ .(I.17)

- a. round the clock
- b. two hours or so
- c. a second hour
- d. some hours

原文: a couple of hours: 一两个小时的时间

12 There are _____ people, who... (II.10-11)

- a. numerable
- b. numerous
- c. numerical
- d. numbered

原文: countless: 无数的, 数不尽的 (==numerous)

numerable: (=able to be counted) 可数的, 能够数出来的

numerical: 数字的, 数量的, 使用数字的 (多用作前置形容词)

in numerical order

numerical ability

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. D 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. D 11. B 12. B

L23 end (L23-05 8'32") [Lesson 23 47:22]

●seemingly

adv. 表面上地

●respectable

adj. 体面的, 雅观的

●conceal

v. 隐藏, 隐瞒

●vivid

adj. 生动的

●dramatic

adj. 令人激动的, 扣人心弦的

●ruin	v. 毁坏
●heroine	n. 女主人公
●fiction	n. 小说
●varying	adj. 不同的
●medicine	n. 医学
●guestroom	n. (家庭中的) 来客住房
●unpack	vt. (从箱中) 取出
●stack	adj. (整齐地) 堆放, 排放
●underclothes	n. 内衣
●drawer	n. 抽屉
●petrify	v. 使惊呆
●dangle	v. 悬挂
●sway	v. 摇摆
●unsympathetic	adj. 不表同情的, 无动于衷的
●medical	adj. 医学的

L23-05_24-01 end 10'14"

L24-02 begin 10'30"

■skeleton n. 骷髅

a skeleton in the cupboard==a skeleton in the closet == a family skeleton 家丑

It's time to bring a family skeleton out of the cupboard

skeleton key 万能钥匙

a walking skeleton 骨瘦如柴的人

reduced to too a skeleton 瘦的皮包骨

He has nothing to eat for a couple of days so he has been reduced to too a skeleton.

■seemingly adv. 表面上地

■respectable adj. 体面的, 雅观的

respectable decent, graceful, deserving respect: 体面的, 雅观的, 可敬的

Eg.: He is a most respectable man.

The tie is for a respectable man only.

respectable: 可敬的

respectful: 充满敬意的, 尊敬人的

A respectable person is respectful to others.

respective 各自的

Eg.: Our students return to their respective classroom.

■conceal v. 隐藏, 隐瞒

conceal: hide, 比 hide 更加正式, 语气强烈

conceal sth. from sb.

Eg.: He concealed his disappointment from his friends.

He concealed his bets from his wife.

When the mother coming, the little girl hid behind the curtain.

hide, hid, hidden

■vivid adj. 生动的

vivid 生动的, 栩栩如生的, 鲜艳的, 活泼的

Eg.: There is a vivid proverb.

vivid blue 碧蓝色

he is vivid with life. 他是生气勃勃。

Yours description is really vivid.

more vivid, the most vivid

■dramatic adj. 令人激动的, 扣人心弦的

dramatic 比 exciting 更加强烈

The dramatic things is still vivid in his mind.

■ruin v. 毁坏

■heroine n. 女主人公

■fiction n. 小说

fiction 和 novel

fiction (集合名词)不可数 (poetry)

novel 某一部具体的小说 (poem)

I prefer reading fiction to hearing about real invent.

■varying adj. 不同的

=various

different 与.....不一样

My idea differs from yours.

■medicine n. 医学

■guestroom n. (家庭中的) 来客住房

■unpack vt. (从箱中) 取出

■stack adj. (整齐地) 堆放, 排放

stack up the books

The housewife is stacking up the clothing.

■underclothes n. 内衣

underclothing, underwear

■drawer n. 抽屉

■petrify v. 使惊呆

= shock, dumbfound

Heard the news I was petrified.

■dangle v. 悬挂

■sway v. 摇摆

■unsympathetic adj. 不表同情的, 无动于衷的
sympathetic 同情的

sympathy n. in sympathy 同情地 (= sympathetically)

■medical adj. 医学的

L24-02 end 10'30"

L24-03 begin 10'28"

【Text】

§ Lesson 24 A
skeleton in the
cupboard “家丑”

Listen to the tape

then answer the question below.

Who was Sebastian?

We often read in novels how a seemingly respectable person or family has some terrible secret which has been concealed from strangers for years. The English language possesses a vivid saying to describe this sort of situation. The terrible secret is called 'a skeleton in the cupboard'. At some dramatic moment in the story the terrible secret becomes known and a reputation is ruined. The reader's hair stands on end when he reads in the final pages of the novel that the heroine, a dear old lady who had always been so kind to everybody, had, in her youth, poisoned every one of her five husbands.

It is all very well for such things to occur in fiction. To varying degrees, we all have secrets which we do not want even our closest friends to learn, but few of us have skeletons in the cupboard. The only person I know who has a skeleton in the cupboard is George Carlton, and he is very proud of the fact. George studied medicine in his youth. Instead of becoming a doctor, however, he became a successful writer of detective stories. I once spent an uncomfortable weekend which I shall never forget at his house. George showed me to the guestroom which, he said, was rarely used. He told me to unpack my things and then come down to dinner. After I had stacked my shirts and underclothes in two empty drawers, I decided to hang one of the two suits I had brought with me in the cupboard. I opened the cupboard door and then stood in front of it petrified. A skeleton was dangling before my eyes. The sudden movement of the door made it sway slightly and it gave me the impression that it was about to leap out at me. Dropping my suit, I dashed downstairs to tell George. This was worse than 'a terrible secret'; this was a real skeleton! But George was unsympathetic. 'Oh, that,' he said with a smile as if he were talking about an old friend. 'That's Sebastian. You forget that I was a medical student once upon a time.'

参考译文

在小说中，我们经常读到一个表面上受人尊重的人物或家庭，却有着某种多年不为人所知的骇人听闻的秘密。英语中有一个生动的说法来形容这种情况。惊人的秘密称作“柜中骷髅”。在小说的某个戏剧性时刻，可怕的秘密泄漏出来，接着便是某人的声誉扫地。当读者到小说最后几页了解到书中女主人公，那

位一向待大家很好的可爱的老妇人年轻时一连毒死了她的5个丈夫时，不禁会毛骨悚然。

这种事发生在小说中是无可非议的。尽管我们人人都有各种大小秘密。连最亲密的朋友都不愿让他们知道，但我们当中极少有人有柜中骷髅。我所认识的唯一的在柜中藏骷髅的人便是乔治·卡尔顿，他甚至引以为自豪。乔治年轻时学过医，然而，他后来没当上医生，却成了一位成功的侦探小说作家。有一次，我在他家里度周末，过得很不愉快。这事我永远不会忘记。乔治把我领进客房，说这间很少使用。他让我打开行装后下楼吃饭。我将衬衫、内衣放进两个空抽屉里，然后我想把随身带来的两套西服中的一套挂到大衣柜里去。我打开柜门，站在柜门前一下惊呆了。一具骷髅悬挂在眼前，由于柜门突然打开，它也随之轻微摇晃起来，让我觉得它好像马上要跳出柜门朝我扑过来似的。我扔下西服冲下楼去告诉乔治。这是比“骇人听闻的秘密”更加惊人的东西，这是一具真正的骷髅啊！但乔治却无动于衷。“噢，是它呀！他笑着说道，俨然在谈论一位老朋友。“那是塞巴斯蒂安。你忘了我以前是学医的了。”

【课文讲解】

how 引导宾语从句

has some terrible secret

which 引导的定语从句，修饰说明 secret

seemingly: 9=from appearance) 从表面上看来，

a seemingly respectable person: 表面上受尊重的人

possess:(= have got, own)

不定式 to 作定语，修饰说明 vivid saying, 来描述这种场景。

some—表示“某一个”，修饰单数可数名词

ruin 泛指概念，表示毁坏的过程不是一下完成的 (spoil)

The rain ruined / spoiled our holiday.

destroy: 把凭借某种外力来破坏和摧毁事物，完全摧毁

The earthquake destroyed almost entired city.

damage: 侧重强调把…弄坏，但是可以修复

one's hair stands on end :某人感到毛骨悚然的

I thought I was alone in my room until I heard the mysterious noice again, and my hair stands on end.

make/set one's hair stand on end: 使某人感到毛骨悚然的

in her youth:在她年轻时

everyone

every one of 与介词 of 连用时要分开

it is all very well but 不赞成不满意的反语, “好倒是好, 但是……”

Eg: It is all very well for them to ask me to do it, but I am too busy.

It is all very well for you to suggest taking a few days rest, but how can finish our work in time.

occur: 某个事件出乎意料的发生 (正式)

happen: 某个事件出乎意料发生

take place: 事件根据安排“举行”

Eg.: When did the accident happen / occur?

It occurred to me that / to do.

It occurred to me to open the window.

When will the wedding take place?

L24-03 end 10'28"

L24-04 begin 10'12"

To varying degrees: 从不同角度来讲
which 引导定语从句修饰 secret

learn: 了解某个事实, 学习某种知识、技能

know 知道某个事实, 具有某方面的知识、技能, 认识、了解某个人 (状态动词, 不能用于进行时态)

I learned that I had passed the test.

She knows about computers.

She is learning about computers.

instead of + doing----表示相反、没有、取而代之的是……

stood in front of sth. petrified: 站在…前, 目瞪口呆

frightened: 在某个特定的场合下, 受到惊吓

terrified: 表示惊吓的程度, 更加强烈, 感到恐怖

afraid (of): 表示一种状态, 永久性的恐惧

it gave me the impression that: 给某人以印象

make a lasting impression on sb: 给某人以不可磨灭的印象

have a false impression of sb: 对某人有错误的看法

give sb impression that: 给某人印象

impress sb with sth 用…给某人留下印象

be about to do sth.: 即将, 就要。暗示动作即将发生 (多与 when 连用)

I was about to go to bed when there was a knock at the door.

leap out at sb. 跳出来扑向某人

drop----是我所发出的主动动作, 所以用-ing 形式

as if 引导虚拟语气

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 In what respect does fact differ from fiction concerning the secrets that people keep to themselves?

a. They are rarely so terrible as to ruin out reputations if revealed.

b. People's closest friends do not even suspect them of having them.

c. People who have 'skeletons in the cupboard' are rarely found out.

d. People who have skeletons in their cupboards are very proud of the fact.

in what respect : 在什么方面

2 Before opening the cupboard door, the writer had _____ .

a. unpacked and gone down for dinner b. changed into some new clothes

c. put his shirts and his underwear in a couple of drawers

d. hung one of the two suits he had brought with him

3 What was the most frightening thing about the writer's experience?

a. The sight of a skeleton hanging in the cupboard.

b. The sudden movement of the door when he opened the cupboard.

c. To discover that it was the skeleton of an old friend of George's.

d. To have found a real skeleton rather than finding out a terrible secret.

Structure

4 We often read in novels of a seemingly respectable person or family _____ some terrible secret ... (ll.1-2)

a. having b. has c. whom has d. that they have

如果运用定语从句, that they have, they 是多余的

现在分词做定语

c 选项关系词运用不正确

5 The only person I have ever known _____ a skeleton in the cupboard... (ll.11-12)

a. he had b. of having c. that he has d. to have

运用不定式, 修饰名词, ----定语从句

the first person, the only person, the last person...

I 前省略了关系词 that

6 ----George Carlton, and it is _____ he is

very proud of. (I.12)

a. the fact b. something c. that which
d. what

something:有意义, 有价值的事

It's something to have a job in televier.

what = all 全部

7 No sooner had I opened the cupboard door _____ I stood ...(II.17-18)

a. and b. then c. than d. that

8 '_____ that I was a medical student once upon a time?' (I.22)

a. Why don't you remember b. Have you forgotten
c. Do you forget d. have you not remembered

现在完成时

Vocabulary

9 The English language _____ a vivid saying to ... (II.3-4)

a. owes b. contains c. holds d. has
has == own

owe 欠钱

I owed him two dollars yesterday.

10 ----the guestroom, which, he said, was _____ used. (I.15)

a. little b. a little c. uncommonly d. preciously

little:否定色彩的副词

(**L24-05_25-01 3'06"**) [Lesson 25 45:43]

§ Lesson 25 The *Cutty Sark* “卡蒂萨克”号帆船

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- impressive adj. 给人深刻印象的
- steamship n. 蒸汽轮船
- vessel n. 轮船, 大木船
- era n. 时期, 时代
- Java n. 爪哇 (印度尼西亚一岛)
- rudder n. 舵
- roll v. 颠簸, 摇摆
- steer v. 掌握方向
- temporary adj. 临时的
- plank n. 大块木板
- fit v. 安装
- Equator n. 赤道
- delay n. 耽误

■impressive adj. 给人深刻印象的

This is a impressive thing.

impression n. 印象

make a lasting impression on sb: 给某人以不可磨灭的印象

have a false impression of sb: 对某人有错误的看法

a little: 肯定语义

uncommonly:不正常地, 不普通地

preciously:珍贵地

11 He told me to unpack my _____ and then ...(II.15-16)

a. items b. objects c. trunks d. belongings

belongings == possessions

trunk:皮箱, 汽车尾箱

object:巨大的物体

item:物品

12 ----gave me the impression that it _____ leaping out at me. (I.19)

a. was on the point of b. was concerned with
c. was thinking of d. was almost

"...it was about to leap out at me..." “即将, 即刻做某事”

Eg.: The plane is about to set off.

The plane is on the point of setting out.

be concerned with:关心

think of:考虑, 想到

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. A 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. D 6. B 7. C
8. B 9. D 10. A 11. D 12. A

L24 end (L24-05 7'04") [Lesson 24 39:49]

give sb impression that: 给某人印象

impress vt.

impress sb. 给某人留下印象

impress sb with sth 用...给某人留下印象

L24-05_25-01 end 10'12"

L25-02 begin 10'53"

■steamship n. 蒸汽轮船

■vessel n. 轮船, 大木船

vessel (正式的词汇) 可代替 ship, boat. 用于文学体

a sailing vessel, a fishing vessel

boat 比 ship 小, 可以替换 ship(非正式文体)

a fishing boat

■era n. 时期, 时代

era: “纪元”, 地球、人类社会历史上的一个很长的时期, 以特别事物或发展为标志

the beginning of new era

the end of old era

times:历史上一个阶段“时代, 时期”

in ancient times

in classic times

Roman times

age: 特定的历史阶段 (大写, 构成专有名词)

a stone age 石器时代

the space age 太空时代

This is a beginning of era

■Java n. 爪哇 (印度尼西亚一岛)

■rudder n. 舵

■roll v. 颠簸, 摇摆

■steer v. 掌握方向

steer: 驾驶水路交通工具, 强调掌握方向, 导航

drive: 开汽车, 火车

pilot: 操纵轮船, 飞机

He steers the boat suddenly.

He piloted his plane.

■temporary adj. 临时的

temporary jobs / house

temporarily adv.

temporariness n.

= transient: 短暂的, 瞬间的

反义: permanent: 永久的

contemporary: 当代 的

■plank n. 大块木板

■fit v. 安装

■Equator n. 赤道

■delay n. 耽误

【Text】

§ Lesson 25 The *Cutty Sark* “卡蒂萨克”号帆船

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

What piece of bad luck prevented the *Cutty Sark* from winning the race?

One of the most famous sailing ships of the nineteenth century, the *Cutty Sark*, can still be seen at Greenwich. She stands on dry land and is visited by thousands of people each year. She serves as an impressive reminder of the great ships of the past. Before they were replaced by steamships, sailing vessels like the *Cutty Sark* were used to carry tea from China and wool from Australia. The *Cutty Sark* was one of the fastest sailing ships that has ever been built. The only other ship to match her was the *Thermopylae*. Both these ships set out from Shanghai on June 18th, 1872 on an exciting race to England. This race, which went on for exactly four months, was the last of its kind. It marked the end of the great tradition of ships with sails and the beginning of a new era.

The first of the two ships to reach Java after the race had begun was the

Thermopylae, but on the Indian Ocean, the *Cutty Sark* took the lead. It seemed certain that she would be the first ship home, but during the race she had a lot of bad luck. In August, she was struck by a very heavy storm during which her rudder was torn away. The *Cutty Sark* rolled from side to side and it became impossible to steer her. A temporary rudder was made on board from spare planks and it was fitted with great difficulty. This greatly reduced the speed of the ship, for there was danger that if she travelled too quickly, this rudder would be torn away as well. Because of this, the *Cutty Sark* lost her lead. After crossing the equator, the captain called in at a port to have a new rudder fitted, but by now the *Thermopylae* was over five hundred miles ahead. Though the new rudder was fitted at tremendous speed, it was impossible for the *Cutty Sark* to win. She arrived in England a week after the *Thermopylae*. Even this was remarkable, considering that she had had so many delays. There is no doubt that if she had not lost her rudder she would have won the race easily.

参考译文

人们在格林威治仍可看到 19 世纪最有名的帆船之一“卡蒂萨克”号。它停在陆地上, 每年接待成千上万的参观者。它给人们留下深刻的印象, 使人们回忆起历史上的巨型帆船, 在蒸汽船取代帆船之前。

“卡蒂萨克”号之类的帆船被用来从中国运回茶叶, 从澳大利

亚运回羊

毛。“卡

蒂萨克”

号是帆船

制造史上

建造的最

快的一艘

帆船。唯

一可以与

之一比高

低的是“塞姆皮雷”号帆船。两船于 1872 年 6 月 18 日同时从上海启航驶往英国, 途中展开了一场激烈的比赛。这场比赛持续了整整 4 个月, 是这类比赛中的最后一次, 它标志着帆船伟大传统的结束与一个新纪元的开始。

比赛开始后, “塞姆皮雷”号率先抵达爪哇岛。但在印度洋上, “卡蒂萨克”号驶到了前面。看来, 它首先返抵英国是确信无疑的了, 但它却在比赛中连遭厄运。8 月份“卡蒂萨克”号遭到一场特大风暴的袭击, 失去了一只舵。船身左右摇晃, 无法操纵。船员用备用的木板在船上赶制了一只应急用的舵, 并克服重重困难将舵安装就位, 这样一来, 大大降低了船的航速。因为船不能开得太快, 否则就有危险, 应急

舵也会被刮走。因为这个缘故，“卡蒂萨克”号落到了后面。跨越赤道后，船长将船停靠在一个港口，在那儿换了一只舵。但此时，“赛姆皮雷”号早已在 500 多英里之遥了。尽管换装新舵时分秒必争，但“卡蒂萨克”号已经不可能取胜了，它抵达英国时比“赛姆皮雷”号晚了 1 个星期。但考虑到路上的多次耽搁，这个成绩也已很不容易了。毫无疑问，如果中途没有失去舵，“卡蒂萨克”号肯定能在比赛中轻易夺冠。

【课文讲解】

one of the most famous ...最著名的.....之一

背熟: She stands on dry land and is visited by thousands of people each year.

dry land:陆地

背熟: She serves as an impressive reminder of the great ships of the past.

serve as:(=act as)“起...作用”

impressive reminder :深刻的印象,作为.....的回忆

replace vt. ==take place of

L25-02 end 10'53"

L25-03 begin 10'11"

steamship:汽船

sailing ship /sailing vessel: 帆船

match:(= be equal to)与.....相匹敌, 相比

match in / for

The only other ship to match her was the *Thermopylae*.

动词不定式 to 作定语, 修饰 the only other ship

背 诵 : **Both these ships set out from Shanghai on June 18th, 1872 on an exciting race to England.**

背 诵 : This race, which went on for exactly four months, was the last of its kind. It marked the end of the great tradition of ships with sails and the beginning of a new era.

which----指代 this race, 引导非限定性定语从句

帆船: ships with sail, sailing ships, sailing vessels

marked the end of : 标志...的结束

The first of the two ships to reach Java after the race had begun was the *Thermopylae*,...

可改为: after the race had begun the first of the two ships to reach Java was the *Thermopylae*,...

take the lead: 处于领先地位 == go into the lead

lose the lead: 失去领先地位

in the lead: 处于领先地位 (状态)

take over the lead: 取得领先地位

she was struck by a very heavy storm during which her rudder was torn away.

...was struck by a very heavy storm... 严重地遇到了雨 / 雪

be caught in the rain/snow 遇到了雨 / 雪

during 介词, 用于关系代词 which 之前, during the race, during the storm

L25-03 end 10'11"

L25-04 begin 11'04"

torn away = destroyed , pull down

it became impossible to steer her (省略掉 for captain)

there was a danger that+同位语从句会有危险

the captain called in at a port to have a new rudder fitted,

call in at: (船) 停靠, (人) 拜访

to = in order to, so as to “目的是”

have sth. done:

but by now the *Thermopylae* was over five hundred miles ahead.

by now = so far

at tremendous speed:以极快的速度

considering 连接词, 用来引导完整的语句

considering that 考虑到.....

So we should forgive him considering that he is ill badly.

There is no doubt that if she had not lost her rudder she would have won the race easily.

There is no doubt that...==without any doubt “毫无疑问”

There is some doubt + wh- ...

eg.: There is no doubt that he is guilty.

There is some doubt whether he is guilty.

if ----与过去事实相反的虚拟

(二册 L71 P320) : If the Houses of Parliament had not been burned down in 1834, the great clock would never have been erected.

If you talked less and ate more, we would both enjoy our dinner. (二册: L40 P182)

recite paragraph 2 :

she was struck by a very heavy storm during which her rudder was torn away.
There is no doubt that if she had not lost her rudder she would have won the race easily.

take the lead
lose the lead
call in at
with great difficulty
at tremendous speed
It seemed certain that

L25-04 end 11'04"

L25-05 begin

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

- 1 The fame of the *Cutty Sark* rests mainly upon _____.
a. the number of tourists who come to visit her annually
b. her likeness to other great sailing ships of the past
c. her being one of the last and one of the fastest of a line of great sailing ships
d. her victory in the race against the *Thermopylae*
fame: 名声, 名誉
rest upon = rest on

- 2 The race which took place between the *Cutty Sark* and the *Thermopylae* was _____.
a. a landmark in the history of shipping
b. held to celebrate the invention of the steamship
c. held especially for sailing ships on the route from Shanghai to London
d. unusually slow because the *Cutty Sark* lost her rudder en route
landmark: 标志

- 3 During the race, the most remarkable feat of the *Cutty Sark* was _____.
a. although last to reach Java, to take the lead on the Indian Ocean
b. the fact that she managed to sail into port without a rudder
c. the speed at which she was sailing while having a new rudder fitted
d. the speed at which she made up the gap between her and the *Thermopylae*
feat: 功绩

Structure

- 4 The *Cutty Sark* _____ at Greenwich. (II.1-2)
a. is still possible to see b. is able still

to be seen

c. may still be seen
possibly seen

d. is still

5 Before _____, vessels like the *Cutty Sark* were used ... (II.4-5)

- a. steamships replaced sail b. the steamship replaced the sailing ship
c. steamships replaced sailing d. the steam replaced the sail

a 选项 steamships: 汽船, sailing ships

sail: 航海, 航行, 风帆

冠词 the 和名词单数形式搭配表示一类东西

6 It seemed certain that she _____ the first ship home. (I.12)

- a. would go to be b. would be going to be
c. went d. was going to be
would 和 be going to 重复搭配

7 The *Thermopylae* arrived in England only a week before _____. (II.19-20)

- a. she did b. she was c. herself d. she had arrived
before 引导时间状语从句

8 _____ her rudder, there is no doubt she would have won... (I.21)

- a. That if she had not lost b. Not having lost
c. Were she not to lose d. had she not lost
if 引导的虚拟条件句

Vocabulary

9 ----on dry land and _____ thousands of visitors each year. (II.2-3)

- a. appeals to b. attracts c. catches
d. pulls

attract 吸引, The beautiful scenery attracts me.

appeal to 引起...兴趣, The topic of the conversation never appeals to me.

10 On June 18th, 1872 both these ships _____ an exciting race from Shanghai to England. (I.8)

- a. set out on b. departed for c. entered
d. went for
set out : 出发

set out on: 出发进行比赛

Eg: set out on the trip/journey/excursion

depart for 去往某处

11 On the Indian Ocean, the *Cutty Sark* went _____ the lead. (II.11-12)

- a. into b. on c. for d. after
原文: take the lead

go into the lead ==take the lead

12 Even this was remarkable, _____ the numerous delays. (II.20-21)

a. in respect of b. according to c. in view of d. accounting

considering:考虑到

in respect of==with regard to 关于, 至于

accounting to:依据

L26-01 begin 12'55" [Lesson 26 46:52]

§ Lesson 26 Wanted: a large biscuit tin 征购大饼干筒

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

●influence v. 影响

●pride v. 骄傲

●taste n. 鉴赏力

●exert v. 施加

●subtle adj. 微妙的, 难以捉摸的

●advertiser n. 做广告的人

●classify v. 分类

●magic adj. 有奇妙作用的

●sample n. 样品

●devise v. 设计, 想出

●capture v. 吸引, 赢得

●manufacturer n. 生产厂家, 制造商

●wheelbarrow n. 独轮手推车

●boot n. (汽车尾部的) 行李箱

●ingredient n. 配料

●crane n. 起重机

●anticipate v. 预期, 预料

■influence v. 影响

have effect on

Eg.: Literature and art have great influence on people's ideology.

Don't be influenced by bad examples.

under the influence of 受...影响

Eg.: We are under the influence of advertisements.

have influence over sb 有左右某人的能力

Eg.: A teacher has influence over his students.

exercise influence on sb's behalf 为某人而尽力
on sb's behalf 为某人的利益

Eg.: The boss exercises influence on his employee's behalf.

区别: influence / affect

influence:通过劝说, 行为, 榜样来改变一个人的行为或思想, 是潜移默化的影响力

affect: 对.....产生不良影响

Eg.: The bad examples will affect a lot number of students .

influential adj.有影响力的

in view of 以...观点考虑到=considering
account for

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. C 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. A
8. D 9. B 10. A 11. A 12. C

L25-05 end 10'37" [Lesson 25 45:43]

■pride v. 骄傲

pride vt. & n.

pride oneself on 为...感到骄傲、夸耀 = take

pride in / be proud of

不能用于进行时态或被动语态

Eg.: He prided himself on his driving skill.

pride n.

in the pride of 处于最佳状态(顶峰)

Eg: She is still young and in the pride of her beauty.

put one's pride in one's pocket:控制自尊心

■taste n. 鉴赏力

Eg.: She has excellent taste in dress.

have excellent taste in sth 在...上有极高的品位

a taste of 尝一口, 尝一点

Eg: Oh, let me have a taste of your coffee.

in good taste: 文雅, 得体

Eg: The beautiful girl is in good taste.

in bad taste: 庸俗, 不得体

taste: 有什么的味道

to one's taste: 合某人的口味, 称某人的心愿

Eg: He did what he wanted to do to his taste.

There is accounting for taste. 人各有所好。

He who has never tasted bitter knows not what is sweet. 不知黄连苦怎知蜂蜜甜呢。

tasteful 可品尝的

tasteful 有鉴赏力的

tasteless 没有味道的, 乏味的

taste blindness 味盲

taste maker 时尚的首创者

Eg.: Are you taste maker?

■exert v. 施加

exert sth on sb 对某人施加... (压力)

Eg.: His wife exerted a lot of pressure on him to change his job.

He likes to exert his authority on us.

exert oneself 努力, 尽力

Eg.: He never exerted himself to study hard.

exert every effort 尽一切努力

exertion n.

■subtle adj. 微妙的, 难以捉摸的

Eg.: Advertisements exert subtle influence on us.

subtle 敏感的, 敏锐的
Eg.: He is a subtle observer.
subtly adv.微妙地, 敏锐地
subtleness == subtlety

■advertiser n. 做广告的人
advertise: 做广告
advertisement 广告

■classify v. 分类
Eg.: The books have been classified according to subjects.
classification n.
classified adj. 分类的, 机密的
classifiable adj. 可分类的
classifier n. 分类者

■magic adj. 有奇妙作用的
■sample n. 样品
■devise v. 设计, 想出
■capture v. 吸引, 赢得
Eg.: His wonderful performance captured my attention.
capture 捕获, 俘获
Eg.: The police captured the two thieves.

L26-01 end 12'55"

L26-02 begin 13'17"

■manufacturer n. 生产厂家, 制造商
■wheelbarrow n. 独轮手推车
■boot n. (汽车尾部的) 行李箱
■ingredient n. 配料
■crane n. 起重机
■anticipate v. 预期, 预料
anticipate / except
anticipate: 预料到
Eg.: Our attack failed because the enemy anticipated.
anticipate: 期待, 指望, 预料
Eg.: We anticipated the enemy would try to cross the river, so we decided to destroy the bridge.
except: 期待, 希望某事发生 (不能表示“预料到”这一含义); 期待, 指望, anticipate == except
Eg.: I am not expecting any trouble.
We are anticipating (excepting) a large crowd of people at tonight's meeting.
He is the man who is always anticipating trouble.
anticipate: 注重强调的内容以高兴和恐惧的心情, 期待所想之事或预料之事的发生
Eg.: The students are anticipating a wonderful vacation.

【Text】

§ Lesson 26 Wanted: a large biscuit tin 征购大饼干筒

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

Who won the prize for the biggest biscuit?

No one can avoid being influenced by advertisements.

5 Much as we may pride ourselves on our good taste, we are no longer free to choose the things we want, for advertising exerts a subtle influence on us. In their efforts to persuade us to buy this or that product, advertisers have made a close study of human nature and have classified all our little weaknesses.

Advertisers

10 discovered years ago that all of us love to get something for nothing. An advertisement which begins with the magic word FREE can rarely go wrong. These days, advertisers not only offer free samples but free cars, free houses, and free trips round the world as well. They devise hundreds of competitions which will enable us to win huge sums of money. Radio and television have made it possible for advertisers to capture the attention of millions of people in this way.

15 During a radio programme, a company of biscuit manufacturers once asked listeners to bake biscuits and send them to their factory. They offered to pay \$10 a pound for the biggest biscuit baked by a listener. The response to this competition was tremendous. Before long, biscuits of all shapes and sizes began arriving at the factory. One lady brought in a biscuit on a wheelbarrow. It weighed nearly 500 pounds. A little later, a man came along with a biscuit which occupied the whole boot of his car. All the biscuits that were sent were carefully weighed. The largest was 713 pounds. It seemed certain that this would win the prize. But just before the competition closed, a lorry arrived at the factory with a truly colossal biscuit which weighed 2,400 pounds. It had been baked by a college student who had used over 1,000 pounds of flour, 800 pounds of sugar, 200 pounds of fat, and 400 pounds of various other ingredients. It was so heavy that a crane had to be used to remove it from the lorry. The manufacturers had to pay more money than they had anticipated, for they bought the biscuit from the student

for \$24,000.

参考译文

没有人能避免受广告的影响。尽管我们可以自夸自己的鉴赏力如何敏锐，但我们已经无法独立自主地选购自己所需的東西了。这是因为广告在我们身上施加着一种潜移默化的影响。做广告的人在力图劝说我们买下这种产品或那种产品之前，已经仔细地研究了人的本性，并把人的弱点进行了分类。

做广告的人们多年前就发现我们大家都喜欢免费得到东西。凡是用“免费”这个神奇的词开头的广告很少会失败的。目前，做广告的人不仅提供免费样品，而且还提供免费汽车，免费住房，免费周游世界。他们设计数以百计的竞赛，竞赛中有人可赢得巨额奖金。电台、电视使做广告的人可以用这种手段吸引成百万人的注意力。

有一次，在电台播放的节目里，一个生产饼干的公司请听众烘制饼干送到他们的工厂去。他们愿意以每磅 10 美元的价钱买下由听众烘制的最大的饼干。这次竞赛在听众中引起极其热烈的反响。不久，形状各异，大小不一的饼干陆续送到工厂。一位女士用手推车运来一个饼干，重达 500 磅左右。相隔不一会儿，一个男子也带来一个大饼干，那个饼干把汽车的行李箱挤得满满的。凡送来的饼干都仔细地称量。最重的一个达 713 磅，看来这个饼干获奖无疑了。但就在竞赛截止时间将到之际，一辆卡车驶进了工厂，运来了一个特大无比、重达 2,400 磅的饼干。它是由一个大学生烘制的，用去 1,000 多磅的面粉、800 磅食糖、200 磅动物脂肪及 400 磅其他各种原料。饼干份量太重了，用了一台起重机才把它从卡车上卸下。饼干公司不得不付出比他们预计多得多的钱，因为为买下那学生烘制的饼干他们支付了 24,000 美元。

【课文讲解】

Advertisements always exert influence on everybody.

No one ,avoid, 双重否定

No students can avoid being influenced by their teachers.

本课重点句型：Much as we may pride ourselves on our good taste, we are no longer free to choose the things we want, for advertising exerts a subtle influence on us.

让步状语从句, though, although

as 引导让步状语从句, 句子要采用倒装形式(adj. / adv. / n. / v. 用在 as 之前)

1. adj. + as + 主语 + 谓语

Rich as he is, he is not happy.

Tired as I was, I try to help them.

2. adv. (much) + as + 从句

Much as I like you, I will not marry you.

Much as I hate do it, I must stay home and study English. 虽然我不愿意这么做，但我今晚必须呆在家里学习英语。

3. v. + as + 主语 + 助动词

Try as they may, they will never succeed. 即使他们很努力，但他们不会成功。

Object as my parents may, I decide to do it. 不管我父母怎样反对，我都决定要这样做。

采用不同的句子结构形式，不同的词汇表达同一个语义。

effort

1. n. (U) 努力，竭尽全力（需要花费脑力和体力的事情）

Eg.: It took a lot of effort to lift the box.

A great deal of effort has gone into this exhibition.

2. n. (C) 努力，竭尽全力 make every effort

Eg.: We are making every effort to study English.

in one's effort to do: 为了干好某事，在干好某事的努力过程当中

Eg.: The company is selling off some of its buildings in their efforts to save money.

In their efforts to learn English well, they spend a lot of time.

make a close (careful) study: 对什么做了仔细的研究

Advertisers make every effort in order to sell their products.

The first paragraph is really wonderful, you'd better keeping your mind

第一自然段要牢记熟背在心中。

Advertisers discovered years ago that all of us love to get something for nothing.

L26-02 end 13'17"

L26-03 begin 13'12"

get something for nothing (free): 免费得到……

The big bell rarely goes wrong.

these days: 目前

not only...but...as well...不仅……而且……

devise: 设计

Eg.: They have devised the best way to have the party.

enable sb. to do: 使某人能够做某事

Eg.: Hard work will enable you to pass the examination, otherwise, no way.

Radio and television have made it possible for advertisers to capture the attention of millions of people in this way.
make it possible for sb to do sth 使……可能
Eg.: His five material possessions make it possible for him to move from place to place with ease.

The money he won made it possible for him to make a tour around the world.

capture(catch, receive, arrest, draw) the attention of sb 吸引某人注意力

熟记: The response to this competition was tremendous.

response = reaction: 反映

before long = soon, shortly

biscuits of all shapes (sizes), shoes of all sizes

occupy = take up, 占据

It seemed certain that...

注意: 用 it 做形式主语表示肯定时, 要用 certain, 而不能用 sure.

We are sure / certain...

It is certain...

closed = ended

remove = load

L26-03 end 13'12"

L26-04 begin 13'21"

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 What among other things enables advertisers to sell a product more easily?

- a. Knowing that we will buy anything provided it tastes good.
- b. Giving every customer something free with each product he buys.
- c. Having so many free things all over the world to tempt people with.
- d. Having radio and television at their disposal to promote their products.

2 The people who entered the competition did so because _____.

- a. they wanted to get something for nothing
- b. they hoped by winning easily to cover the cost of the baking ingredients
- c. they hoped to receive the prize money of \$24,000
- d. the manufacturers had offered free biscuits to anyone who entered

3 What had the manufacturers failed to anticipate?

a. The number of people who would take an interest in the competition.

b. The number of ingredients required to bake a large biscuit with.

c. That it was possible to bake a biscuit as large as the student's.

d. That there was time to bake a huge biscuit before the competition closed.

Structure

4 _____ of our good taste, we are no longer ... (ll.1-2)

a. So proud may we be b. Although we may pride ourselves a great deal

c. Proud as we may be d. Pride ourselves as we may

5 ----discovered years ago that all of us _____ something for nothing. (ll.7-8)

- a. are loving to get b. love getting c. love to be getting d. love when we get
- love 不用进行时态

6 An advertisement can rarely go wrong _____ with the magic word FREE. (l.8)

- a. which begins b. to begin c. if it will begin d. what begins

当修饰主语的定语从句过长而谓语过短时, 一般将定语从句后置。

7 It was nearly 500 pounds _____ . (l.15)

- a. weighed b. weighing c. in weight d. of weight

in length, in height, in width, in depth, in weight

8 It was so heavy that a crane _____ from the lorry. (ll.20-21)

- a. did they need remove it b. they needed to remove it
- c. was needed to have removed it d. was needed to have it removed

Vocabulary

9 ----in their efforts to persuade us to buy _____ . (l.4)

- a. one or other product b. that or this product c. some product or other d. a product or two

some... or other == this... or that

10 The _____ to this competition was tremendous. (ll.13-14)

- a. answer b. reply c. attraction d. reaction

response 表示反映, 反响的时候, 与 reaction 的意义最近, 通常可以换用。

11 ----with a biscuit which _____ the boot

of his car. (l.16)

a. took complete possession of b. took up
all the space in
c. completely covered d. on the whole
filled
occupy 的同义词 take up

12 The manufacturers had to pay more money than they _____ ... (ll.21-22)

(L26-04_27-01 5'43") [Lesson 27 49:35]

§ **Lesson 27 Nothing to sell and nothing to buy** 不卖也不买

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------|
| ●philosopher | n. 哲学家 |
| ●wisdom | n. 智慧 |
| ●priest | n. 牧师 |
| ●spiritual | adj. 精神上的 |
| ●grudge | v. 不愿给, 舍不得给 |
| ●surgeon | n. 外科大夫 |
| ●passer-by (复数 passers-by) | n. 过路人 |
| ●dignity | n. 尊严 |
| ●deliberately | adv. 故意地 |
| ●consequence | n. 后果, 结果 |
| ●afflict | v. 使苦恼, 折磨 |
| ●ease | n. 容易 |
| ●nature | n. 大自然 |
| ●contempt | n. 蔑视 |
| ●envious | adj. 嫉妒的 |

■philosopher n. 哲学家

■wisdom n. 智慧

cut sb's wisdom teeth 开始懂事了

●priest n. 牧师

■spiritual adj. 精神上的

spiritual life

mental: 智力的

physical: 物质的, 肉体的

spirited: 生机勃勃的, 精神饱满的, 猛烈的

Eg.: She is a spirited girl.

This is a spirited discussion.

spirituous adj. 含酒精的

■grudge v. 不愿给, 舍不得给

■surgeon n. 外科大夫

■passer-by (复数 passers-by) n. 过路人

■dignity n. 尊严

with great dignity

stand / keep on one's dignity

pocket one's dignity 放下架子

lose one's dignity 有失体面

dignify v.

dignified adj.

a. expected b. hoped c. intended d. wished

anticipate 的同义词 expect

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. D 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. C
8. D 9. C 10. D 11. B 12. A

L26-04 7'34" [Lesson 26 46:52]

■deliberately adv. 故意地

on purpose: 故意, 强调目的性

deliberately (强调深思熟虑后)故意的

■consequence n. 后果, 结果

result: 按常规产生的结果

effect 效果

outcome (比赛) 最后结局

in consequence 因此, in consequence of 由于什么的缘故

take the consequence of 承担……的后果

■afflict v. 使苦恼, 折磨

常用于被动语态

affliction n.

afflictive adj. 苦恼的, 悲伤的

■ease n. 容易

with ease 轻而易举

at ease, 舒服, 宽松

He stayed home at ease.

ill at ease 不自在

put sb. at his ease 不拘束

take one's ease 安下心来

I took my ease to study English here.

■nature n. 大自然

■contempt n. 蔑视

in contempt of 轻视

hold sb. in contempt = look down upon sb.

contemptable adj. 可轻视的, 不耻的, 卑鄙的

■■■contemptuous adj. 轻视的, 傲慢的, 轻蔑的

despite

■envious adj. 嫉妒的

【Text】

§ **Lesson 27 Nothing to sell and nothing to buy** 不卖也不买

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

Listen the tape then answer the question below.

What is the most important thing for a tramp?

It has been said that everyone lives by selling something. In the light of this statement, teachers live by selling knowledge, philosophers by selling wisdom and priests by selling spiritual comfort.
5 Though it may be possible to measure the value of material goods in terms of money, it is extremely difficult to estimate the true value of the services which people perform for us. There are times when we would willingly give everything we possess to save
10 our lives, yet we might grudge paying a surgeon a high fee for offering us precisely this service. The conditions of society are such that skills have to be paid for in the same way that goods are paid for at a shop. Everyone has something to sell.

15 Tramps seem to be the only exception to this general rule. Beggars almost sell themselves as human beings to arouse the pity of passers-by. But real tramps are not beggars. They have nothing to sell and require nothing from others. In seeking
20 independence, they do not sacrifice their human dignity. A tramp may ask you for money, but he will never ask you to feel sorry for him. He has deliberately chosen to lead the life he leads and is fully aware of the consequences. He may never be sure where the next meal is coming from, but he is free from the thousands of anxieties which afflict other people. His few material possessions make it possible for him to move from place to place with ease. By having to sleep in the open, he gets far closer to the world of nature than most of us ever do. He may hunt, beg, or steal occasionally to keep himself alive; he may even in times of real need, do a little work; but he will never sacrifice his freedom. We often speak of tramps with contempt and put them in the same class as beggars, but how many of us can honestly say that we have not felt a little envious of their simple way of life and their freedom from care?

参考译文

据说每个人都靠出售某种东西来维持生活。根据这种说法,教师靠卖知识为生,哲学家靠卖智慧为生,牧师靠卖精神安慰为生。虽然物质产品的价值可以用金钱来衡量,但要估算别人为我们所提供的服务的价值却是极其困难的。有时,我们为了挽救生命,愿意付出我们所占有的一切。但就在外科大夫给我们提供了这种服务后,我们却可能为所支付的昂贵的费用而抱怨。社会上的情况就是如此,技术是必须付钱去买的,就像在商店里要花钱买商品一样。人人都有东西可以出售。

在这条普遍的规律前面,好像只有流浪汉是个例

外,乞丐出售的几乎是他本人,以引起过路人的怜悯。但真正的流浪并不是

乞丐。他们既不出售任何东西,也不需要从别人那儿得到任何东西,在追求独立自由的同时,他们并不牺牲为人的尊严。流浪汉可能会向你讨钱,但他从来不要你可怜他。他是故意在选择过那种生活的,并完全清楚以这种方式生活的后果。他可能从不知道下顿饭有无着落,但他不像有人那样被千万桩愁事所折磨。他几乎没有什么财产,这使他能够轻松自如地在各地奔波。由于被迫在露天睡觉,他比我们中许多人都离大自然近得多。为了生存,他可能会去打猎、乞讨,偶尔偷上一两回;确实需要的时候,他甚至可能干一点儿活,但他决不会牺牲自由。说起流浪汉,我们常常带有轻蔑并把他们与乞丐归为一类。但是,我们中有多少人能够坦率地说我们对流浪汉的简朴生活与无忧无虑的境况不感到有些羡慕呢?

【课文讲解】

It has been said that = it is said that 据说

live by: to make enough money to feed oneself: 依靠某种职业为生

live on 依靠某种食物维持生命,或靠某人生活

in the light of = according to, taking into account 根据,考虑到

in accordance with: 依据(法律) (更加正式)

in terms of: 按照,就……而言,关于

in respect of

in / with regard to, as regards

L27-02 end 13'30"

L27-03 begin 12'10"

there are times when 有时

grudge 后面要和名词或动名词搭配

I grudge wasting time on this.

He grudge paying so much money for such bad food.

require from

In seeking independence

in + 动名词搭配,表示“在……的过程中”

In speaking to him, I found he is stammers.

Eg.: in seeking independence

on + 动名词搭配,表示“一……就……”,必须注意主语的一致性。

Eg.: On seeing the plane coming towards me,

I

In crossing the hall, I ...

On entering the hall, I...

L27-03 end 12'10"

L27-04 begin 12'11"

fully: completely

be free from 不受……的影响

He's leading a life free from care and anxieties.

The old lady is never free from paining. 这位老太太始终病痛缠身。

free from error

free from anxieties.

make it possible for sb. to do sth.

keep oneself alive 为了生存

with 和名词搭配, 表示“具有, 带有”

Eg.: How many of us can honestly say that we would like to learn English well?

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 It is very difficult to estimate the true value of the services people perform for us because _____.

- a. people's needs vary so much according to their circumstances.
- b. we refuse to admit that surgeons perform a very necessary service
- c. we seldom should give everything we possess for such services
- d. such services are paid for in the same way as material goods

2 In choosing to lead the life he leads, the tramp has decided _____.

- a. he will never need to ask people for anything
 - b. to sleep in the open in order to be closer to the world of nature
 - c. he would rather lead the life of a criminal than do any work
 - d. his freedom more than compensates for the inconveniences of such a life
- 流浪汉的自由足以弥补他生活中的不便。

3 In moments of truth we feel envious of a tramp's way of life because _____.

- a. we feel that our way of life is undignified compared to a tramp's
- b. his life is not burdened with the anxieties we are often troubled by
- c. of the freedom he has from the struggle to

keep alive

d. we realize that it is better than having to beg for a livelihood

in memories of truth = truly

背熟此结构

"A tramp is free from the thousands of anxieties which afflict other people."

Structure

4 Yet we might grudge _____ a surgeon for offering...(l.8)

- a. a high fee we had paid
 - b. the high fee we would pay
 - c. the high fee paying
 - d. to pay a high fee
- the high fee we would pay a surgeon for offering

5 They _____ require anything from others.(ll.12-13)

- a. do not have to sell anything or
- b. have nothing to sell nor do they
- c. have to sell nothing nor they
- d. have not sold anything and do not

对于二者的否定

Neither...nor...

nothing... nor...

nor...位于句首, 倒装

a. They do not have to sell anything: 他们不必出售什么

6 With so few material possessions, he _____ to move from... (ll.16-17)

- a. may be able
- b. is able
- c. can
- d. is possible

7 We often speak contemptuously _____ tramps and ... (ll.19-20)

- a. for
- b. on
- c. to
- d. of

speak of: 谈及

speak for: 为...辩护

speak on: 就...发言

speak to: 与...谈话

8 But _____ of us can honestly say... (l.20)

- a. who
- b. which ones
- c. how many
- d. what one

Vocabulary

9 A surgeon is a man who _____.(l.8)

- a. saves people's lives
- b. gives people financial advice
- c. performs operations
- d. insures people's lives against sickness or death

10 ---- make it possible for him to move _____ with ease. (ll.16-17)

- a. here and there
- b. one way or another

c. from square to square d. in every sense
from place to place: 四处, 到处 (= here and there)
one way or another: 表示某种方法或途径
in every sense: 名副其实, 在各种意义上来说
He is a thief in every sense. 他是一个不折不扣的骗子。

11 He may hunt, beg or steal occasionally to _____ ... (l.18)
a. make a living b. survive c. be living
d. be alive
to survive = keep himself alive
make a living 谋生

(**L27-05_28-01 5'32"**) [Lesson 28 48:31]

§ **Lesson 28 Five pounds too dear** 五镑太贵

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- wares n. 货物, 商品
- anchor v. 停航下锚
- deck n. 甲板
- silverware n. 银器
- tempt v. 吸引, 引诱
- bargain v. 讨价还价
- disembark v. 下船上岸
- assail v. 纠缠
- marble n. 小玻璃球
- inscribe v. 刻写, 雕
- favour n. 好处, 优惠
- gesticulate v. (讲话时) 打手势
- outrageous adj. 出人预料的; 令人不悦的
- thrust v. 硬塞给

■wares n. 货物, 商品
wares: 货郎随身携带的货物
复合词、表示“器皿、器具”
silverware, ironware, glassware,
software, hardware, chinaware
goods: 商店里出售的商品
commodity: (正式, 总称) 商品
commodity price / economy / market / exchange

■anchor v. 停航下锚
■deck n. 甲板
■silverware n. 银器
■tempt v. 吸引, 引诱
vt. tempt sb. to do sth. 吸引某人做某事
temptation n. 引诱
the temptation to do sth.
tempting adj. 有吸引力的

12 We often _____ tramps and put them down as beggars. (ll.20-21)
a. convict b. blame c. look down on
d. condemn
look down on = look down upon: 瞧不起
convict 宣判某人有罪(常与 of 连用)
blame 责备(常与 for 连用)
condemn to vt. 判刑

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. A 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. B 6. B 7. D
8. C 9. C 10. A 11. B 12. C

L27-05 6'09" [Lesson 27 49:35]

■bargain v. 讨价还价
vi. & n.
a good bargain 好交易
make a bargain 达成协议, 做成交易
drive a hard bargain with sb 和某人费力的讨价还价
bargain with sb for sth 和某人就……讨价还价
bargain away: 讨价出售, 论价出售

L27-05_28-01 end 11'44"

L28-02 begin 11'17"

■disembark v. 下船上岸
=debark 下船上岸
embark 上船

■assail v. 纠缠
vt.
He was assailed with worries.
afflict: 困扰

■marble n. 小玻璃球
■inscribe v. 刻写, 雕
■favour n. 好处, 优惠
in favour of 赞成, 支持, 有利于
in one's favour 受某人欢迎, 得到欢心
out of favour 不利, 失宠

The situation both at home and abroad is in our favour. 无论是国内外的形势均对我们有利。

by favour of: 烦请面交

do sb. a favour: 给某人以恩惠

Eg.: Can you do me a favour to dance with me? 能赏光跳支舞吗?

favourite: 受到优惠的, 优待的

favourable: 赞成的, 称赞的

■gesticulate v. (讲话时) 打手势
■outrageous adj. 出人预料的; 令人不悦的
He played outrageous joke.
outrage n. 暴行
rage 盛怒, 发怒

fly into a rage 勃然大怒

■ thrust v. 硬塞给

thrust sth. into 塞进

thrust aside 推开

thrust oneself forward 向前挤

thrust oneself in 探听, 干涉 == thrust one's nose into

Don't thrust yourself in privacy.

thrust sth. upon sb. 强加于人

Don't thrust your idea upon me.

thrust sb. out 解雇

【Text】

§ Lesson 28 Five pounds too dear 五镑太贵

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

Why was even five pounds 'too dear'?

Small boats loaded with wares sped to the great liner as she was entering the harbour. Before she had anchored, the men from the boats had climbed on board and the decks were soon covered with colourful rugs from Persia, silks from India, copper coffee pots, and beautiful handmade silverware. It was difficult not to be tempted. Many of the tourists on board had begun bargaining with the tradesmen, but I decided not to buy anything until I had disembarked.

I had no sooner got off the ship than I was assailed by a man who wanted to sell me a diamond ring. I had no intention of buying one, but I could not conceal the fact that I was impressed by the size of the diamonds. Some of them were as big as marbles. The man went to great lengths to prove that the diamonds were real. As we were walking past a shop, he held a diamond firmly against the window and made a deep impression in the glass. It took me over half an hour to get rid of him.

The next man to approach me was selling expensive pens and watches. I examined one of the pens closely. It certainly looked genuine. At the base of the gold cap, the words 'made in the U.S.A.' had been neatly inscribed. The man said that the pen was worth £50, but as a special favour, he would let me have it for £30. I shook my head and held up five fingers indicating that I was willing to pay £5. Gesticulating wildly, the man acted as if he found my offer outrageous, but he eventually reduced the price to £10. Shrug-
ging my shoulders, I began to walk away when, a moment later, he ran after me and

thrust the pen into my hands. Though he kept throwing up his arms in despair, he readily accepted the £5 I gave him. I felt especially pleased with my wonderful bargain---- until I got back to the ship. No matter how hard I tried, it was impossible to fill this beautiful pen with ink and to this day it has never written a single word!

参考译文

当一艘大型班船进港的时候,许多小船载着各种杂货快速向客轮驶来。大船还未下锚。小船上的人就纷纷爬上客轮。一会儿工夫,甲板上就摆满了色彩斑斓的波斯地毯。印度丝绸。铜咖啡壶以及手工制作的漂亮的银器。要想不为这些东西所动心是很困难的。船上许多游客开始同商贩讨价还价起来,但我打定主意上岸之前什么也不买。

我刚下船,就被一个人截住,他向我兜售一枚钻石戒指。我根本不想买,但我不能掩饰这样一个事实:

其 钻 石

之 大 给

我 留 下

了 深 刻

的 印 象。

有 的 钻

石 像 玻

璃 球 那

么大。那人竭力想证明那钻石是真货。我们路过一家商店时,他将一颗钻石使劲地往橱窗上一按,在玻璃上留下一道深痕。我花了半个多小时才摆脱了他的纠缠。

向我兜售的第二个人是卖名贵钢笔和手表的。我仔细察看了一枝钢笔,那看上去确实不假,金笔帽下方整齐地刻有“美国制造”字样。那人说那支笔值 50 英镑,作为特别优惠,他愿意让我出 30 英镑成交。我摇摇头,伸出 5 根手指表示我只愿出 5 镑钱。那人激动地打着手势,仿佛我的出价使他不能容忍。但他终于把价钱降到了 10 英镑。我耸耸肩膀掉头走开了。一会儿,他突然从后追了上来,把笔塞到我手里。虽然他绝望地举起双手,但他毫不迟疑地收下了我付给他的 5 镑钱。在回到船上之前,我一直为我的绝妙的讨价还价而洋洋得意。然而不管我如何摆弄,那枝漂亮的钢笔就是吸不进墨水来。直到今天,那枝笔连一个字也没写过!

【课文讲解】

five pounds too dear

dear ==expensive, costly

Small boats sped to the great liner----主干
loaded with----过去分词作定语,“装载,运载”
(= filled with)

speed :迅速驶向

speed down hill 向山下疾驶

speed up 向山上疾驶
speed by 迅速驶过
Our holiday speed by.

anchor: 停航下锚

the men from the boats 小船上的人们
be covered with 堆满了

重点句型: It was difficult not to be tempted. (双重否定)

It was difficult not to be tempted by the beautiful shoes.

L28-02 end 11'17"

L28-03 begin 11'30"

bargain with 与.....讨价还价

on board----介词短语, 修饰 the tourists

not ... until

Eg.: I decided not to do anything until I had got home.

They didn't reach the school until they had already passed by two villages.

背熟: I had no sooner got off the ship than I was assailed by a man who wanted to sell me a diamond ring.

had no sooner ... than 句型 (no sooner 位于句首, 要倒装)

表示“一...就...”的句型有: as soon as, the moment that, on doing, had no sooner than, had hardly when

have no intention of doing sth 不打算做某事

Eg.: I have no intention of changing my mind.

He said that he had no intention of looking for another job.

the fact that----同位语从句, 不能更改为 which

I can not conceal the fact that... 我不能隐藏这一事实

impress: 给.....极深的印象

be most impressed by 某人被留下了极深的印象

What impressed me most was 给我印象最深的是

Eg.: What impressed me most was beauty here.

create / give a bad impression on sb. 给.....以不良印象

Eg.: If the shop is untidy, it creates a bad impression on potential customers.

If you don't work hard, it will create a bad impression on your boss

make a quite impression on sb. 给某人留下极深的印象

Eg.: Your speech made a quite impression on me.

impression n. 印痕

Eg.: He made a deep impression in glass.

记住: **but I could not conceal the fact that I was impressed by the size of the diamonds.**

as...as 象.....一样

go to great (considerable, any) lengths 竭尽全力, 不惜一切代价

L28-03 end 11'30"

L28-04 begin 12'09"

Eg.: He went to great lengths to pass the examination.

real: 真的, 不是捏造出来的, 非人工制造的 (= genuine)

true: 与事实或现实符合 (≠ false)

genuine: 不是伪造的, 非人工制造的 (常用来修饰金银、字画、古董 ≠ fake)

real reason, real fears, real / genuine money, real / genuine diamond

past == by 走过

It takes sb. sometime to do sth. 花费某人时间做某事

get rid of 摆脱, 除去; 治好 = cure

He can never get rid of his debts. (~ debt == pay off: 还清)

stain == wash off 洗净

The next man to approach me: 第二个向我兜售的人, 靠近我的人

at the base of 在.....的底部

as a special favour 作为一种特殊的优惠

for 出价钱

hold up five fingers indicating that...

indicating: 分词作状语, “意思是说.....”

Eg.: I held up ten fingers indicating that I was willing to pay \$10.

Gesticulating: 现在分词作伴随情况状语

act as if (行为、举止)好像
as if ==as though

outrageous: 感到出乎意料的, 令人不能容忍的
eventually ==at last

shrugging----现在分词作伴随状况状语

readily ==willingly 心甘情愿地

be pleased with= be satisfied with 对……感到满意

No matter how ==however

fill with

to this day==up till now, until now, so far 到目前为止

课文虽然简单, 但务必要牢记几种句子结构在心中。

L28-04 end 12'09"

L28-05 begin 14'54"

【Multiple choice questions】 P136 Comprehension

1 At what point did the tradensmen start trying to sell their merchandise?

- a. Once it had ben brought to them by the small boats.
- b. While they were laying it out on the decks.
- c. As soon as the liner had anchored in the harbour.
- d. Once the tourists had arrived on board.

merchandise: 商品

lay out 摆设

2 What happened once the writer got on shore?

- a. A man who had followed him off the ship tried to sell him a diamond.
- b. He was made to look at some diamonds against his will.
- c. A man started pestering him to buy a diamond.
- d. On his way to a shop, he met a man who was selling diamonds.

pester: 纠缠 (=assail)

afflict: 折磨

3 What made the writer finally buy the pen?

- a. He had been unable to make the man understand he did not want it.
- b. The man eventually agreed to his original offer.
- c. He decided it was the only way to get rid of the man.
- d. He was afraid the man might otherwise become violent.

Structure

4 But I decided to disembark _____

anything. (ll.7-8)

- a. before I would buy b. until I was buying
 - c. until I had bought d. before buying
- not ...until
before

5 I was assailed by a man who wanted _____ a diamond ring.(l.9)

- a. that I bought b. for me to buy c. me to buy
- d. my buying

6 ---- of buying one, but the man _____ that I was impressed ... (l.10)

- a. must have noticed b. had to notice
- c. must notice d. could notice

7 The man said that although the pen was worth £ 50, as a special favour, _____ for £30. (ll.16-17)

- a. he would let it to me b. he could have let me have it
- c. it would have been mine d. he might give me

a 改为 he would let me have it

Vocabulary

8 It was difficult to _____ temptation. (ll.5-6)

- a. avoid b. fight c. resist d. stand
- resist temptation 抗拒

9 _____ I was approached by a man who was selling... (l.14)

- a. The later b. On the next time c. Afterwards
- d. After

after 多用于具体的时间名词之后 two days after

afterwards 常常单独使用 soon afterwards
shortly afterwards

the later 表示后者

10 ---- and held up five fingers indicating I _____ to pay five pounds. (l.17)

- a. wished b. was ready to c. intended
- d. expected

intend to do 有意图、有打算, 但不表示心甘情愿

11 The man acted as if he found my offer _____ ... (l.18)

- a. irritating b. preposterous c. hilarious
- d. unspeakable

irritating: 令人烦恼的

preposterous: 荒谬的

hilarious: 充满欢声笑语的

unspeakable ==terrible

12 _____ hard I tried, it was impossible to fill the pen. (ll.21-22)

- a. However b. Whatever c. Whichever

d. So ever
原文: no matter how

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

(L28-05_29-01 6'43") [Lesson 29
43:16]

§ Lesson 29 Funny or not? 是否可笑?

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

●largely	adv. 在很大程度上
●comic	adj. 喜剧的, 可笑的
●universal	adj. 普遍的
●comedian	n. 滑稽演员, 喜剧演员
●distasteful	adj. 讨厌的
●pester	v. 一再要求, 纠缠
●dread	v. 惧怕
●recovery	n. 康复
●plaster	n. 熟石膏
●console	v. 安慰, 慰问
●hobble	v. 瘸着腿走
●compensate	v. 补偿
●mumble	v. 喃喃而语

■largely adv. 在很大程度上

Eg.: He success was largely due to luck.

■comic adj. 喜剧的, 可笑的

■universal adj. 普遍的

universal agent 全权代理人

universal time 世界时

universal joint 万向接头

universality n. 普遍性

universally adv.

Eg.: It universally acknowledged that English is getting more and more important.

universe 宇宙

■comedian n. 滑稽演员, 喜剧演员

comedy 喜剧

tragedy 悲剧

tragic 悲剧的

comic 喜剧的

■distasteful adj. 讨厌的

Eg.: The idea is distasteful to me.

distastefully adv.

■pester v. 一再要求, 纠缠

=assail (I28)

pester sb. to do

pester sb. with

Eg.: He contunually pesters his boss with demands.

pester sb. for sth.

■dread v. 惧怕

后面可以跟名词、动名词、不定式搭配连用

1. B 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. C 6. A 7.
D 8. C 9. C 10. B 11. B 12. A
L28-05 8'06" [Lesson 28 48:31]

Eg.: We were dreading his arrival. 我们正担心他来呢。

I dread to think what will happened if she find out.

He dread having to meet his parents.

dreadful adj.

dreaded

in dread of

fear 一般的恐惧

horrify 使恐怖, 使极度恐惧

■recovery n. 康复

■plaster n. 熟石膏

■console v. 安慰, 慰问

Eg.: He is consoling his friend in grief for the loss of child.

■hobble v. 瘸着腿走

■compensate v. 补偿

■mumble v. 喃喃而语

L28-04_29-01 end 14'54"

L29-02 begin 14'53"

【Text】

§ Lesson 29 Funny or not? 是否可笑?

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

What is the basis of 'sick' humour?

Whether we find a joke funny or not largely depends on where we have been brought up. The sense of humour is mysteriously bound up with national characteristics. A Frenchman, for instance, might find it hard to laugh at a Russian joke. In the same way, a Russian might fail to see anything amusing in a joke which would make an Englishman laugh to tears.

Most funny stories are based on comic situations. In spite of national differences, certain funny situations have a universal appeal. No matter where you live, you would find it difficult not to laugh at, say, Charlie Chaplin's early films. However, a new type of humour, which stems largely from the U.S., has recently come into fashion. It is called 'sick humour'. Comedians base their jokes

on tragic situations like violent death or serious accidents. Many people find this sort of joke distasteful. The following example of 'sick humour' will enable you to judge for yourself.

A man who had broken his right leg was taken to hospital a few weeks before Christmas. From the moment he arrived there, he kept on pestering his doctor to tell him when he would be able to go home. He dreaded having to spend Christmas in hospital. Though the doctor did his best, the patient's recovery was slow. On Christmas day, the man still had his right leg in plaster. He spent a miserable day in bed thinking of all the fun he was missing. The following day, however, the doctor consoled him by telling him that his chances of being able to leave hospital in time for New Year celebrations were good. The man took heart and, sure enough, on New Year's Eve he was able to hobble along to a party. To compensate for his unpleasant experiences in hospital, the man drank a little more than was good for him. In the process, he enjoyed himself thoroughly and kept telling everybody how much he hated hospitals. He was still mumbling something about hospitals at the end of the party when he slipped on a piece of ice and broke his left leg.

参考译文

我们觉得一则笑话是否好笑，很大程度取决于我们是在哪儿长大的。幽默感与民族有着神秘莫测的联系。譬如，法国人听完一则俄国笑话可能很难发笑。同样的道理，一则可以令英国人笑出泪来的笑话，俄国人听了可能觉得没有什么可笑之处。

大部分令人发笑的故事都是根据喜剧情节编写的。尽管民族不同，有些滑稽的情节却能产生普遍的效果。比如说，不管你生活在哪里，你看查理·卓别林的早期电影很难不发笑。然而，近来一种新式幽默流行了起来，这种幽默主要来自美国。它被叫作“病态幽默”。喜剧演员根据悲剧情节诸如暴死，重大事故等来编造笑话。许多人认为这种笑话是低级庸俗的。下面是个“病态幽默”的实例，你可据此自己作出判断。

圣诞节前几周，某人摔断了右腿被送进医院。从他进医院那一刻时，他就缠住医生，让医生告诉他什么时候能回家。他十分害怕在医院过圣诞。尽管医生竭力医治，但病人恢复缓慢。圣诞节那天，他的右腿还上着石膏，他在床上郁郁不乐地躺了一天，想着他错过的种种欢乐。然而，第二天，医生安慰他说，出院欢度新年的可能性还是很大的，那人听后振作了精神。果然，除夕时他可以一瘸一拐地去参加晚会了。为了补偿住院这一段不愉快的经历，那人喝得稍许多了一点。在晚会上他尽情娱乐，一再告诉大家他是多么讨厌医院。晚会结束时，他嘴里还在嘟囔着医院的事，突然踩到一块冰上滑倒了，摔断了左腿。

【课文讲解】

I found it difficult to finish the work in a day.
第1句话是文章的 topic

be based on: 以.....作为基础

It was difficult not to be tempted
Stem from, come from, arise from, originate from

His feeling of hate stems from envy
Her interest in flowers stemmed from her childhood in the country
come into fashion 开始流行
come into being 开始形成
come into power 开始执政

Comedians base their jokes on tragic situations like violent death or serious accidents.

Some funny stories are based on tragic situations.

A man whose right leg had been broken...

From the moment he arrived at party, he enjoyed himself very much.

keep doing sth. 不间断的，不停的做某事
keep on doing sth. 反复、重复干某事(中间可以有短暂的暂停) (keep: vi.)
Don't keep on asking silly questions.
He kept smoking all the while.
He kept on smoking all the while.
keep + 宾语 + 动词 ing 形式, keep on 不能用于该句型

He kept me waiting for an hour.
I'm sorry to have kept you waiting so long.

dread to do == dread doing

a miserable day: a terrible day

think of 想到，想起，想着
When I saw you I thought of my sister.
think of doing sth.
He is thinking of setting up a school.

spend time doing sth.

by 通过某种方式手段
dread to do = dread doing
a miserable day: a terrible day
think of: 想到，想起，想着
When I saw you I thought of my sister.
think of doing sth.
He is thinking of setting up a school.
spend time doing sth.
by: 通过某种方式手段
I arrived here by train.

在表达可能性这个语句的时候，经常采用复数形式
chances of
My chances of passing the examination are good.
It is quite possible for me to pass the examination.

L29-02 end 14'54"

L29-03 begin 14'16"

His chances of being dismissed are good.
记熟：his chances of doing sth. are good. /
remote 做……可能性极大/极小
remote
His chances of arriving here by bicycle are remote.
slight
He took heart when he got the good news.
lose heart :失去信心，失去勇气

The cake is more than I can eat.
necessary, gook, possible, anticipate, expect,
feel, suggest, report, require, think

He eats more than is good for him.
as
He arrived as I expected. / He arrived as was expected.
He eats just as much as is good for him.
He eats more than is good for him.
The man drank just as much as was good for him.
She is quite fat. ==She isn't right fat.

Yesterday I went swimming. In the process,
I had a very good time.

I was looking for your house and got lost in the process.
keep telling ==keep on telling

how much ----to what extent
How much can I trust him?

when: at that moment

L29-03 end 14'16"

L29-04 begin

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 Whether you find 'sick humour' funny or not will depend on _____.
a. your having been brought up in America
b. the joke being related to a fundamentally comic situation
c. your ability to see the funny side of an

unpleasant event
d. your ability to laugh until you cry
the funny side of...

2 The man spent Christmas Day feeling miserable because _____.
a. the doctor had failed to attend to him
b. he was not able to be with his friends.
c. being unable to walk, he did not enjoy the celebrations at the hospital
d. he thought he might also miss the New Year's Eve celebrations
He spent a miserable day in bed thinking of all the fun he was missing.

3 The point of the joke taken to illustrate 'sick humour' is that _____.
a. no sooner was the man out of hospital than he had to go back in again
b. the man should not have said how much he hated hospitals
c. the man would be unable to walk for the rest of his life
d. the man had not got a leg to stand on taken to illustrate...过去分词

Structure

4 _____, for instance, might find it hard to ... (ll.3-4)
a. The French b. A French c. A man in France d. If you were French
缺少主语
任意一个法国人 a french man
a man in France 法国有那么一个人

5 _____ amusing stories are based on comic situations. (l.7)
a. Most b. Most of c. The majority
d. Mostly
most of the (art.) +n.
most of the students
the majority of ...大多数

6 A man _____ broken was taken to hospital ... (l.13)
a. whose right leg had been b. who had the right leg
c. with one right leg d. to whom the right leg had been
who 引导定语从句
a man who had broken his...

7 He had no sooner arrived there _____ pestering his doctor ... (ll.13-14)
a. and then he began b. than he began
c. he began d. to begin
no sooner than

8 The man compensated for his unpleasant experiences in hospital _____ a little more than ... (ll.19-20)
 a. drinking b. to drink c. by drinking
 d. and drunk
 by drinking
 by 表示通过某种手段

Vocabulary

9 Though the doctor _____ ... (l.15)
 a. worked very well b. could not have been better
 c. was extremely skilled d. did all he could
 try one's best / do one's best 竭尽全力

10 The doctor him by _____ ... (l.17)
 a. felt b. advised c. pleased d. comforted
 comfort: 安慰

11 ----and kept telling everyone _____
 (L29-04_30-01 2'20") [Lesson 30 39:13]

§ Lesson 30 The death of a ghost 幽灵之死

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

- labourer n. 劳动者
- overnight adv. 一夜之间
- hay n. 干草
- corn n. 谷物
- moonlight n. 月光
- conscientious adj. 认真的
- suspect v. 怀疑
- desert v. (军队中) 开小差
- regiment n. (军队) 团
- action n. 战斗
- recluse n. 隐士

■labourer n. 劳动者

labourer 特别强调使用体力，而不是技能；户外工作

workman 指具有某种工艺技能的半熟练工人

worker 泛指，暗示具有更高的技术水平，通常指脑力劳动者

farmhand 农场雇工，农业工人； farm labourer

■overnight adv. 一夜之间

■hay n. 干草

■corn n. 谷物

■moonlight n. 月光

■conscientious adj. 认真的

a conscientious teacher

conscious adj. 意识到的，清楚的

L29-04_30-01 end 9'50"

L30-02 begin 9'20"

hehated hospitals. (l.21)

a. at great lengths that b. to their cost
 c. to what extent d. why

how much...多么（痛恨）

to what extent = how much

at great lengths = in great detail 详细的

to one's cost 通过痛苦的体验

Eg.: Wasp's stings are serious as I know to my cost.

12 He was still mumbling something _____ at the end ... (ll.21-22)

a. in the same way b. to the same effect
 c. of common sense d. of some sort
 in the same way 强调使用相同的方式

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. A 6. A 7. B
 8. C 9. D 10. D 11. C 12. B

L29-04 7'27" [Lesson 29 43:16]

■suspect v. 怀疑

suspect vt. 怀疑 to believe to be true or likely

I suspected him of stealing the car.

suspected that...

He suspected that his girlfriend tried to hide her true feelings.

suspect sb. to be

I suspect him to be a spy.

doubt 怀疑，表示否定的语意

I doubt whether he is a liar. / I suspect that he is a liar.

I doubt the truth of his statement.

suspicious adj.

Cats are suspicious of human beings.

suspicion n. 猜疑，怀疑

■desert v. (军队中) 开小差

desert vt. run away without permission

The soldier deserted his army.

We sheltered from the storm in a deserted hut.

abandon 放弃

desert 违背法律、道义、责任、信仰

desert the army, desert school, desert his duty, desert his family

abandon 被迫放弃所感兴趣或所负责任的东西。

He had to abandon his favorite research because of the war.

forsake vt. 放弃，抛弃，与.....脱离关系

Eg.: He forsook his family.

discard v. 放弃，丢弃： give up as useless

Eg.: everyday we discard a large amount of rubbish.

■regiment n. (军队) 团

■action n. 战斗
■recluse n. 隐士

【Text】

§ Lesson 30 The death of a ghost 幽灵之死

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

Why did the two brothers keep the secret?

For years villagers believed that Endley farm was haunted. The farm was owned by two brothers, Joe and Bob Cox. They employed a few farm hands, but no one was willing to work there long. Every time a worker gave up his job, he told the same story. Farm labourers said that they always woke up to find the work had been done overnight. Hay had been cut and cow sheds had been cleaned. A farm worker, who stayed up all night, claimed to have seen a figure cutting corn in the moonlight. In time, it became an accepted fact that the Cox brothers employed a conscientious ghost that did most of their work for them.

No one suspected that there might be someone else on the farm who had never been seen. This was indeed the case. A short time ago, villagers were astonished to learn that the ghost of Endley had died. Everyone went to the funeral, for the 'ghost' was none other than Eric Cox, a third brother who was supposed to have died as a young man. After the funeral, Joe and Bob revealed a secret which they had kept for over forty years.

Eric had been the eldest son of the family, very much older than his two brothers. He had been obliged to join the army during the Second World War. As he hated army life he decided to desert his regiment. When he learnt that he would be sent abroad, he returned to the farm and his father hid him until the end of the war. Fearing the authorities, Eric remained in hiding after the war as well. His father told everybody that Eric had been killed in action. The only other people who knew the secret were Joe and Bob. They did not even tell their wives. When their father died, they thought it their duty to keep Eric in hiding. All these years, Eric had lived as a recluse. He used to sleep during the day and work at night, quite unaware of the fact that he had become the ghost of Endley. When he died, however, his brothers found it impossible to keep the secret any longer.

参考译文

多年来,村民们一直认为恩得利农场在闹鬼。恩得利农场属于乔·考克斯和鲍勃·考克斯兄弟俩所有。他们雇了几个农工,但谁也不愿意在那儿长期工作下去。每次雇工辞职后都叙述着同样的故事。雇工们说,常常一早起来发现有人在夜里把活干了,干草已切好,牛棚也打扫干净了。有一个彻夜未眠的雇工还声称他看见一个人影在月光下收割庄稼。随着时间的流逝,考克斯兄弟雇了一个尽心尽责的鬼,他们家的活大部分都让鬼给干了,这件事成了公认的事实。

谁也没想到农场竟会有一个从未露面的人。但事实上确有其人。不久之前,村民们惊悉恩得利农场的鬼死了。大家都去参加了葬礼,因为那“鬼”不是别人,正是农场主的兄弟埃里克·考克斯。人们以为埃里克年轻时就死了。葬礼之后,乔和鲍勃透露了他们保守了长达50多年的秘密。

埃里克是这家长子。年龄比他两个弟弟大很多,第二次世界大战期间被迫参军。他讨厌军旅生活,决定逃离所在部队。当他了解自己将被派遣出国时,他逃回农场,父亲把他藏了起来,直到战争结束。由于害怕当局,埃里克战后继续深藏不露。他的父亲告诉大家,埃里克在战争中被打死了。除此之外,只有乔与鲍知道这个秘密。但他俩连自己的妻子都没告诉。父亲死后,他们兄弟俩认为有责任继续把埃里克藏起来。这些年来,埃里克过着隐士生活,白天睡觉,夜里出来干活,一点不知道自己已成了恩得利家场的活鬼。他死后,他的弟弟们才觉得无法再保守这个秘密了。

【课文讲解】

It is said the public house was haunted.
haunt: visit somewhere very often
He haunted this cinema.

own == possess
the farm was possessed by two brothers.
be willing to == be ready to do

every time == whenever 引导时间状语从句
Every time I listen to his advice, I get into trouble.
Whenever I listen to his advice, I get into trouble.

wake up to find that 醒过来的时候,结果却发现.....
to 不定式做结果状语

He woke up to find that he was surrounded by a large crowd of people.
He hurried to the post office only to find that it was shut.

L30-02 end 9'20"

L30-03 begin 9'19"

and 平行句式结构
hay 干草

A farm worker, who..., claimed to ...
句子主干: A farm worker claimed to ...

claim to have done

claim to have done 声称做过某事

Eg: He claimed to have seen the puma.

Seamen claimed to have seen monsters.

see sb. doing sth. 看见某人正在做某事

who 引导非限制性定语从句, 补充说明 a farm worker

These young people, who love the peace of the mountains, always receive a warm welcome at Saint Bernard Monastery.

stay up : not to go to bed

I stayed up last night

The boy sat up to see the film.

wait up for/sit up for 为了等待某人回来而不睡觉

Don't wait up for me, I'll be home very late.

burn the midnight oil 开夜车

Eg: I have to burn the midnight oil tonight to complete work.

in time 最后, 终于

It became an accepted fact that...

变成一个大家都接受的事实

that 引导同位语从句, 补充说明 fact

同位语补充说明先行词的内涵

An idea came to her that she might do the experiment in another way.

Everybody had already accepted the fact that the puma is still at large.

It becomes an accepted fact that the puma is still at large.

that 引导定语从句

No one suspected that...

someone else who had never been seen

be astonished = be surprised

astonish, surprise, amaze, astound

be astonished to do sth.

I'm not surprised to see he is still as fat as before.

for == as 是对全句的补述

none other than == no other than 强调结构, 表示不是别人而正是……

Eg: The man who had sent the flowers was none other than the man she had spoken to the night before.

L30-03 end 9'19"

L30-04 begin 9'42"

It was no other than my old friend Johnson.

The man who spoke to her was none other than her husband.

nothing else than 仅仅

Eg: His failure was due to nothing else than his own carelessness.

a third brother 另一位兄弟

who was supposed = who was thought

He was supposed to have died 20 years before.

keep secret 保密

reveal secret 揭露秘密, 披露秘密

The press revealed the scandal.

He kept secret for a long time.

he kept it to himself for a long time.

very much : much 用来加强语气

be obliged to do = be forced to do 被迫做某事

He had been in hiding...

Fearing the authorities...现在分词引导原因状语

in hiding = in concealment

he remained in hiding at home...

the only other people who knew the secret 仅知道的人

the only other people who finished the work 仅完成这项工作的人

they thought it their duty to...

it 形式宾语

I thought it very difficult to pass this examination.

We all think it our duty to support our parents.

形式宾语 it 和宾语补足语直接搭配连用, 宾语补足语可以是名词或形容词

形容词短语做状语, 进一步补充说明全句

quite unaware of the fact that...

that 引导同位语从句

We amassed requisites quite unaware of the fact.

amass 收藏, 积聚

his brothers found it impossible to do...

it 形式宾语

It is quite impossible to finish the hard work in 2 hours.

I found it quite impossible to finish the hard work in 2 hours.

L30-04 end 9'42"

L30-05 begin

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 While farmhands stayed at Endley Farm _____.

- a. they woke up during the night to find their work had been done for them
 - b. they often saw a figure working in the fields at night
 - c. they did not have any work to do
 - d. it never occurred to them that there was someone in hiding on the farm
- it never occur to them that...
- it 在这儿是形式主语

2 Eric remained in hiding after the war because

- a. he feared the penalty he might receive for his desertion
 - b. his father had told everyone he had died
 - c. he was afraid of being sent abroad by the authorities
 - d. he was fond of the life of a recluse
- penalty == punishment 惩罚

3 When did the identity of the 'ghost' become known?

- a. When the illagers attended the funeral.
- b. Fifty years after the outbreak of the Second World War.
- c. when the father or me three Cox brothers died.
- d. When Joe and Bob felt they would have to have their brother buried.

Structure

4 Farm labourers said that on waking up _____ work had been done. (II.4-5)

- a. to find b. they would find c. and finding d. they had found

5 ---- employed a conscientious ghost, _____ most of their work for them. (II.8-9)

- a. doing b. to have done c. which did d. so as to do

6 As he hated _____, he decided to desert

... (I.16)

- a. the life of army b. life in the army c. life of the army d. the army for life
- 军队生活: army life; life in the army
学校生活: school life; life in the school

7 ---- Eric had been killed _____ fighting with his regiment. (II.18-19)

- a. while b. during c. as if d. because

8 Joe and Bob were the only other people who knew the secret _____ their wives. (II.19-20)

- a. and did not even tell b. which they did not even tell
- c. who did not tell d. yet did not tell it to

Vocabulary

9 _____, it became an accepted fact. ... (1.8)

- a. At the time b. On time c. With time d. At times

at times == occasionally 有时
on time 准时

10 He was _____ during the Second World War. (II.15-16)

- a. recruited b. conscripted c. armed d. regimented

recruit 招募军队 可指非法招募

Eg: Can't you recruit more members to the music society?

conscript 根据法律或宪法征兵, 与介词 into 连用, 在美语中用 draft

regiment n. 军团; vt. 使受训练

arm vt. 武装

11 All these years, Eric had lived _____. (II.20-21)

- a. out of this world b. a secret life c. without a companion d. the life of a hermit

12 He used to work at night, _____ that he had become the ghost of Endley. (II.21-22)

- a. never realizing b. quite misunderstanding c. quite ignoring d. never accounting for

realize == become aware of

never realizing = quite unaware of

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

- 1. D 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. A 9. C 10. B 11. D 12. A

L30-05 8'35"

[Lesson 30 39:13]

§ **Lesson 31 A lovable eccentric** 可爱的怪人

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

●lovable	adj. 可爱的
●eccentric	n. (行为) 古怪的人
●disregard	v. 不顾, 漠视
●convention	n. 习俗, 风俗
●conscious	adj. 感觉到的, 意识到的
●invariably	adv. 总是, 经常地
●routine	n. 常规; 惯例
●shrewd	adj. 精明的
●eccentricity	n. 怪癖
●legendary	adj. 传奇般的
●snob	n. 谄上欺下的人
●intensely	adv. 强烈地
●bedraggled	adj. 拖泥带水的
●dump	v. 把.....砰的一声抛下
●apologetic	adj. 道歉的
●reprimand	v. 训斥
●stage	v. 暗中策划
●elaborate	adj. 精心构思的

■lovable adj. 可爱的

lovable == worthy of love

lovely = beautiful 可爱的

lovable 惹人爱

Eg: What he does is lovable.

I like the lovely boy/girl.

A large number of eccentrics are lovable.
许多怪人惹人喜爱。

■eccentric n. (行为) 古怪的人

eccentric: a person whose behaviour is peculiar, unusual, rather strange.

eccentric: adj. peculiar, unusual; strange

strange 因为陌生而奇怪

Eg.: The modern building looks strange to the villages.

eccentric 行为举止古怪

Eg.: I can't get on well with him, because he is eccentric.

odd 强调因为少见而多怪

Eg.: Look, he is wearing an odd hat.

peculiar 奇异的, 不同寻常的

The house is peculiar.

I feel peculiar today. == I feel uncomfortable / ill. == I'm not myself today.

eccentricity n. 怪癖

■disregard v. 不顾, 漠视

disregard: ignore; pay no attention to

Disregard noise and keep working

disregard n.

have disregard of / for

He has complete disregard of / for my feelings.

in disregard of

He did the work in disregard of my instructions.

treat sb. with disregard 怠慢某人

Anyway, don't treat your friends with disregard.

■convention n. 习俗, 风俗

convention: generally accepted practice.

Shaking hands when meeting people is normal convention in China.

custom 历史悠久的社会习俗

It's a custom of giving presents at Christmas.

He always does exactly what he wants and does not care about convention.

practice 某团体的传统做法或令他人无法接受的习俗

Eg.: The normal practice in the company is to send bill as soon as the job is done.

Your stomach would turn at the idea of frying potatoes in animal fat--the normally accepted practice in many northern countries.(三册 L23)

tradition 传统

Spending Christmas Day is a tradition for western people.

habit 个人习惯

I have a habit of reading English aloud in the morning.

■conscious adj. 感觉到的, 意识到的

conscious == aware

be conscious of / that

be aware of / that

He is quite unaware of the danger.

He is not conscious of the danger.

class conscious 有阶级意识的

family conscious 有家庭观念的

clothes conscious 注重衣着的

stairs conscious 注重地位的

aware, conscious 的反义词直接加 un-

unaware, unconscious

subconscious 下意识的

consciousness n.

■invariably adv. 总是, 经常地

■routine n. 常规; 惯例

routine: the regular fixed way of sth. / doing things

follow the routine 墨守常规

break the routine 打破常规

start the daily routine 开始每天的日常生活

■shrewd adj. 精明的

shrewed: showing good practical judgement
精明的, 狡猾的, 敏锐的, 机灵的
He is a shrewed observer.
We have got shrewed common sense.
Sb. is shrewed. == He has good judgement.
shrewed brained
shrewed headed 头脑机灵的
shrewed looking 看起来机灵的

L31-02 end 11'26"

L31-03 begin 11'00"

cunning: clever at deceiving 善于欺骗的
sly 用更隐秘的办法来达到目的
a sly old fox

■eccentricity n. 怪僻

■legendary adj. 传奇般的

■snob n. 谄上欺下的人

■intensely adv. 强烈地

intense adj. very strong ; violent; extreme;
sharp; etc.

intense cold 严寒

intense heat 酷暑

intense discussion 激烈的讨论

intensify vt. 使增强

You must intensify your sense of
responsibility. 你必须加强责任感。

intensity n.

Losing jobs are growing in intensity.

sth are growing in intensity …… (某种程度) 在
加强

Eg: Losing jobs are growing in intensity.

■bedraggled adj 拖泥带水的

■dump v. 把……砰的一声抛下

■reprimand v. 训斥

reprimand: scold officially and severely
blame 责备(语气程度很弱)

Eg.: The teacher blamed him for his coming
late.

scold 斥责(语气稍重一点)

Don't scold me for a trifle.

reproach 斥责(语气最严重)

He often reproached his children.

reprimand: scold officially and severely

The boss reprimanded his employees
severely.

■apologetic adj. 道歉的

apologize v.

He apologized to his boss.

The boss apologized to his employees.

He was apologetic. 他致以歉意

apology n. 歉意

make apology to sb. for sth.

■stage v. 暗中策划

He stage a joke.

■elaborate adj. 精心构思的

elaborate == carefully worked out

an elaborate design 精心的设计

elaborate vt.

He elaborated a system of computer.

【Text】

Lesson 31 A lovable eccentric 可爱的怪人

Listen to the tape
then answer the
question below.

**Why did the shop
assistant refuse to
serve Dickie?**

True eccentrics
never deliberately
set out to draw
attention to
themselves. They disregard social
conventions without being conscious that
they are doing anything extraordinary. This
invariably wins them the love and respect of
others, for they add colour to the dull routine
of everyday life.

Up to the time of his death, Richard
Colson was one of the most notable figures in
our town. He was a shrewd and wealthy
businessman, but most people in the town
hardly knew anything about this side of his
life. He was known to us all as Dickie and his
eccentricity had become legendary long
before he died.

Dickie disliked snobs intensely. Though
he owned a large car, he hardly ever used it,
preferring always to go on foot. Even when it
was raining heavily, he refused to carry an
umbrella. One day, he walked into an
expensive shop after having been caught in a
particularly heavy shower. He wanted to buy
a £ 300 watch for his wife, but he was in
such a bedraggled condition that an
assistant refused to serve him. Dickie left
the shop without a word and returned
carrying a large cloth bag. As it was
extremely heavy, he dumped it on the
counter. The assistant asked him to leave,
but Dickie paid no attention to him and
requested to see the manager. Recognizing
who the customer was, the manager was
most apologetic and 'reprimanded the assis-
tant severely. When Dickie was given the

watch, he presented the assistant with the cloth bag. It contained £ 300 in pennies. He insisted on the assistant's counting the money before he left---- 30,000 pennies in all! On another occasion, he invited a number of important critics to see his private collection of modern paintings. This exhibition received a great deal of attention in the press, for though the pictures were supposed to be the work of famous artists, they had in fact been painted by Dickie. It took him four years to stage this elaborate joke simply to prove that critics do not always know what they are talking about.

参考译文

真正古怪的人从不有意引人注意。他们不顾社会习俗，意识不到自己所作所为有什么特殊之处。他们总能赢得别人的喜爱与尊敬，因为他们给平淡单一的日常生活增添了色彩。

理查德·科尔森生前是我们镇上最有名望的人之一。他是个精明能干、有钱的商人，但镇上大部分人对他的生活中的这一个方面几乎一无所知。大家都管他叫迪基。早在他去世前很久，他的古怪行为就成了传奇故事了。

迪基痛恨势利小人。尽管他有一辆豪华小轿车，但却很少使用，常常喜欢以步代车。即使大雨倾盆，他也总是拒绝带伞。一天，他遇上一场瓢泼大雨，淋得透湿。他走进一家高级商店，要为妻子买一块价值300英镑的手表。但店员见他浑身泥水的样子，竟不肯接待他。迪基二话没说就走了。一会儿，他带着一个大布口袋回到店里。布袋很沉，他重重地把布袋扔在柜台上。店员让迪基走开，他置之不理，并要求见经理。经理认出了这位顾客，表示了深深的歉意，还严厉地训斥了店员。店员为迪基拿出了那块手表，迪基把布口袋递给他，口袋里面装着300英镑的便士。他坚持要店员点清那些硬币后他才离去。这些硬币加在一起共有30,000枚！还有一次，他邀请一些著名评论家来参观他私人收藏的现代画。这次展览引起报界广泛注意，因为这些画名义上是名家的作品，事实上是迪基自己画的。他花了4年时间策划这出精心设计的闹剧，只是想证明评论家们有时并不解他们所谈论的事情。

【课文讲解】

deliberately: on purpose

set out to do = set about doing = start doing / to do sth.

draw attention to 吸引对……的注意

capture/attract/hold/catch/arrest/receive/draw attention to 吸引对……的注意力

He made a mistake without being conscious of the fact

invariably = always

Her fine character quickly won her the

friendship of her colleagues

win sb sth 为某人赢得……

add colour to 增添色彩

Eccentrics add colour to our dull life.

背诵第一自然段。

up to the time of his death: before he died.

完成时

notable: famous

this side of his life 生活的这一面

L31-03 end 11'00"

L31-04 begin 11'10"

Dickie disliked snobs intensely / violently preferring 现在分词做伴随状况状语

be caught in a heavy shower 遇到瓢泼大雨

be caught in a heavy snow 遇到大雪

be caught in a heavy storm 遇到风暴

pay no attention to sb = ignore sb = take no notice of sb = turn a deaf ear to sb 对……不予理睬

Dickie took no notice of him

dickie turned a deaf ear to him.

refuse to listen to

request 求见（非常正式而有礼貌的用词，语气相当强烈，假如你 request 某件东西的话，通常你有权利得到你想要的。）

I requested the headmaster.

Every student can request assistance of their teachers.'

demand 在语气上还要强烈，假如你 demand 某件东西的话，你坚决认为你有权利得到你想要的，且不愿意接受否定的回答。

I demand my rights. 我要求我的权力。

ask 口头或写信介到某物

I asked to get the book.

he asked me for help.

realizing or recognizing 在这里现在分词做原因状语

most = very much

present sb. with sth. or present sth. to sb. 把……交给

insist on doing / insist that

He insisted that the shop assistant should count the money before he left.

背诵: **receive a great deal of attention in the press** 引起了报界广泛注意

simply to prove = only to prove

talk nonsense 胡说八道
talk sense 说正经话
背诵第三段及关键句型

L31-04 end 11'10"

L31-05 begin 10'56"

【Multiple choice questions】P148 Comprehension

1 Most people in the town would have regarded Dickie's behaviour as eccentric on the day he visited the shop because _____.
a. when he set out into the rain he did not take an umbrella
b. he went to such lengths to show his dislike of snobbery
c. he spent so much money on a watch
d. he had not counted the pennies before giving them to the assistant
go to lengths 竭尽全力

2 When Dickie went into an expensive shop _____.
a. he wanted to shelter from the rain
b. he did not look like a man who could afford a watch
c. he had forgotten to bring his cloth bag with him
d. he had been sent by his wife to buy a watch

3 The press paid a great deal of attention to Dickie's exhibition because _____.
a. it had taken him so long to prepare the paintings
b. the critics admired Dickie's ability to copy the work of famous artists
c. no one had known that Dickie was a painter
d. it became known that Dickie had succeeded in deceiving the critics

Structure

4 They disregard social conventions and require unaware _____ they are doing anything extraordinary. (ll.2-3)
a. that what b. of the fact that c. if
d. when
(of the fact 可省略)

L31-05_32-01 5'43" [Lesson 32 36:52]

§ Lesson 32 A lost ship 一艘沉船

【New words and expressions】生词和短语
●salvage v. 救助, 营救; 打捞

5 As it _____, he dumped it on the counter. (ll.14-15)
a. was weighing b. weighed a lot c. weighed much
d. had weighed much
much 多用于疑问句或否定句中, 而肯定句中多用 a lot; a great deal
Eg.: He knows a lot about it.
He doesn't know much about it.
Does he know much about it?

6 _____ £300 worth of pennies in the bag. (ll.17-18)
a. There were b. It was c. They were
d. It had

7 He insisted _____ the money before he left. (l.18)
a. that the assistant should count b. the assistant to count
c. to count d. to be counted

8 He asked a number of important critics to come _____ his private... (ll.19-20)
a. and see b. seeing c. see d. so they saw

Vocabulary

9 ----and returned carrying a large _____. (l.14)
a. cloth case b. clothes-basket c. sack of clothing
d. bag made of cloth

10 But Dickie paid no attention to his _____... (l.15)
a. question b. inquiry c. query d. demand

11 The pictures were supposed to have been _____ by famous artists. (ll.20-21)
a. worked b. made c. done d. designed

12 Critics do not always _____. (ll.22)
a. mean well b. speak with understanding
c. tell the truth d. talk sense
talk nonsense 胡说

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. B 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. A
8. A 9. D 10. D 11. C 12. D

L31-05 5'10" [Lesson 31 41:04]

●Barents n. 巴伦支(海)
●sunken adj. 沉没的
●cargo n. 货物
●bullion n. 金条; 银条
●scour v. 彻底搜索

●chest	n. 大箱子
●contents	n. (复数) 所装的东西
●belongings	n. (复数) 所有物
●item	n. 物件
●cruiser	n. 巡洋舰
●find	n. 找到的物品
●log book	航海日志
●piece	v. 拼成整体
●convoy	n. 护航
●torpedo	v. 用鱼雷攻击
●submarine	n. 潜水艇
●naval	adj. 海军的
●ministry	n. (政府的) 部

■salvage v. 救助, 营救; 打捞
salvage goods from the fire
salvage the patient
salvage your time 节省时间
salvage archaeology 抢救性考古
salvage boat 救助船
salvage money 救助费, 打捞费

■Barents n. 巴伦支 (海)

■sunken adj. 沉没的

■cargo n. 货物

cargo: the goods carried by ship; plane or vehicle

Eg.: The ship has a cargo of 1,000 tons

cargo vessel

goods: the goods carried by plane or train 也可以做形容词, 只能表示铁路运输, 常指商店里的商品。

Eg.: Trains are used to carry goods and passengers.

A goods train

■bullion n. 金条; 银条

■scour v. 彻底搜索

go through

The house has been searched / scoured for the hidden bullion.

scour / search / hunt (都可与 for 搭配, 表示目的)

search 指寻找丢失的东西或被认为是存在的东西, 比 look for 更正式

hunt 指漫无边际的寻找急需的东西

scour 表示彻底地搜查一个特定范围并暗示花费更大的力气

Eg.: I have been searching everywhere, but I can't find the key.

We spent a week hunting for the puma.

L31-04_32-01 end 10'56"

L32-02 begin 10'13"

They scoured the woods for the child.

scour / search / hunt (都可与 for 搭配, 表示目的)

■chest n. 大箱子

chest: a large strong box in which valuable objects are kept

case 衣箱 (总称)

suitcase 手提箱

safe 保险箱

trunk 汽车尾箱

dustbin 垃圾箱

■contents n. (复数) 所装的东西

■belongings n. (复数) 所有物

■item n. 物件

■cruiser n. 巡洋舰

■find n. 找到的物品

find: Something good or valuable

Eg.: the little restaurant is quite a find.

The garden is a good find.

■log book 航海日志

■piece v. 拼成整体

part / a piece of cake / a piece of news

piece: put parts together to form a whole

piece together 拼凑

Eg.: They piece the log book together.

piece up 修补, 拼合

Please piece up the dress.

piece a quilt

■convoy n. 护航

in convoy 护航

under convoy: 被护航

■torpedo v. 用鱼雷攻击

■submarine n. 潜水艇

前缀 sub-

1. 下

subway 地铁

substructure 下层建筑

subsoil 下层土

subnormal 低于正常的

2. 次; 准; 亚

subtropics

subcollege

subcontinent

3. 副; 分支; 下级; 下属

subeditor 副编辑

subagent 副代理人

subhead 副标题

suboffice 分办事处

4. 接近的

subadult 接近成人的

subteen 将近十三岁的

subequal 接近相等的

5. 再

subdivided 再分

sublet 转租

subculture 再培养

■naval adj. 海军的

navy 海军

naval port 军港

naval power 制海权

voyage 海上航行

navigation 航海术

navigate v. 航海, 航行

■ministry n. (政府的) 部

【Text】

Lesson 32 A lost ship 一艘沉船

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

Did the crew of the Elkor find what they were looking for? Why?

5 The salvage operation had been a complete failure. The small ship, *Elkor*, which had been searching the Barents Sea for weeks, was on its way home. A radio message from the mainland had been received by the ship's captain instructing him to give up the search. The captain knew that another attempt would be made later, for the sunken ship he was trying to find had been carrying a precious cargo of gold bullion.

10 Despite the message, the captain of the *Elkor* decided to try once more. The sea bed was scoured with powerful nets and there was tremendous excitement on board when a chest was raised from the bottom. Though the crew were at first under the impression that the lost ship had been found, the contents of the chest proved them wrong. What they had in fact found was a ship which had been sunk many years before.

20 The chest contained the personal belongings of a seaman, Alan Fielding. There were books, clothing and photographs, together with letters which the seaman had once received from his wife. The captain of the *Elkor* ordered his men to salvage as much as possible from the wreck. Nothing of value was found, but the numerous items which were brought to the surface proved to be of great interest. From a heavy gun that was raised, the captain realized that the ship must have been a cruiser. In another chest, which contained the belongings of a ship's officer, there was an unfinished letter which had been written

on March 14th, 1943. The captain learnt from the letter that the name of the lost ship was the *Karen*. The most valuable find of all was the ship's log book, parts of which it was still possible to read. From this the captain was able to piece together all the information that had come to light. The *Karen* had been sailing in a convoy to Russia when she was torpedoed by an enemy submarine. This was later confirmed by a naval official at the Ministry of Defence after the *Elkor* had returned home. All the items that were found were sent to the War Museum.

参考译文

打
工 作 彻
失败 了。
船“埃 尔
号 在 巴
支 海 搜
了 几 个
期 之 后,
正 在 返
航 途 中。
返 航 前,
该 船 船 长 收 到 了 大 陆 发 来 的 电 报, 指 示 他 们 放 弃 这 次 搜 寻。船 长 知 道 日 后 还 会 再 作 尝 试, 因 为 他 试 图 寻 找 的 沉 船 上 载 有 一 批 珍 贵 的 金 条。

尽管船长接了电报,他还是决定再试一试。他们用结实的网把海床搜索了一遍。当一只箱子从海底被打捞上来时,甲板上人们激动不已。船员们开始认为沉船找着了,但海底沉箱内的物品证明他们弄错了。事实上,他们发现的是另一艘沉没多年的船。

本箱内装有水手艾伦·菲尔丁的私人财物,其中有书籍、衣服、照片以及水手收到的妻子的来信。“埃 尔 科”号 船 长 命 令 船 员 们 尽 量 从 沉 船 中 打 捞 物 品, 但 没 发 现 什 么 值 钱 的 东 西, 不 过 打 捞 出 来 的 众 多 的 物 品 还 是 引 起 了 大 家 极 大 的 兴 趣。从 捞 起 的 一 门 大 炮 来 看, 船 长 认 为 那 艘 船 一 定 是 艘 巡 洋 舰。另 一 只 海 底 沉 箱 中 装 的 是 船 上 一 位 军 官 的 财 物, 其 中 有 一 封 写 于 1943 年 3 月 14 日 的 信, 但 没 有 写 完。从 这 封 信 中 船 长 了 解 到 沉 船 船 名 是 “卡 伦”号。打 捞 到 的 东 西 中 最 有 价 值 的 是 船 上 的 航 海 日 志, 其 中 有 一 部 分 仍 然 清 晰 可 读。据 此, 船 长 可 以 将 所 有 的 那 些 已 经 搞 清 的 材 料 拼 凑 起 来。“卡 伦”号 当 年 在 为 其 他 船 只 护 航 驶 往 俄 国 的 途 中 突 然 遭 到 敌 方 潜 水 艇 鱼 雷 的 袭 击。这 一 说 法 在 “埃 尔 科”号 返 航 后 得 到 的 国 防 部 一 位 海 军 官 员 的 证 实。那 次 打 捞 到 的 所 有 物 品 均 被 送 往 军 事 博 物 馆。

【课文讲解】

背熟: **The salvage operation had been a complete failure.**

My examination is a complete failure. 这次考

捞
底
小
科
”
伦
寻
星

试完全失败了。

Their experiment had been a complete failure.

背熟: **A radio message from the mainland had been received by the ship's captain instructing him to give up the search.**

The ship's captain received a radio message from the mainland instructing him to give up the search.

instruct sb. to do sth. 命令某人做某事

The editor sent a fax to the journalist instructing him to get statistics.

make another attempt

L32-02 end 10'13"

L32-03 begin 9'56"

despite == in spite of

try once more 代替了 make another attempt

There is tremendous excitement 书面语

People on board felt excited. (口语)

There was tremendous excitement before the game.

under the impression that == thinking that

I am under the impression that he is the manager of the store.

He is under the impression that you'll help him.

sunken / sunk

需定语时用 sunken

The ship had sunk

a sunken ship

personal belongings 个人所属物品

together with 还有

salvage as much as possible / salvage as much as they could

of value == valuable

very much interesting == of great interest

of great importance / of great significance /

of no consequence / of no importance / of no interest

numerous == countless

There were the belongings of ship officer in the chest.

learn from 从.....得知

L32-03 end 9'56"

L32-04 begin

parts of the log book it was still possible to

read.

It was still possible to read parts of the log book.

come to light = become known = emerge 被公开, 被发现 (不及物动词短语, 要用主动语态)

Eg: The secret came to light after his death.

bring sth to light / review 把.....公布于众

Eg: The two brothers reviewed / brought the secret to light

in a convoy 护航

under a convoy 被护航

confirmed == made sure

背熟第一自然段, 牢记并熟练运用第二、三自然段的重点结构。

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 Why had the salvage operation been a complete failure?

a. They had failed to locate the ship they had been sent to look for.

b. They had not succeeded in finding the Barents Sea.

c. They had found the wrong ship.

d. The captain had not understood his instructions.

2 In ordering as much as possible to be salvaged from the wreck, the captain _____. .

a. expected to find some of the gold bullion

b. hoped, among other things, to establish the identity of the ship

c. thought he would find out that the ship had been a cruiser

d. was looking for more information concerning the dead seaman

3 The log book was the most important find because it _____. .

a. helped to explain how the warship had come to be sunk in the Barents Sea

b. contained a written account of how the Karen had been torpedoed

c. provided vital information as to the ship's whereabouts

d. gave the Ministry of Defence information it had known nothing about

Structure

4 The captain knew that _____ the only attempt. (1.5)

a. it was not

b. his had not been

c. his

would not be

d. it had not been

5 It was a ship which had been sunk many years before _____ in fact found. (I.11)
a. what they had b. that they had c. had been d. which was

6 They did not find _____. (I.14)
a. nothing of value b. a valuable thing
c. any value d. anything valuable

7 ---- parts of which _____. (I.19)
a. it could still be read b. it could still read
c. could still be read d. could still read

8 After the *Elkor* had returned home, a naval official _____. (II.21-22)
a. had this later confirmed at the Ministry of Defence
b. confirmed this at the Ministry of Defence
c. at the Ministry of Defence confirmed this
d. later at the Ministry of Defence confirmed this

Vocabulary

9 The ship's captain had received instructions to give up the search _____ a radio message from the mainland. (II.3-4)
a. on b. by c. with d. in
in the letter / in the radio message / in the

L33-01 begin 10'19" [Lesson 32 49:04]

§ Lesson 33 A day to remember 难忘的 一天

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- prelude n. 序幕, 前奏
- unforeseen adj. 意料之外的
- series n. 系列
- catastrophe n. 大祸, 灾难
- crockery n. 陶器, 瓦器
- suburb n. 郊区
- collide v. 猛撞
- learner n. 初学者
- panic n. 惊慌, 恐慌
- windscreen n. (汽车的) 挡风玻璃
- alongside prep. 在.....的旁边, 与.....并排
- slide v. 滑
- stray adj. 离群的
- confusion n. 混乱
- greedily adv. 贪婪地
- devour v. 狼吞虎咽地吃

■prelude n. 序幕, 前奏
a prelude to sth的前奏
Eg: a prelude to serious trouble 麻烦的前奏
introduction 导言, 绪论
introduction to the book
preface 序, 前言

fax

10 There were books, clothing and photographs, _____ letters ... (II.12-13)
a. including b. along with c. added to
d. beside

11---- an unfinished letter which was _____ March 14th, 1943. (I.17)
a. inscribed b. marked c. dated d. posted on
inscribe 刻画
mark 做标记

12 ---- all the information that had _____. (I.20)
a. emerged b. alighted c. arisen d. surfaced
arisen (原形是 arise) 出现
surface 露出水面
alight on 偶然发现
My eyes alighted on the book.

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. C 8. C 9. D 10. B 11. C 12. A

L32-04 end 11'01" [Lesson 32 36:52]

foreword 序

■unforeseen adj. 意料之外的
foresee == see before hand
I foresee a bright future for you.
foreseeable 可预见的
foreseeing 预料之中的
unforeseeing 意料之外的
foretell 预言, 主语可以是人或物
predict 预言, 预示(语气较强), 主语必须是人
Eg: He predicted that it would happen in ten years.
forecast : 预测, 预报(主要指天气的预报)
Eg: Timely snow foretells a bumper harvest.
瑞雪照丰年

■series n. 系列
series 单复数形式同形
a series of
We've got a series of good harvest.
chain 连串, 连锁
a chain of 一系列
a series of reaction 一系列反应
a chain of reaction 一系列反应
chain store 连锁店,
chain reaction 连锁反应
chain smoker 吸烟很严重的人
succession 侧重时间上的连续

a succession of failures 一系列的失败
Eg.: We've got a succession of successes.
string 连续不断相似的事件
Eg.: a string of cars 一连串的汽车
train 一个接一个发生的事
a train of thoughts/ ideas 一个个的想法

■catastrophe n. 大祸, 灾难
worldwide catastrophe 世界范围的灾难
national catastrophe 波及全国的灾难
disaster 灾难, 不幸(语气较弱)
calamity 灾害, 不幸事件
nature calamity 自然灾害

■crockery n. 陶器, 瓦器
■suburb n. 郊区
■collide v. 猛撞
■learner n. 初学者
■panic n. 惊慌, 恐慌
panic : uncontrollable quickly spreading fear
or terror
get into a panic 陷入惊慌之中
He suddenly got into a panic and stop his car.
be struck with panic== be seized with panic
惊慌失措
He was seized with panic.
terror 惊骇
horror 恐惧
fright 害怕
alarm 惊恐
■windscreen n. (汽车的)挡风玻璃
■alongside prep. 在.....的旁边, 与.....并排
■slide v. 滑
■stray adj. 迷失的, 离群的
The dog strayed from home.

■confusion n. 混乱
condition out of order
in order 秩序井然
out of order 混乱

L33-01 end 10'19"

L33-02 begin 10'10"

in confusion 乱七八糟
be covered with confusion 局促不安
throw sb into confusion 使某人惊慌失措

■greedily adv. 贪婪地
■devour v. 狼吞虎咽地吃
devour:
1. eat like an animal
The dog devoured the cake
2. destroy 吞灭, 席卷
The flames devoured the whole building
3. take in eagerly with eyes, ears, or mind

贪婪地看
His eyes devoured the scene. 他两眼贪婪地看着。

【Text】整篇背诵

§ Lesson 33 A day to remember 难忘的一天

Listen to the tape
then answer the
question below.

**What incident
began the series
of traffic accidents?**

We have all
experienced days
when everything
goes wrong. A day
may begin well enough, but suddenly
everything seems to get out of control.
What invariably happens is that a great
number of things choose to go wrong at
precisely the same moment. It is as if a
single unimportant event set up a chain of
reactions. Let us suppose that you are
preparing a meal and keeping an eye on the
baby at the same time. The telephone rings
and this marks the prelude to an unforeseen
series of catastrophes. While you are on the
phone, the baby pulls the tablecloth off the
table smashing half your best crockery and
cutting himself in the process. You hang up
hurriedly and attend to baby, crockery, etc.
Meanwhile, the meal gets burnt. As if this
were not enough to reduce you to tears,
your husband arrives, unexpectedly bringing
three guests to dinner.

Things can go wrong on a big scale as a
number of people recently discovered in
Parramatta, a suburb of Sydney. During the
rush hour one evening two cars collided and
both drivers began to argue. The woman
immediately behind the two cars happened to
be a learner. She suddenly got into a panic
and stopped her car. This made the driver
following her brake hard. His wife was sitting
beside him holding a large cake. As she was
thrown forward, the cake went right through
the windscreen and landed on the road.
Seeing a cake flying through the air, a lorry
driver who was drawing up alongside the car,
pulled up all of a sudden. The lorry was
loaded with empty beer bottles and
hundreds of them slid off the back of the
vehicle and on to the road. This led to yet
another angry argument. Meanwhile, the
traffic piled up behind. It took the police
nearly an hour to get the traffic on the move

again. In the meantime, the lorry driver had to sweep up hundreds of broken bottles. Only two stray dogs benefited from all this confusion, for they greedily devoured what was left of the cake. It was just one of those days!

参考译文

我们大家都有过事事不顺心的日子。一天开始时，可能还不错，但突然间似乎一切都失去了控制。情况经常是这样的，许许多多的事情都偏偏赶在同一时刻出问题，好像是一件无关紧要的小事引起了一连串的连锁反应。假设你在做饭，同时又在照看孩子。这时电话铃响了。它预示着一连串意想不到的灾难的来临。就在你接电话时，孩子把桌布从桌子上扯下来，将家中最好的陶瓷餐具半数摔碎，同时也弄伤了他自己。你急急忙忙挂上电话，赶去照看孩子和餐具。这时，饭又烧糊了。好像这一切还不足以使你急得掉泪，你的丈夫接着回来了，事先没打招呼就带来3个客人吃饭。

就像许多人最近在悉尼郊区帕拉马塔发现的那样，有时乱子会闹得很大。一天傍晚交通最拥挤时，一辆汽车撞上前面一辆汽车，两个司机争吵起来。紧跟其后的一辆车上的司机碰巧是个初学者，她一惊之下突然把车停了下来。她这一停使得跟在后头的司机也来个急刹车。司机妻子正坐在他身边，手里托着块大蛋糕。她往前一冲，蛋糕从挡风玻璃飞了出去掉到马路上。此时，一辆卡车正好从后边开到那辆汽车边上，司机看见一块蛋糕从天而降，紧急刹车。卡车上装着空啤酒瓶。成百只瓶子顺势从卡车后面滑出车外落在马路上。这又引起一场唇枪舌剑的争吵。与此同时，后面的车辆排成了长龙，警察花了将近一个小时才使车辆又开起来。在这段时间里，卡车司机不得不清扫那几百只破瓶子。只有两只野狗从这一片混乱中得到好处，它们贪婪地吃掉了剩下的蛋糕。这就是事事不顺心的那么一天！

【课文讲解】

Every dog has its day 每个人都会有飞黄腾达的日子

get out of control 失控

uncontrollable, beyond control

invariably: always

What happened yesterday was that he couldn't deal with the hot potato.

precisely: exactly

It is as if

It seems as if

It looks as if

似乎好象看起来

set up = cause 引起，导致，造成

What set up the accident?

set up a world record 创世界纪录

set up = creat 创立，建立

The unimportant event is the prelude to trouble. 不重要的事情是麻烦事的前奏。

keep an eye on the baby 照料孩子

keep an eye on = look after = take care of

Please keep an eye on my house while I am out.

keep one's eyes open 睁大眼睛

When I am out, please keep your eyes open.

have an eye to

eye for eye 以牙还牙

have eyes only for 只要，只爱

Eg: I have eyes only for you.

look sb in the eyes 两眼直视某人

eye to eye with sb 与某人看法完全一样

Eg: I invariably see eye to eye with my sister.

turn a blind eye to sth. 对……视而不见

Eg: He even turned blind eye to me.

make eyes at sb 含情脉脉地看着某人

Eg: The boy is making eyes at his girlfriend.

L33-02 end 10'10"

L33-03 begin 10'05"

on the phone = answer the phone

pull off 拉下来

pick off 取下来

knock off 碰落下来

smash half 摔成两半

in the process 在这个过程中

hang up == put on the receiver

attend to == look after == deal with

Please attend to my baby.

Excuse me, I have something urgent to attend to.

reduce you to tears.

reduce sb to + 名词: 迫使某人处于……状态

Eg: You almost reduce me to tears.

His comforting words almost reduced his wife to tears.

His answer reduced me to silence.

The bomb reduced the city to ruins.

we can draw a conclusion.

Everything seems to get out of control suddenly and a great number of things choose to go wrong at precisely the same moment.

on a big scale == to a great degree == to great extent

as 引导非限制性定语从句（二册已详细说过）

Troubles never come single 祸不单行

as we know 众所周知

As we know, the earth is round.

As brane pointed out, giving up smoking is the easiest thing to do in the world.

As the headmaster mentioned, one is never too old to learn.

as 重点突出整个句子的含义，而 which 有可能指代主句当中的某个词汇，也有可能指代整个句子的含义。

As we expected, John was admitted to the university.

She married him, which was unexpected.

She married him as (was) unexpected.

L33-03 end 10'05"

L33-04 begin 10'32"

The material is elastic as shown in the figure.
The material is elactic which is shown in the figure.

during the rush hour 上下班高峰期

It happened that the woman behind the two cars was a learner.

happen to do 恰巧

I happened to hear the news.

It happened that I heard about it the day before yesterday.

following 现在分词做定语

right ==straight

draw up ==pull up 停车

all of sudden ==suddenly

was loaned with == was filled with

lead to == cause

meanwhile == at the same time 与此同时

get the traffic on the move 使得车辆开动起来

on the move == move from place to place

on the rise 正在上升

on the boil 正在沸腾

on the go 正在忙碌中

on the watch 正在监视

on the turn 正在转变中

on thw run 正在逃跑中

on thw fly 正在飞行中

on the decrease 正在减少

benefit from 从.....得益

You benefit a lot from your reading.

L33-04 end 10'32"

L33-05 begin 14'08"

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 What would have most upset the woman the day everything went wrong for her?

- a. She had not expected her husband to arrive so early.
- b. The meal she had cooked for the three guests had got burnt.
- c. Her husband had not told her he was bringing anyone to dinner.
- d. She had not got enough crockery left to serve the meal with.

2 What might have prevented a chain reaction following the initial collision?

- a. If the two drivers who had collided had not begun to argue.
- b. Had there been a more experienced driver behind the two cars.
- c. If, instead of panicking, the woman had made no attempt to stop.
- d. Had the wife of the man who braked not thrown a cake through the window.

3 There was a second angry argument because _____ .

- a. the lorry driver blamed the owner of the cake for his accident
- b. the traffic was extremely slow to get on the move again
- c. the lorry driver did not think he shouldbe made to sweep up the glass
- d. two dogs had devoured what was left of the cake

Structure

4 It is as if a single event that is _____ a chain of reactions. (II.4-5)

- a. no importance set up
 - b. of no imortance set up
 - c. not any important sets up
 - d. not any importance sets up
- that is ...是定语从句修饰 event
a single unimportant event

5 ---- you are preparing a meal _____ keeping an eye on the baby. (II.6-7)

- a. at the same time
- b. as you are
- c. as well
- d. while

6 As if this _____ you to tears ...(I.10)

- a. has not already reduced
- b. were not already reducing
- c. did not already reduce
- d. would not already reduce

7 Immediately behind the two cars _____ happened to be a learner. (II.13-14)

- a. was a woman who
- b. a woman
- c.

the woman d. there was the woman who

8 The police spent nearly an hour _____ the traffic on the move again. (II.19-20)
a. to get b. until getting c. getting
d. having got
spend (time) doing sth.

vocabulary

9 You are preparing a meal and _____ the baby at the same time. (II.6-7)
a. looking at b. seeing c. watching
d. seeing to

10 She stopped her car _____ a sudden panic. (I.14)
a. into b. in c. from d. with
in panic / in terror / in fear / in horror

11 Hundreds of them _____ the back of the
(L33-05_34-01 begin 5'58")
[Lesson 34 56:42]

§ Lesson 34 A happy discovery 幸运的发现

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| ●antique | n. 古玩 |
| ●fascination | n. 魅力, 迷惑力 |
| ●forbidding | adj. 望而生畏的, 望而却步的 |
| ●muster | v. 鼓起 |
| ●pretentious | adj. 自命不凡的, 矫饰的 |
| ●labyrinth | n. 迷宫 |
| ●musty | adj. 陈腐的, 发霉的 |
| ●rarity | n. 稀世珍品 |
| ●assorted | adj. 各式各样的 |
| ●junk | n. 破料货, 废品 |
| ●litter | v. 杂乱地布满 |
| ●dedicated | adj. 专心致志的 |
| ●bargain hunter | 到处找便宜货买的人 |
| ●dealer | v. 商人 |
| ●cherish | v. 期望, 渴望 |
| ●amply | adv. 足够地 |
| ●masterpiece | n. 杰作 |
| ●mere | adj. 仅仅的 |
| ●prise | v. 撬开 |
| ●carve | v. 镌刻 |
| ●dagger | n. 短剑, 匕首 |
| ●miniature | adj. 小巧的, 小型的 |
| ●Composition | n. 构图 |

■antique n. 古玩

■fascination n. 魅力, 迷惑力

the power of fascinating

for / over / on

Cats have unfailing fascination for most people

Chinese Art has great fascination for me
have fascination for sb.

vehicle ... (II.18-19)

a. slipped off b. slid down c. slid over
d. slipped under
slid over 躲过
He slid over the question without answering it.

12 They greedily devoured the _____ of the cake. (II.21-22)

a. left b. leave c. leftover d. remains
leftovers 吃剩的东西 (常用复数形式)
The leftovers of the meal were fed to the dog.

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. A 7. A
8. C 9. C 10. B 11. A 12. D

L33-05 8'06"

[Lesson 32 49:04]

fascinate

fascinate: attract or interest very strongly

Cats never fail to fascinate human being.

English never fail to fascinate students.

fascinated by / with sth.

He is fascinated with chess.

The students were fascinated by his idea.

charm

The beautiful picture charms me.

I am charmed by the beautiful picture.

captivate

His idea captivated me.

enchant 使...迷惑

She was enchanted by the flower you sent her.

fascinate, charm, captivate, enchant 后直接加 ing, 变成形容词

fascinating, charming, captivating,
enchanting 表示 '有吸引力的'

L33-05_34-01 end 14'08"

L34-02 begin 14'21"

She is a charming girl.

Cats are fascinating animals.

The flowers are enchanting.

winning 吸引人的 (主要指物品)

Eg: The beautiful dresses is winning.

■forbidding adj. 望而生畏的, 望而却步的

having a unfriendly or danger look

He has got a forbidding appearance.

We'd better not visit the forbidding coast.

forbid

forbid sb to do sth 禁止做某事

Eg: The father forbid his children to touch

the clavichord.
forbid doing sth 禁止做……事
Smoking is forbidden here.
the Forbidden City
Forbidden fruit
Forbidden zone
forbid, prohibit, interdict
forbid: 政府或私人下令以禁止
Swimming is forbidden here.
prohibit 法律条文或官方明令禁止
The law prohibits young people under 18
from going to bar.
interdict 法律或教会所不允许

■muster v. 鼓起
collect, summon
muster up / collect up / summon up
==gather / pluck up / keep up
He mustered up his courage and walked up
to the girl.

■pretentious adj. 自命不凡的, 矫饰的
We won't like to visit the pretentious shop.
pretend
pretension n. 要求, 虚荣, 虚荣心

■labyrinth n. 迷宫
■musty adj. 陈腐的, 发霉的
■rarity n. 稀世珍品
■assorted adj. 各式各样的
various types mixed together

assorted/ different / various / diverse
different 强调此事物与彼事物完全不同
Eg: The word glare is different from that
word slare.
various = all kinds of 强调种类数目不同
Eg: We have got various books.
in every part / all parts / various parts of
the world
diverse 强调性质不同
We have got diverse opinion.
assorted: various types mixed together. 各
种各样的
assorted chocolates
He bought a bag of assorted fruits.

■junk n. 破料货, 废品
表示“垃圾”的词汇: rubbish / garbage / trash /
junk

■litter v. 杂乱地布满
■dedicated adj. 专心致志的
■bargain hunter 到处找便宜货买的人
■dealer v. 商人
businessman / trader / merchant /
tradesman

dealer "商人"侧重于零售, 相当于 tradesman.
peddler 小贩
■cherish v. 期望, 渴望
entertain or keep hope, love etc. in mind
deeply
Eg: She cherishes the hope that her son will
return.
Don't cherish such illusion
don't cherish such illusion that ... 别抱
有……的幻想
Eg: Don't cherish the illusion that your father
will always pay your debts.

■amply adv. 足够地
ample/enough / sufficient / adequate
enough: 数量, 程度足够 (可放在名词前或后)
ample: 充足而有余的
sufficient 比 enough 正式, 且只能放在名词前面
The bread is just enough for one meal.
He is old enough to go to the party.
We have sufficient food to last one week.
We have enough food / food enough to last
one week.
sufficiently 只放在被修饰词前
old enough / sufficiently old
adequate 数量和质量上的满足
The performance is adequate.
Don't be worried. They have gotten ample
time.
ample / adequate / sufficient / enough
Whatever you do, you must put your heart
into it. And then, someday you will be
rewarded amply.

■masterpiece n. 杰作
■mere adj. 仅仅的
■prise v. 撬开
■carve v. 镌刻
■dagger n. 短剑, 匕首
■miniature adj. 小巧的, 小型的
■Composition n. 构图

【Text】要求全文背诵
§ **Lesson 34 A happy discovery** 幸运的发
现

Listen to the tape
then answer the
question below.

**what was the
'happy discovery'?**

Antique shops exert
a peculiar
fascination on a
great many people.
The more expensive
kind of antique shop where rare objects are

beautifully displayed in glass cases to keep them free from dust is usually a forbidding place. But no one has to muster up courage to enter a less pretentious antique shop. There is always hope that in its labyrinth of musty, dark, disordered rooms a real rarity will be found amongst the piles of assorted junk that litter the floors.

No one discovers a rarity by chance. A truly dedicated bargain hunter must have patience, and above all, the ability to recognize the worth of something when he sees it. To do this, he must be at least as knowledgeable as the dealer. Like a scientist bent on making a discovery, he must cherish the hope that one day he will be amply rewarded.

My old friend, Frank Halliday, is just such a person. He has often described to me how he picked up a masterpiece for a mere £50. One Saturday morning, Frank visited an antique shop in my neighbourhood. As he had never been there before, he found a great deal to interest him. The morning passed rapidly and Frank was about to leave when he noticed a large packing case lying on the floor. The dealer told him that it had just come in, but that he could not be bothered to open it. Frank begged him to do so and the dealer reluctantly prised it open. The contents were disappointing. Apart from an interesting-looking carved dagger, the box was full of crockery, much of it broken. Frank gently lifted the crockery out of the box and suddenly noticed a miniature Painting at the bottom of the packing case. As its composition and line reminded him of an Italian painting he knew well, he decided to buy it. Glancing at it briefly, the dealer told him that it was worth £50. Frank could hardly conceal his excitement, for he knew that he had made a real discovery. The tiny painting proved to be an unknown masterpiece by Correggio and was worth thousands of pounds.

参考译文

古玩店对许多人来说有一种特殊的魅力。高档一点的古玩店为了防尘,把文物漂亮地陈列在玻璃柜子里,那里往往令人望而却步。而对不太装腔作势的古玩店,无论是谁都不用壮着胆子才敢往里进。人们还常常有希望在发霉、阴暗、杂乱无章、迷宫般的店堂里,从杂乱地摆放在地面上的、一堆堆各式各样的破烂货里找到一件稀世珍品。

无论是谁都不会一下子就发现一件珍品。一个到处找便宜的人必须具有耐心,而且最重要的是看到珍品时要有鉴别珍品的能力。要做到这一点,他至少要

像古董商一样懂行。他必须像一个专心致志进行探索的科学家那样抱有这样的希望,即终有一天,他的努力会取得丰硕的成果。

我的老朋友弗兰克·哈利戴正是这样一个人。他多次向我详细讲他如何只花 50 英镑便买到一位名家的杰作。一个星期六的上午,弗兰克去了我家附近的一家古玩店。由于他从未去过那儿,结果他发现许多有趣的东西。上午很快过去了,弗兰克正准备离去,突然看见地板上放着一只体积很大的货箱。古董商告诉他那只货箱刚到不久,但他嫌麻烦不想把它打开。经弗兰克恳求,古董商才勉强把货箱撬开了。箱内东西令人失望。除了一柄样式别致、雕有花纹的匕首外,货箱内装满陶器,而且大部分都已破碎裂。弗兰克轻轻地把陶器拿出箱子,突然发现在箱底有一幅微型画,画面构图与纸条使他想起一幅他所熟悉的意大利画,于是他决定将画买了下来。古董商漫不经心看了一眼那幅画,告诉弗兰克那画值 50 英镑。弗兰克几乎无法掩饰自己兴奋的心情,因为他明白自己发现了一件珍品。那幅不大的画原来是柯勒乔的一幅未被发现的杰作,价值几十万英镑。

【课文讲解】

Antique shops exert a peculiar fascination on a great many people.

L34-02 end 14'21"

L34-03 begin 14'00"

exert a peculiar fascination on sb 对某人有一种特殊的魅力

Antique shops appeal to a great many people. Shoe shops exert a peculiar fascination on a great many ladies.

The more expensive kind of antique shop is usually a forbidding place.

rare objects 珍品

rarity

keep sb. or sth. free from

You can't keep yourselves free from anxieties like tramps.

We put our books in bookcase to keep them free from dust.

The forbidding antique shop is pretentious.

The more expensive kind of clothing shop is usually a forbidding place. But no one has to muster up courage to enter a less pretentious clothing shop.

There is always hope that 人们还常常希望

We cherish the hope that

Pieces of paper litter the floor. / The floor is littered with pieces of paper.

paragraph 1 Key structure

exert a peculiar fascination on sb 对某人有一种特殊的魅力

**keep sb. or sth. free from
muster up courage**

a less pretentious shop

There is always hope that 人们还常常希望

by chance / by accident

dedicated / concentrated

Eg: He is a truly dedicated scholar.

He is a truly dedicated English learner.

above all : most important of all

To do this: in order to discover a rarity

be bent on/ bent upon doing sth/ be determined on doing sth/ be devoted to sth.
/be engaged in doing

潜心于, 专心于.....

Eg: He is bent on winning the game.

He is bent on becoming a bridge player.

L34-03 end 14'00"

L34-04 begin 13'59"

There is always hope that ...

cherish the hope that...

You must cherish the hope that one day you will be amply reward.

Paragraph 2 Key structure

by chance

a truly dedicated person

above all

the ability to do something

as knowledgeable as

bent on doing

cherish the hope that...

Paragraph 3

for 花费

a mere : only

He found a lot of interesting things.

be about to do sth.

be about to when..... 正要.....的时候..... (发生某事)

Eg: I was about to leave when the telephone rang.

He was about to lock door when his friend visited him.

bother: trouble

Don't bother / trouble to come here tomorrow.

I would not like to be bothered / troubled by you every day.

disturb

The news has disturbed me very much

It is disturbing to think that a wild animal is still at large in the quiet countryside.

disturbing / disturbed

trouble 在含义上介于 disturb / bother 之间

apart from 除.....之外, 还有

in addition to

except

Eg: Apart from a slight headache, I feel all right now.

the box was full of crockery, and much of it was broken.

Dish is done, he begged his wife not to sweep the floor.

She ran into the room, her face covered with tears.

He lay in bed, his face exposed.

at the bottom of 在底部

at the top of 在顶部

remind sb. of

conceal one's excitement 掩饰激动心情

make a real discovery

hundreds of thousands of 几十万

Paragraph 3 Key structure

for a mere £50

in my neighbourhood

he found a great deal to interest him

was about to do when

The dealer told him that it had just come in, but that he could not be bothered to open it.

prised it open

Apart from

much of it broken

at the bottom of

reminded sb. of sth.

for he knew that he had made a real discovery

was worth hundreds of thousands of pounds

L34-04 end 13'59"

L 34-05 begin 10'59"

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 When Frank Halliday visited an antique shop in the writer's neighbourhood _____ .

a. it was by no means the first time he had picked up a masterpiece for £50

b. he displayed the kind of perseverance needed to find a rarity
 c. he spent a short time searching in the morning before deciding to leave
 d. he found most of what he looked at rather boring
 displayed the kind of perseverance 展现出坚韧不拔的毅力
 过去分词做定语修饰 perseverance
 perseverance needed to do
 perseverance needed to learn English well
 Our students displayed the kind of perseverance needed to learn English well.

2 How did Frank come to discover the miniature by Correggio?
 a. He was shown it by the dealer who did not realize its worth.
 b. He persuaded the dealer to open the box in which it happened to be.
 c. By concealing his excitement on being told the price wanted for it.
 d. By lifting a box of crockery which had been concealing the painting.
 happen to be 恰巧

3 Frank decided to buy the miniature because _____.
 a. it was an Italian painting he knew well
 b. it only cost £50
 c. he knew he had made a real discovery
 d. it was similar to a painting he knew well

Structure

4 Rare objects are beautifully displayed in glass cases _____ them free from dust. (II.2-4)
 a. which are keeping b. which keep c. who keep d. and kept
 原文: to keep them free from dust
 which 引导定语从句, 限定 glass cases

5 But it is not necessary _____ up courage to enter an ordinary shop. (II.4-5)
 a. for nobody to muster b. to have mustered c. that one musters d. for anyone to muster
 ordinary ==> less pretentious
 it is not necessary ...

6 A bargain hunter must have patience, and above all, _____ recognize the worth of ... (II.8-9)
 a. can b. is able to c. be able to d. (L34-05_35-01 begin 2'22")
 [Lesson 35 42:05]

§ Lesson 35 Justice was done 伸张正义
 【New words and expressions】生词和短语

be capable of
 the ability
 be able to do == have the ability to do
 be capable of + 动名词

7 _____ there, he found a great deal to interest him. (II.13-14)
 a. This being his first visit b. Never having been before
 c. This being his first time to visit d. Having never been before
 he had never been there before ...
 b 选项应为: Never having been there before,
 c 选项: the first time to do sth. 要去做某事

8 The dealer told him it _____ him £50. (II.20-21)
 a. cost b. had cost c. will cost d. would cost
 cost 的相应形式

Vocabulary

9 Frank visited an antique shop _____. (I.13)
 a. next door b. in my county c. near my home d. owned by my neighbour
 in my neighbourhood == near my home

10 Frank was _____ leaving when ... (II.14-15)
 a. almost b. just c. only d. hardly
 just ...when...: 刚.....就; 正在..... 突然

11 A case which needs prising open has probably been _____ ... (II.15-17)
 a. nailed down b. roped c. locked d. unlocked
 nailed down: 用钉子钉住
 rope: 用绳子拴住, 捆住

12 The dealer gave it a brief _____ and told him ... (II.20-21)
 a. peer b. eye c. glance d. regard
 Glancing at it briefly
 give sth. a brief glance
 peer : 眯着眼睛看
 重点习题: 2、7、10.

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. B 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. B 11. A 12. C

L34-05 8'33"

[Lesson 34 56:42]

●justice n. 正义, 公正; 司法
 ●court n. 法院
 ●law n. 法律
 ●innocence n. 无辜

- undertake v. 承担, 着手做
- arduous adj. 艰苦的, 艰难的
- abstract adj. 抽象的
- concept n. 概念, 观念
- mete out 给予, 处置
- interference n. 干涉
- accord n. 一致
- premises n. 房屋
- convert v. 转变, 改变
- disused adj. 不再用的, 废弃的
- fireplace n. 壁炉
- muffle v. 捂住, 压抑
- chip v. 砍, 削, 凿
- blacken v. 不变黑
- emerge v. (从某处) 出现

●justice n. 正义, 公正; 司法
 Justice is done 正义得到伸张
 bring justice to the criminal 把罪犯缉拿归案
 do justice to sb 公正地对待某人
 give oneself up to justice 自首
 in justice to sth/ sb. 为了对……公正起见
 Eg: They decided to investigate the case in justice to person. 为了对这件案件公正起见, 他们决定调查这个案件

L34-05_35-01 end 10'59"

L35-02 begin 10'07"

injustice 不公平, 不公正

- court n. 法院
- law n. 法律
- take law into one's own hand 无法无天
- take the law of sb 控告
- at law 在诉讼中
- within the law 合法
- outside the law 不合法
- lawyer 律师
- lawful 有法可依的
- lawfully adv.
- lawless 无法可依的
- lawlessly adv.

- innocence n. 无辜
- innocent adj. 无辜的

●undertake v. 承担, 着手做
 take up
 undertake to do 承担, 开始做
 开始做……………
 start to do sth/ take off doing sth / be engaged in sth / set out to do / set about doing / perform sth.
 ... on the way 在进行中

The discuss on the way.

- arduous adj. 艰苦的, 艰难的
 Study English is an arduous job.
 -ous adj.
 industrious,
 laborious,
 strenuous
- abstract adj. 抽象的
- concept n. 概念, 观念
- mete out 给予, 处置
- interference n. 干涉
- accord n. 一致
 ==agree with
 in accord with 和……一致
 out of accord with 和……不一致
 of one's own accord 自然而然的
 Justice is down of it's own accord.
 according to: 依据, 根据
 in accordance with 依据(法律, 规章, 制度), 比较正式

●premises n. 房屋
 residence 住处, 居留地 (正式用法)
 dwelling 供人居住的地方
 house 住房
 housing 房 (总称)
 The housing problem

- convert v. 转变, 改变
- disused adj. 不再用的, 废弃的
- misused 弄错了的
- used 用过了的
- second hand 二手的

- fireplace n. 壁炉
- muffle v. 捂住, 压抑
- chip v. 砍, 削, 凿
- chop 砍

- blacken v. 不变黑
- emerge v. (从某处) 出现

【Text】

§ Lesson 35 Justice was done 伸张正义

Listen to the tape
 then answer the
 question below.

The word 'justice' is
 given two different
 meanings in the text.
 What is the
 distinction between
 them?

The word justice is usually associated with courts of law. We might say that justice has been done when a man's innocence or guilt has been proved beyond doubt. Justice is part of the complex machinery of the law.

5 Those who seek it, undertake an arduous journey and can never be sure that they will find it. Judges, however wise or eminent, are human and can make mistakes.

There are rare instances when justice almost ceases to be an abstract conception.

10 Reward or punishment are meted out quite independent of human interference. At such times, justice acts like a living force. When we use a phrase like it serves him right, we are, in part, admitting that a certain set of circumstances has enabled justice to act of its own accord.

15 When a thief was caught on the premises of a large fur store one morning, the shop assistants must have found it impossible to resist the temptation to say 'it serves him right'. The shop was an old converted house with many large, disused fireplaces and tall, narrow chimneys. Towards midday, a girl heard a muffled cry coming from behind one of the walls. As the cry was repeated several times, she ran to tell the manager who promptly rang up the fire brigade. The cry had certainly come from one of the chimneys, but as there were so many of them, the fire fighters could not be certain which one it was. They located the right chimney by tapping at the walls and listening for the man's cries. After chipping through a wall which was eighteen inches thick, they found that a man had been trapped in the chimney. As it was extremely narrow, the man was unable to move, but the firemen were eventually able to free him by cutting a huge hole in the wall. The sorry-looking, blackened figure that emerged, at once admitted that he had tried to break into the shop during the night but had got stuck in the chimney. He had been there for nearly ten hours. Justice had been done even before the man was handed over to the police.

参考译文

“正义”这个词常常是同法庭连在一起的。当某人被证据确凿地证明无罪的时候，我们也许会说正义得到了伸张。正义是复杂的法律机器组成部分。那些寻求正义的人走的是一条崎岖的道路，从来没有把握他们最终将到正义。法官无论如何聪明与有名，毕竟也是人，也会出差错的。

在个别情况下，正义不再是一种抽象概念。奖惩的实施是不受人意志支配的。在这种时候，正义像一

种有生命的力量行使其职能。当我们说“他罪有应得”这句话的时候，我们部分承认了某种特定的环境使得正义自动地起了作用。

一天上午，当一个小偷在一家大型珠宝店里被人抓住的时候，店员一定会忍不住说：“他罪有应得。”那是一座老式的、经过改造的房子，店里有许多废置不用的大壁炉和又高又窄的烟囱。快到中午的时候，一个女售货员听见从一堵墙里传出一种闷声闷气的叫声。由于这种喊叫声重复了几次，她跑去报告经理，经理当即给消防队挂了电话。喊叫声肯定是从烟囱里传出来的，然而，因为烟囱太多，消防队员无法确定到底是哪一个。他们通过叫击烟囱倾叫声而确定传出声音的那个烟囱。他们凿透了 18 英寸厚的墙壁，发现有个人卡在烟囱里。由于烟囱太窄，那人无法动弹。消防队员在墙上挖了个大洞，才终于把他解救出来。那个看来满脸沮丧、浑身漆黑的家伙从烟囱里一出来，就承认头天夜里他企图到店里行窃，但让烟囱卡住了。他已经在烟囱里被困了将近 10 个小时。甚至在那人还没被送交给警察之前，正义就已得到了伸张。

【课文讲解】

be associated with == be connected with, be related to 与.....相联系
we might say that: 我们也许会说

L35-02 end 10'07"

L35-03 begin 10'39"

beyond prep. 超出某种范围，限度（与名词搭配）

beyond believe 难以相信

beyond words 难以形容

beyond description 难以描述

beyond question 难以置疑

beyond hope 没有希望

beyond recovery 康复无望

beyond dispute 无可争议

beyond contention 无可争辩

beyond imagination 难以想像

beyond measure 难以度量

beyond understanding 无法理解

beyond comparing

beyond one's + 名词 超出了某人的.....

beyond his power.

You are beyond his recognition.

Your beauty is beyond my description.

The text is beyond the student comprehension.

part of 部分(+单数名词)

parts of 几部分，若干部分(+单数名词)

背熟：Those who seek it, undertake an arduous journey and can never be sure

that they will find it.

however== no matter how

judges:

There are rare instances when+从句 : 在极个别的情况下

There are rare instances when women are not equal to men.

cease (正式) 彻底的停止, 暗示动作的突然性

His heart suddenly cease to beat.

sease to do

stop:(广泛, 不正式)不强调方式, 只强调结果

L35-03 end 10'39"

L35-04 begin 10'32"

quite independent of human interference ----

形容词短语做定语, 说明主句的状况

He deserves it / It serves him right 罪有应得

At such times: 在有的时候

we are, in part, admitting that

enabled sb. to do

of its own accord

When a thief was caught on the premises of a large fur store one morning, the shop assistants must have found it impossible to resist the temptation to say 'it serves him right'.

found it impossible to resist the temptation to say ... (双否)

I found it impossible to resist the temptation to buy the beauty dress.

come from behind 从后面

promptly = immediately

located the right chimney

by tapping at the walls and listening for the man's cries

Eg: We are listening for the clock to announce the New Year.

get stuck 被卡住了

L35-04 end 10'32"

L35-05 end 9'34"

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 In what circumstances may justice take

effect outside the courts of law?

a. When a judge has proved neither eminent nor wise.

b. When it has not been possible to prove a man's guilt beyond any doubt.

c. When justice has been done without the interference of a human agent.

d. When, for example, a man is caught and handed over to the police.

take effect 起作用

请背熟题干

2 Why did the manager ring up the fire brigade?

a. He thought that one of the chimneys was on fire.

b. **He expected them to be of most help** in the circumstances.

c. He had not realized there was a criminal on the premises.

d. He thought whoever was stuck might be a member of the fire brigade.

3 The fire fighters ascertained which chimney the man was in by ____ .

a. deciding which of the many cries came from the right chimney

b. listening for the man's response th their taps on the walls.

c. chipping through a wall which was eighteen inches thick

d. cutting a hige hole in the wall

ascertained

Structure

4 ____ wise or eminent, judges are human and can make mistakes. (II.5-6)

a. Whether b. Either c. How much

d. No matter how

5 In our use of a phrase like 'it serves him right' ____, in part, admitting ... (II.8-10)

a. is b. it is c. we are b. and in

6 The staff must have found it impossible ____ to say 'it serves him right'. (II.11-12)

a. they were not tempted b. for them not to be tempted

c. to be tempted d. not to be tempted

be tempted to do

7 ____ several times, she ran to tell the manager. (I.14)

a. Repeating the cry b. While the cry was repeated

c. The cry being repeated d. Having repeated the cry

8 ---- admitted that _____ to break into the shop during the night, he had got stuck in the chimney. (ll.20-21)
a. although he had tried b. while he has tried
c. in trying d. it was he who had tried
In speaking to him, I found him nervous.

Vocabulary

9 She _____ the cry several times, so she ran ... (ll.14-15)
a. heard b. listened to c. listened for
d. earmarked

10 They located the chimney _____ by tapping ... (ll.16-17)
a. on the right b. well c. right away
d. correctly

(**L35-05_36-01 1'03"**) [Lesson 36 36:11]

§ Lesson 36 A chance in a million 百万分之一的机遇

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- credulous adj. 轻信的
- improbable adj. 不大可能的
- obscure adj. 不起眼的
- maidservant n. 女仆, 女佣
- presume v. 假定
- wickedly adv. 心眼坏地, 居心叵测地
- plot v. 密谋
- downfall n. 倒台, 垮台
- naïve adj. 天真的
- unacceptable adj. 不能接受的
- conspire v. (事件) 巧合促成
- incredible adj. 难以置信的
- resemblance n. 相似
- scorn n. 嘲弄, 挖苦
- acquaint v. 使了解
- reunite v. 使团聚
- assume v. 假定, 认为

L35-05_36-01 end 9'34"

L36-02 begin 9'32"

■credulous adj. 轻信的 (修饰人)
credible: 可信的, 可靠的 (修饰事物)
Eg: The story he told us is credible.
incredulous
incredible
believable
Eg: He demanded for believable explanation
unbelievable

■improbable adj. 不大可能的
■obscure adj. 不起眼的
Eg: The bus stopped at an obscure little

11 The blackened figure that emerged was _____ sight. (l.20)
a. an ugly b. a sorry c. an apologetic
d. a poor
12 The sorry-looking blackened figure that _____, admitted at once ... (l.20)
a. came to light b. came up c. went out
d. got out
emerge (侧重强调公布于众): come to light
本文表示出来
come up 意外发生

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. C 2. B 3. B 4. D 5. C 6. D 7. C
8. C 9. A 10. D 11. B 12. D

L35-05 8'29"

[Lesson 35 42:05]

town

令人费解的

An obscure figure can be seen through the fog.

vague 多用于比喻意, 指不明确说明而造成的模糊不清

■maidservant n. 女仆, 女佣

■presume v. 假定

vt.

presume that

presume: 假定 (根据过去的经验和感觉作出决断)

assume: 武断的, 把尚未证实的作为依据, 与事实不相符合

Eg: Let us assume that your words are fact

suppose: 最普通的用词, 猜想、陈述自己的看法

Eg: I suppose that it was my fault.

■wickedly adv. 心眼坏地, 居心叵测地

■plot v. 密谋

The criminals were plotting to rob the bank.

conspire: 众多人合谋做重大的犯法勾当, 犹指反叛, 不用于修饰单个人

scheme: 某人暗中设计狡诈的手段来谋求自己的私利

The man is scheme for power.

■downfall n. 倒台, 垮台

■naïve adj. 天真的

■unacceptable adj. 不能接受的

■conspire v. (事件) 巧合促成

vi.

The weather and car trouble conspire to spoil our vacation.

■incredible adj. 难以置信的

■resemblance n. 相似

likeness: 最普通的用语, 比 resemblance 意味要强

bear a strong resemblance to sb. or sth.
The girl bears a strong resemblance to her sister.
such a resemblance
resemble 特别是指外观或外在性质的相似
similarity:性质、特色、程度的相似
The two events which happened at the same time have got similarity
similar to sth. or sb.
They have got close likeness.

L36-02 end 9'32"

L36-03 begin 9'14"

■scorn n. 嘲弄, 挖苦
pour scorn on
pour contempt on
pour ridicule on 对……嘲弄, 挖苦, 斥之以鼻
pour heap
Eg: He poured scorn on his wife's suggestion.

look down upon / think scorn of 藐视
contempt: 蔑视, 强烈谴责某人或某事低贱、卑鄙, 语气强于 scorn
despite: 语气较弱, 表示嘲弄
Eg: His suggestion was dismissed with scorn.
His face showed the scorn he felt.

■acquaint v. 使了解
be acquainted with sth. 对……有所了解
acquaint sb. with sth. / acquaint sb. of sth. 告之某人某事
make a person acquainted with sb. 介绍某人同另一个人认识
Let me make ... acquainted with you (正式用法)
acquaintance n. 熟人
■reunite v. 使团聚
■assume v. 假定, 认为

【Text】

§ Lesson 36 A chance in a million 百万分之一
之一的机遇

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

What was the chance in a million?

We are less credulous than we used to be. In the nineteenth century, a novelist would bring his story to a conclusion by presenting his readers with a series of coincidences ---- most of them wildly improbable. Readers happily accepted the fact that an obscure maidservant was really the hero's mother. A long-lost brother, who was presumed dead,

was really alive all the time and wickedly plotting to bring about the hero's downfall. And so on. Modern readers would find such naive solutions totally unacceptable. Yet, in real life, circumstances do sometimes conspire to bring about coincidences which anyone but a nineteenth century novelist would find incredible.

When I was a boy, my grandfather told me how a German taxi driver, Franz Bussman, found a brother who was thought to have been killed twenty years before. While on a walking tour with his wife, he stopped to talk to a workman. After they had gone on, Mrs Bussman commented on the workman's close resemblance to her husband and even suggested that he might be his brother. Franz poured scorn on the idea, pointing out that his brother had been killed in action during the war. Though Mrs Bussman was fully acquainted with this story, she thought that there was a chance in a million that she might be right. A few days later, she sent a boy to the workman to ask him if his name was Hans Bussman, Needless to say, the man's name was Hans Bussman and he really was Franz's long-lost brother. When the brothers were reunited, Hans explained how it was that he was still alive. After having been wounded towards the end of the war, he had been sent to hospital and was separated from his unit. The hospital had been bombed and Hans had made his way back into Western Germany on foot. Meanwhile, his unit was lost and all records of him had been destroyed. Hans returned to his family home, but the house had been bombed and no one in the neighbourhood knew what had become of the inhabitants. Assuming that his family had been killed during an air raid, Hans settled down in a village fifty miles away where he had remained ever since.

参考译文

我们不再像以往那样轻易相信别人了。在 19 世纪, 小说家常在小说结尾处给读者准备一系列的巧合——大部分是牵强附会, 极不可能的。当时的读者却愉快地接受这样一些事实, 一个低贱的女佣实际上是主人公的母亲; 主人公一位长期失

散的兄弟，大家都以为死了，实际上一直活着，并且正在策划暗算主人公；如此等等，现代读者会觉得这种天真的结局完全无法接受。不过，在现实生活中，有时确实会出现一些巧合，这些巧合除了 19 世纪小说家外谁也不会相信。

当我是个孩子的时候，我祖父给我讲了一位德国出租汽车司机弗朗兹·巴斯曼如何找到了据信已在 20 年前死去的兄弟的事。一次，他与妻子徒步旅行。途中，停下来与一个工人交谈，接着他们继续往前走。巴斯曼夫人说那工人与她丈夫相貌很像，甚至猜测他可能就是她丈夫的兄弟。弗朗兹对此不屑一顾，指出他兄弟已经在战争中阵亡了。尽管巴斯曼夫人熟知这个情况，但她仍然认为自己的想法仍有百万分之一的可能性。几天后，她派了一个男孩去问那人是否叫汉斯·巴斯曼。不出巴斯曼夫人所料，那人的名字真是汉斯·巴斯曼，他确实是弗朗兹失散多年的兄弟。兄弟俩团聚之时，汉斯说明了他活下来的经过，战争即将结束时，他负伤被送进医院，并与部队失去联系。医院遭到轰炸，汉斯步行回到了西德。与此同时，他所在部队被击溃，他的所有档案材料全部毁于战火。汉斯重返故里，但他的家已被炸毁，左邻右舍谁也不知原住户的下落，汉斯以为全家人都在空袭中遇难，于是便在距此 50 英里外的一座村子里定居下来，直至当日。

【课文讲解】

It is a chance in a million to meet you here.
He let out a scream that must can be heard in Peru.

背熟：We are less credulous than we used to be.

We are not so honest as we used to be.

谓语动词是 be 动词的时候用 used to be, 而不用 used to

谓语动词是实义动词的时候用 used to

He works less hard than he used to.

bring sth to a conclusion 结束 == bring sth to a close(更正式)

Eg: They decided to bring the meeting to a conclusion.

It was ... who brought meeting to a close.
present sb with sth. 向某人提供了 ... == present sth to sb.

背熟：**who was presumed dead, was really alive all the time and wickedly plotting to bring about the hero's downfall.**

L36-03 end 9'14"

L36-04 begin 9'40"

bring about 产生，影响

Modern science has brought about great

changes in life.

背熟：find such naive solutions totally unacceptable

find sth. interesting 觉得某事有趣

find sth. beautiful 觉得某物漂亮

背熟：Mrs Bussman commented on the workman's close resemblance to her husband and even suggested that he might be his brother.

comment on sth 就 ... 作出评论，评价 -- remark on

Hans explained how it was that he was still alive.

Eg: I can't explain how it is that he is still here.

make one's way

become of == happen to 发生遭遇，不幸的事件，多用于疑问句，主语必须是 what / whatever

Eg: Whatever became of that girl?

Please explain what became of you yesterday.

用 assuming, 而不用 presuming; 主观上的臆断、无事实根据的。

L36-04 end 9'40"

L36-05 begin 9'15"

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 What would a modern reader find totally unacceptable in a novel today?

a. having for a hero a man once presumed dead.

b. The happiness a hero might feel on being reunited with his mother.

c. Any character being so wicked as to plot against the hero.

d. Two brothers, each presuming the other long since dead, meeting again by chance.

2 When Mrs. Bussman suggested that the workman might be Franz's brother _____. .

a. she was told for the first time that Hans had been killed

b. Franz objected to the idea of being associated with a workman

c. Franz was so sure his brother was dead he did not take her seriously

d. they were both too shy to ask the workman if this was so themselves

3 What did Hans Bussman do immediately

after the war was over?

- a. He went to hospital to have his wounds attended to.
b. He deserted his unit and walked back to his home town.
c. He inquired after his family's whereabouts but found no trace of them.
d. He settled in a village near his home, hoping his family would find him.

Structure

4 ---- his readers with a series of coincidences _____ wildly improbable. (II.2-4)
a. mostly being b. most of which were
c. most of them were d. which would be most

5 A long-lost brother had not in fact died and _____ to bring about the hero's downfall. (II.5-7)
a. wickedly plotting b. wickedly plotted
c. been wickedly plotting d. had been wickedly plotting

6 He stopped _____. (II.11-12)
a. in order to talk to a workman b. a workman for a talk
c. talking to a workman d. so that he talked to a workman

7 She sent a boy to ask the workman _____. (I.16)
a. what was he called b. what he was called
c. how he was called d. if he was called

8 Meanwhile his unit was lost and _____ had been destroyed. (II.20-21)
a. each of his records b. all records of him
c. all records of his d. every
(L36-05_37-01 begin 2'25")

[Lesson 37 36:59]

§ Lesson 37 The Westhaven Express 开往威斯特海温的快车

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- express n. 快车; adj. 高速的
- punctual adj. 准时的;
- condition v. 使习惯于
- unshakable adj. 不可动摇的
- faith n. 信任
- cancel v. 取消
- exceptionally adv. 例外地
- dislocate v. 打乱 (计划等)
- blame v. 责怪
- consult v. 请教, 查阅
- direct adv. 径直地
- odd adj. 奇怪的, 异常的
- reflect v. 细想

record of his

Vocabulary

9 he found a brother who was thought to have been killed twenty years _____. (II.10-11)
a. ago b. back c. before hand d. previously
previously == before

10 Mrs. bussman told her husband that he and the workman _____ ... (II.12-13)
a. had a close look b. had the same look
c. looked very alike d. looked the same way
look 表示人的外貌, 长相应该采用复数形式

11 ---- there was the _____ chance she might be right. (I.15)
a. remotest b. scarcest c. greatest
d. lightest
remote 既表示“遥远、偏僻的”, 也表示“微弱的”, 特别用来修饰 chance, possibility

12 ---- how it had _____ that he was still alive. (I.18)
a. become b. arrived c. resulted d. come about
come about: happen
become of == come about

多用于疑问句, 尤其是 How does it come about that? 结构中

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. D 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. D 10. C 11. A 12. D

L36-05 6'47"

[Lesson 36 36:11]

- advantage n. 优势
- mighty adj. 强大的, 有力的
- dawdle v. 慢吞吞的动或做
- chug v. 咔嚓咔嚓地响
- lodge v. 提出
- complaint n. 抱怨
- triumph n. 胜利
- asterisk n. 星号 (*)
- conduct v. 引向, 引导

■express n. 快车; adj. 高速的
express way: 高速公路
express train 快车
special express 特快
through express 直快
stopping/ local train 慢车

■punctual adj. 准时的;

be punctual in doing sth. 在做……方面非常准时

be punctual to the minute 非常准时

L36-05_37-01 end 9'15"

L37-02 begin 8'35"

Eg: He is a man who's punctual to the minute.

punctually adv.

unpunctual ant.

punctuality n.

■condition v. 使习惯于

==form a habit in

Eg: This society has conditioned each of us.

be conditioned to 习惯了……

Eg: Each of us has been conditioned to the society.

The plants has been conditioned to the cold weather here.

The cold weather has conditioned the plants here.

condition 条件

on condition that 在……条件下如果

on no condition 在任何情况下, 用在句首句子要倒装

On no condition must you be late.

in good/ bad condition 情况良好/情况糟糕

change one's condition 结婚

in the interesting condition: 怀孕 pregnant

■unshakable adj. 不可动摇的

■faith n. 信任

keep faith with sb. 对……守信用

put one's faith in sth 对……有信心

on the faith of 在……的保障下, 凭……的信用

faith 深信不疑, 信仰, 比 belief 程度重一点

belief: 可信赖, 可接受

conviction 坚定的信念

trust 相信, 依赖

credit 对……完全相信

■cancel v. 取消

call off == cancel 可以互相替换

abolish 废除

rescind 撤销, 废止

write off 注销, 勾销

cross out 划掉

■exceptionally adv. 例外地

■dislocate v. 打乱 (计划等)

■blame v. 责怪

■consult v. 请教, 查阅

■direct adv. 径直地

■odd adj. 奇怪的, 异常的

■reflect v. 细想

reflect on sth 细想……

reflect upon oneself 自我反省

■advantage n. 优势

take advantage of sb/sth 欺骗……并利用
of great/no advantage to sb/sth 对……有 (没有) 好处

to advantage 更有效地

have advantage over sb 胜过某人, 比某人有优势

L37-02 end 8'35"

L37-03 begin 9'42"

interest 个人的利益, 好处

benefit 通过正当手段谋求的好处

profit 金钱上的获益

good 个人或集体的利益

■mighty adj. 强大的, 有力的

■dawdle v. 慢吞吞的动或做

■chug v. 咔嚓咔嚓地响

■lodge v. 提出

make/ lodge complaint 提出抱怨

■complaint n. 抱怨

■triumph n. 胜利

■asterisk n. 星号 (*)

■conduct v. 引向, 引导

【Text】

§ Lesson 37 The Westhaven Express

开往威斯特海温的快车

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

What was the mistake the author made?

We have learnt to expect that trains will be punctual. After years of conditioning, most of us have developed an unshakable faith in railway timetables. Ships may be delayed by storms; air flights may be cancelled because of bad weather; but trains must be on time. Only an exceptionally heavy snow fall might temporarily dislocate railway services. It is all too easy to blame the railway authorities when something does go wrong. The truth is that when mistakes occur, they are more likely to be ours than theirs.

After consulting my railway timetable, I noted with satisfaction that there was an express train to Westhaven. It went direct

from my local station and the journey lasted a mere hour and seventeen minutes. When I boarded the train, I could not help noticing that a great many local people got on as well.

At the time, this did not strike me as odd. I reflected that there must be a great many people besides myself who wished to take advantage of this excellent service. Neither was I surprised when the train stopped at Widley, a tiny station a few miles along the line. Even a mighty express train can be held up by signals. But when the train dawdled at station after station, I began to wonder. It suddenly dawned on me that this express was not roaring down the line at ninety miles an hour, but barely chugging along at thirty. One hour and seventeen minutes passed and we had not even covered half the distance. I asked a passenger if this was the Westhaven Express, but he had not even heard of it. I determined to lodge a complaint as soon as we arrived. Two hours later, I was talking angrily to the station master at Westhaven. When he denied the train's existence, I borrowed his copy of the timetable. There was a note of triumph in my voice when I told him that it was there in black and white.

15

20

Glancing at it briefly, he told me to look again. A tiny asterisk conducted me to a footnote at the bottom of the page. It said: 'This service has been suspended.'

参考译文

我们已经习惯于相信火车总是准点的。经过多年的适应，大多数人对火车时刻表产生了一种不可动摇的信念。轮船船期可能因风暴而推延，飞机航班可能因恶劣天气而取消，唯有火车必然是准点的。只有非同寻常的大雪才可能暂时打乱铁路运行。因此，一旦铁路上真出了问题，人们便不加思索地责备铁路当局。事实上，差错很可能是我们自己，而不是铁路当局的。

我查看了列车时刻表，满意地了解到有一趟去威斯特海温的快车。这是趟直达车，旅途总共才需1小时17分钟。上车后，我不禁注意到许多当地人也上了车。一开始，我并不感到奇怪，我想除我之外，想利用快车之便的也一定大有人在。火车开出几英里即在一个小站威德里停了下来。对此，我不觉得奇怪，因为即便是特别快车也可能被信号拦住。但是，当火车一站接着一站往前蠕动时，我便产生了怀疑。我突然感到这趟快车并没以时速90英里的速度呼啸前进，而是哆哆嗦嗦地向前爬行，时速仅30英里。1小时17分过去了，走了还不到一半路程。我问一位乘客，这是不是开往威斯特海温的那趟快车，他说从未听说过有这么一趟快车。我决定到目的地就给铁路部门提意见。两小时后，我气呼呼地同威斯特海温站站长说起此事。他说根本没有这趟车。于是我借他本人的列车时刻表，我带着一种胜利者的调子告诉他那趟车白纸

黑字。明明白白印在时刻表上。他迅速地扫视了一眼，让我再看一遍。一个小小的星形符号把我的目光引到了那页底部一个说明上。上面写着：“此趟列车暂停运行。”

【课文讲解】

背诵：We have learnt to expect that trains will be punctual.

We've learnt to expect that 我们已经习惯于期盼……

背诵：After years of conditioning, most of us have developed an unshakable faith in railway timetables.

develop an unshakable faith in sth 对……产生了……样的信念

背诵：Only an exceptionally heavy snow fall might temporarily dislocate railway services.

It is all too easy to blame.....

too...to 句型中，在 too 前出现了 all, only, but, not 等词的时候，to 就有肯定意义

Eg: He was but too eager to get home.

One is never too old to learn. 活到老，学到老

be likely to do 有可能 ...

Eg: You are likely to get success if you work hard.

It is likely that...

It is likely that he arrived here in time.

probable 不能与不定式搭配 比 possible 可能性大

Eg: It is probable / possible that...

Eg: It is probable / possible that he will speak to you.

It is possible for us to finish the work in an hour.

L37-03 end 9'42"

L37-04 begin 9'01"

go direct from ... to ...

strike sb as 给某人以……印象，使某人感到；as 后面可以接分词、名词、形容词搭配连用。

Eg: The activity atroke me as wasting time.

背熟：I reflected that there must be a great many people besides myself who wished to take advantage of this excellent service.

hold up==hold back, hinder, prevent

dawn on sb 渐渐被某人明白

barely==only

in black and white 白纸黑字

Key structure

We' ve learnt to expect that 我们已经习惯于期盼.....

We' ve learnt to expect that 我们已经习惯于期盼.....

It is all too easy to blame.....

too...to 句型中, 在 too 前出现了 all, only, but, not 等词的时候, to 就有肯定意义

be likely to do 有可能 ...

It is likely that...

The first paragraph is important go direct from ... to ...

strike sb as 给某人以……印象, 使某人感到;as 后面可以接分词、名词、形容词搭配连用。

hold up==hold back, hinder, prevent

dawn on sb 渐渐被某人明白

in black and white 白纸黑字

L37-04 end 9'01"

L37-05 begin 11'40"

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 When the writer consulted his railway timetable _____ .

- a. he wanted to find out how long the express train to Westhaven took
 - b. he wanted to know the quickest way of getting to Westhaven by rail
 - c. he did not notice how many stations there were on the way to Westhaven
 - d. he misread the information concerning the time the journey took
- by rail ==by train

2 At what point did the writer realize that the train was not travelling at the speed of an express train?

- a. When the train had reached the station after Widley.
- b. When the train had been held up by signals.
- c. After the train had stopped at several small stations.
- d. After the train had covered a distance of thirty miles.

at the speed of 以……的速度

express train 特快列车

3 When the writer went to the station master, he complained about _____ .

- a. the train scheduled as an express train

having in fact been a slow one

b. the lack of colour in the timetable

c. the lack of any express trains from his local station to Westhaven

d. the fact that the Westhaven express had been suspended from service

complain about/of 抱怨

Structure

4 We have learnt to expect _____ punctual. (I.1)

- a. trains being
- b. trains to be
- c. of trains being
- d. trains are going to be

5 _____ exceptionally heavily might railway services be temporarily dislocated. (II.5-6)

- a. If only it snowed
- b. Only in case it snows
- c. Only were it to snow
- d. Only when snow

only 所引导的状语从句用在句首, 句子必须倒装, if 条件句, 如果 if 省略, were 要前置

6 The express train went direct from my local station to Westhaven _____ a mere hour and seventeen minutes. (I.10)

- a. in
- b. lasting
- c. a journey which lasted
- d. a journey of

7 One hour and seventeen minutes passed _____ still to cover half the distance. (II.16-17)

- a. before we had
 - b. before having
 - c. when we had
 - d. and we had
- 用 a 选项, 则题干中的 still 应去掉。

8 When he denied the train's existence, I asked if I _____ borrow his copy. (II.19-20)

- a. can
- b. may
- c. might
- d. was able to

Vocabulary

9 Even a mighty express train can be _____ by signals. (I.14)

- a. halted
- b. retarded
- c. slowed up
- d. delayed

held up == delayed

halt 停止

retard 防止

slow up 减慢

10 I determined to lodge a complaint _____ on arrival. (I.18)

- a. firstly
- b. punctually
- c. straight
- d. immediately

11 _____ , I told him that it was there in black and white. (II.20-21)

- a. Noting my triumph
- b. Sounding

triumphant c. On a triumphant note d.
In my triumphant voice

12 Glancing at it briefly, he told me I
should _____. (L21)

a. take another look b. review it c.
overlook it d. have second sight
review 复习

(**L37-05_38-01 begin 4'19"**)

[Lesson 38 44:52]

§ Lesson 38 The first calendar 最早的日历

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- calendar n. 历法, 日历
- historian n. 历史学家
- unique adj. 无与伦比的
- steadily adv. 不断地
- solely adv. 唯一地
- video n. 录像
- CD-ROM n. (只读) 光盘驱动器
- bewilder v. 令人眼花缭乱
- deduce v. 推断, 推理
- scanty adj. 不足的, 贫乏的
- clue n. 线索
- insignificant adj. 不重要的
- shed v. 使流出, 泻
- advent n. 出现, 到来, 来临
- agriculture n. 农业
- assumption n. 假定, 设想
- dot n. 小圆点
- symbol n. 符号
- engrave v. 雕刻
- ivory n. 象牙制品
- mammoth n. (古) 长毛象
- phase n. 月相, 天相
- tusk n. 獠牙, 长牙、象牙
- primitive adj. 原始的
- nomad n. 游牧民
- depict v. 描画, 描绘
- correlate v. 使相互联系

■calendar n. 历法, 日历
calendar 轮压机

■historian n. 历史学家
historic 具有历史意义的
This is a historic speech.
historical 与历史研究有关系的
historical research 历史研究

■unique adj. 无与伦比的
unique: unequaled
Speech is a unique human ability
unique 不能接受比较级, 可以接受 quite, almost,
nearly, surely, really 等修饰, 但不能接受
rather, very 等词的修饰。

overlook 忽视, 宽恕, 检查, 监督

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. A 7.
D 8. C 9. D 10. D 11. B 12. A

L37-05 7'20" [Lesson 37 36:59]

unique 独一无二的, 因唯一而独特
special 注重性质的特殊
especial 强调超过其他的全部
Eg: This is a matter of especial importance.

This is an especially important matter.
particular 特定的, 着重同类中某一个所有独特的性
质
Pineapples have particular flavour. 菠萝有特别
的味道。
exceptional
extraordinary 特别的, 与众不同的
Eg: The warm weather is exceptional for
January.

L37-05_38-01 end 11'40"

L38-02 begin 10'46"

■steadily adv. 不断地
■solely adv. 唯一地
■video n. 录像
■CD-ROM n. (只读) 光盘驱动器
■bewilder v. 令人眼花缭乱
bewilder: confuse
Eg: she was bewildered by so many beautiful
dresses.
puzzle 某问题因复杂而令人费解
Eg: I am puzzled by the problem.

perplex 难以理解 (包含焦虑不安, 不知如何解决
的意思)
Eg: He is perplexed for the answer.
bewilderment: n.
in bewilderment 茫然不知所措

■deduce v. 推断, 推理
deduce: determine or decide sth. by given
facts.
Eg: I deduce the conclusion from the given
facts.
deduce ...from 从...中推论, 推断
infer 推断 (不表示过程)
Eg: What can you infer from the text?
deduce ==> (ant.) induce 归纳

■scanty adj. 不足的, 贫乏的
scanty: too few, not enough
scanty knowledge 一知半解
a scanty crop 欠收

be scanty of sth 奇缺
be short of 短缺
Eg: The village school is scanty of textbooks.
这乡村学校奇缺教材。
be want of = in need of 需要……

■clue n. 线索
■insignificant adj. 不重要的
■shed v. 使流出, 泻
shed: pour out
shed tears 泪流满面
shed light 发光
shed light on sb. 启发, 启迪
shed one's blood for country 为祖国而流血。
shed one's clothes 脱去衣服

■advent n. 出现, 到来, 来临
advent: coming or arrival
at the advent of winter 在冬天到来的时候
at the advent of 在…到来的时候
since the advent of 自从…的到来

■agriculture n. 农业
■assumption n. 假定, 设想
■dot n. 小圆点
■symbol n. 符号
■engrave v. 雕刻
■ivory n. 象牙制品
■mammoth n. (古) 长毛象
■phase n. 月相, 天相
■tusk n. 獠牙, 长牙、象牙
■primitive adj. 原始的
■nomad n. 游牧民
■depict v. 描画, 描绘
■correlate v. 使相互联系

【Text】

§ Lesson 38 The first calendar 最早的日历

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

What is the importance of the dots, lines, and symbols engraved on stone, bones and ivory?

5 Future historians will be in a unique position when they come to record the history of our own times. They will hardly know which facts to select from the great mass of evidence that steadily accumulates. What is more they will not have to rely solely on the written word. Films, videos, CDs and CD-ROMs are just some of the bewildering amount of information they will have. They will be able, as it were, to see and hear us in action. But the historian attempting to reconstruct the distant past is always faced with a difficult

task. He has to deduce what he can from the few scanty clues available. Even seemingly insignificant remains can shed interesting light on the history of early man.

10 Up to now, historians have assumed that calendars came into being with the advent of agriculture, for then man was faced with a real need to understand something about the seasons. Recent scientific evidence seems to indicate that this assumption is incorrect.

15 Historians have long been puzzled by dots, lines and symbols which have been engraved on walls, bones, and the ivory tusk of mammoths. The nomads who made these markings lived by hunting and fishing during the last Ice Age, which began about 35,000 B.C. and ended about 10,000 B.C. By correlating markings made in various parts of the world, historians have been able to read this difficult code. They have found that it is connected with the passage of days and the phases of the moon. It is, in fact, a primitive type of calendar. It has long been known that the hunting scenes depicted on walls were not simply a form of artistic expression. They had a definite meaning, for they were as near as early man could get to writing. It is possible that there is a definite relation between these paintings and the markings that sometimes accompany them. It seems that man was making a real effort to understand the seasons 20,000 years earlier than has been supposed.

参考译文

未来的历史学家在写我们这一段历史的时候会别具一格。对于逐渐积累起来的庞大材料,他们几乎不知道选取哪些好,而且,也不必完全依赖文字材料。电影、录像、光盘和光盘驱动器只是能为他们提供令人眼花缭乱的大量信息的几种手段。他们能够身临其境般地观看我们做事,倾听我们讲话。但是,历史学家企图重现遥远的过去可是一项艰巨的任务,他们必须根据现有的不充分的线索进行推理。即使看起来微不足道的遗物,也可能揭示人类早期历史的一些有趣的内容。

历史学家迄今认为日历是随农业的问世而出现的,因为当时人们面临着了解四季的实际需要,但近期科学研究发现,好像这种假设是不正确的。

长期以来,历史学家一直对雕刻在墙壁上、骨头上、古代长毛象的象牙上的点、线和形形色色的符号感到困惑不解。这些痕迹是游牧人留下的,他们生活在从公元前约 35,000 年到公元前 10,000 年的冰川期的末期,以狩猎、捕鱼为生。历史学家通过把世界各地留下的这种痕迹放在一起研究,终于弄懂了这种费解的代码。他们发现代码与昼夜更迭和月亮圆缺有关,事实上是一种最原始的日历。大家早就知道,画在墙上的狩猎图景并不是单纯的艺术表现形式,它们

有着一定的含义，因为它们已接近古代人的文字形式。有时，这种图画与墙壁上的刻痕共存，它们之间可能有一定的联系。看来人类早就致力于探索四季变迁了，比人们想像的要早 20,000 年。

【课文讲解】

in the unique position 处于无以伦比，独一无二的情况

come to: start, begin

背熟: **They will hardly know which facts to select from the great mass of evidence that steadily accumulates.**

select from 从……中进行选择(同类中)

choose 挑选(凭个人意愿)

一、有三种情况 choose 和 select 不能互换:

1. 当在两者中选一个时只能用 choose, 即 choose between

Eg: We have to choose between leaving early and paying for taxi.

2. choose 可带 wh 从句

Eg: I'll let you choose where we should go to eat.

3. choose to do 只能用 choose.

Eg: What invariably happens is that a great number of things choose to go wrong at precisely the same moment. (L33)

He has deliberately chosen to lead the life he leads and is fully aware of the consequences. (L27)

二、select 比 choose 更正式，即在许多同类的人或物当中根据客观标准对这两个加以比较，鉴别，认真地挑选出最好的、最喜欢的、最有用的。

great mass of == too much == a great amount of

evidence 不可数名词; 不能手 a great many, a large number of

Eg: She selected a blue dress from the wardrobe.

You have been selected to present us on the committee.

L38-02 end 10'46"

L38-03 begin 11'22"

what is more 更有甚者，furthermore, moreover 是的意思

what is worse 更糟糕的是

rely on == count on == depend on 依靠，指望

Eg: You can't rely on others.

He can't be relied on.

solely adv. 唯一地

means: only, just, nearly

bewilder 令人眼花缭乱

bewildering 令人眼花缭乱的

bewildered 感到眼花缭乱的

背熟: **They will be able, as it were, to see and hear us in action.**

in action 行动中的，活动中的

as it were 可以说，似乎，好像

Eg: He is as it were a walking dictionary. 他可以说是一部活字典

Computers can never as it were lead independent lives. 电脑不能过独立的生活

as it is=in fact=in really=actually=as a matter of fact 事实上

Eg: I thought things would get better, but as it is, they are getting worse.

In many ways children's lives as it were in a different world from the adults. 在许多方面，孩子们可以说过着一种与大人完全不同的生活。

But the historian attempting to reconstruct the distant past is always faced with a difficult task.

be faced with: be in the position in which one must deal with a problem or unpleasant situation.

面临(困境，问题)

Eg: Automobile industry is faced with a bad future now. 汽车工业正面临着令人担忧的未来。

A great many people are faced with losing their jobs. 许多人面临着失业。

In my opinion, you are faced with a problem as it were how to get enough time to study English.

The student attempting to learn English well in a year is faced with a difficult task. 企图在一年之内把英语学好的学生面临着巨大的难题。

available adj. 可利用的

Eg: I have dictionary available for you.

Is there a place available for us to have a chat.

I know you are in need of help, but excuse me, I don't have any students available for you.

remains == ruins 遗迹，遗物

insignificant == unimportant

shed light on = throw light on = cast light on 意思是: make a matter clear or understood 解释，说明，提示

L38-03 end 11'22"

L38-04 begin 11'59"

Eg: This information shed light on the problem. 这份情报会搞清楚这一问题。

Can you shed any light on the case of the fire? 你能够解释这次火灾吗?

She will shed light on the case of stolen jewels. 好将能够揭示这次珠宝失窃案。

★★★Paragraph 1★★★

in the unique position

select from

the great mass of evidence

the bewildering amount of information

what is more

as it were

in action

be faced with

available

shed interest on light on

up to now = so far 到目前为止

come into being == come into existence 产生, 出现

come to power 上台

come into use 开始使用

be faced with a real need to do sth. 面临着做某事的真正需要。

Eg: We are faced with a real need to learn English well.

indicate 揭示

which 引导定语从句, 修饰 the last Ice Age

correlate 相互联系

it is connected with == it is associated with

in fact 可以替换为 as it is; actually, in reality

as near as 接近

★★★Paragraph 3 remembered ★★★

historian has long been puzzled by

live by hunting and fishing

read this difficult code

it has long been known that

make a real effort to understand the seasons

L38-04 end 11'59"

L38-05 begin 9'11"

【Multiple choice questions】
Comprehension

1 In assuming that calendars came into being with the advent of agriculture, historians made the mistake of _____. .

- a. relying solely on the written word
- b. disregarding the markings that early man had been responsible for
- c. supposing that nomadic man had no reason to understand the seasons
- d. not connecting the passage of days with the phases of the moon

2 The scientific evidence that has recently come to light is that _____. .

- a. nomads engraved the bones and tusks of the animals they killed
- b. nomads lived by hunting and fishing
- c. nomads travelled widely in various parts of the world
- d. the markings made by various nomadic groups all have a definite pattern

3 The paintings which have been found on the walls of nomadic dwelling places _____. .

- a. have taught historians something about the nomadic way of life
- b. have no other content than their artistic merit
- c. are not thought to be connected with an ancient calendar system
- d. are invariably accompanied by odd dots, lines and symbols

Structure

4 It _____ as if they could see and hear us in action. (ll.6-7)

- a. was
- b. were
- c. should be
- d. will be

5 Even _____ seem insignificant remains can shed interesting ... (ll.8-9)

- a. they
- b. which
- c. what
- d. those to

6 Historians are now able to read this difficult code _____ markings made in ... (ll.15-16)

- a. with correlating
- b. having correlated
- c. which correlates
- d. for they correlate

7 _____ be a definite relation between these paintings and the ... (ll.19-21)

- a. It could
- b. There can
- c. There may
- d. It might

Vocabulary

8 Historians have long tried to _____ dots, lines and ... (l.13)

- a. puzzle
- b. puzzle out
- c. riddle
- d. detect

9 By correlating markings made in _____ parts of the world ... (ll.15-16)
a. different b. several c. many d. other

10 ---- historians have been able to read _____ . (l.16)
a. these puzzling signs b. this hard law
c. these difficult signals d. this uneasy letter

11 Until recently historians assumed that calendars _____ with the advent of agriculture. (l.10)

a. came to existence b. came to exist
c. came to exist d. were existential

(L38-05_39-01 2'37") [Lesson 39 35:42]

§ **Lesson 39 Nothing to worry about** 不必担心

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

●rough	adj. 崎岖不平的
●boulder	n. 大石块
●pit	v. 使得坑坑洼洼
●perturb	v. 使不安
●underestimate	v. 低估
●swerve	v. 争转变
●scoop	v. 挖出
●hammer	v. (用锤) 击打, 锤打
●ominously	adv. 有预兆的, 不祥的
●rip	v. 划破, 撕, 扯
●petrol	n. 汽油
●stretch	n. 一大片(平地或水)
●obstacle	n. 障碍
●clump	n. 丛, 簇
●fissure	n. (石、地的) 深缝
●renew	v. 重复
●pleading	n. 恳求
●gear	n. (汽车) 排档
●astride	prep. 骑, 跨
●crack	n. 缝隙
●zigzag	n. “之”字形
●shallow	adj. 浅的
●grind (ground, ground)	v. 磨擦
●halt	n. 停
●dashboard	n. (汽车上的) 仪表盘

■rough adj. 崎岖不平的

Eg: We'd better not take the rough road.

be rough on sb. 对某人苛刻, 无礼

Don't be rough on your friends.

cut up rough 发脾气

L38-05_39-01 end 9'11"

L39-02 begin 9'23"

come to + 动词原形: come to record ; come to exist ; come into existence

12 The people who lived by hunting and fishing during the last Ice Age _____ . (ll.14-15)

a. wandered from place to place b. lived in villages
c. first learnt to write d. learnt how to farm the land

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. B 2. D 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. B 7. C
8. B 9. A 10. A 11. C 12. A

L38-05 6'31" [Lesson 38 44:52]

■boulder n. 大石块

■pit v. 使得坑坑洼洼

■perturb v. 使不安

verb upset

be perturbed about sth 为...而心神不安

His threats didn't perturb her in the least
disturb 并非用心去扰乱

Eg: It is disturbing to think that a wild animal is still at large in the quiet countryside.

plague 因病痛和类似的折磨而使人苦恼

Eg: The terrible disease plagued him
trouble

Eg: Sorry to give you trouble. / Sorry to trouble you.

worry

Eg: He is worried about his son's safety.

fret

Eg: He fretted himself all the time for news of her.

upset

Eg: I feel upset now because I am afraid I hurt you.

dismay 使沮丧

辨别: perturb ; disturb ; plague ; trouble ; worry ; fret ; upset ; dismay

■underestimate v. 低估

■swerve v. 争转变

■scoop v. 挖出

Eg: She scooped out some sugar.

make a scoop 走运

Eg: That guy made a scoop.

■hammer v. (用锤) 击打, 锤打

■ominously adv. 有预兆的, 不祥的

ominous adj.

Eg: Look at those ominous black clouds.

omen n.

Eg: This is a good / bad omen.

Eg: The clouds omen rain.

■rip v. 划破, 撕, 扯

tear

rip one's mask away 撕下某人的假面具

let things tip==let things be 听其自然

rip into 猛攻, 抨击

rip off 偷窃

rip up the back 背后说坏话

■petrol n. 汽油

■stretch n. 一大片(平地或水)

at a stretch 连续的, 一口气的, 不停顿的

a stretch of land

a stretch of water

Eg: He worked for hours at a stretch.

We drove fast on a stretch of open field.

He is unable to work for long stretches.

a stretch of hill 连绵不断的群山

vt.

He stretched out his hand to get the apple.

There are forests stretching for hundreds of miles.

Transport was rather stretched in the Spring Festival.

■obstacle n. 障碍

Lack of education is an obstacle to success.

constitute an obstacle to 构成...的障碍

remove/ overcome an obstacle 克服困难

put obstacle in sb's way 妨碍某人的发展

obstacle to 介词 to

L39-02 end 9'23"

L39-03 begin 9'04"

要英语中有好多动词要与介词 to 搭配:

key; answer; shred; advantage;

disadvantage; admission; damage to

辨别: obstacle; obstruction; hindrance

Eg: Lack of education is obstacle to success.

There must be an obstruction in the pipe.

You are more of hindrance than help.

■clump n. 丛, 簇

■fissure n. (石、地的) 深缝

■renew v. 重复

■pleading n. 恳求

■gear n. (汽车) 排档

■astride prep. 骑, 跨

■crack n. 缝隙

■zigzag n. “之”字形

■shallow adj. 浅的

■grind (ground, ground) v. 磨擦

grind wheat into flour

grind sth to pieces 把...弄成碎片

grind one's teeth in anger 气得咬牙切齿

■halt n. 停

==stop

They halt for a few minutes.

stop; halt; cease

Eg: The heart will cease to beat when life ceases.

pause vi.

He paused for a breath.

halt

They halted for a few minutes.

halt; cease; pause; stop

halt n.

come to a halt / stop 停下来

■dashboard n. (汽车上的) 仪表盘

【Text】

§ Lesson 39 Nothing to worry about

不必担心

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

What was the difference between Bruce's behaviour and that of other people?

The rough road across the plain soon became so bad that we tried to get Bruce to drive back to the village we had come from. Even though the road was littered with boulders and pitted with holes, Bruce was not in the least perturbed. Glancing at his map, he informed us that the next village was a mere twenty miles away. It was not that Bruce always underestimated difficulties.

He simply had no sense of danger at all. No matter what the conditions were, he believed that a car should be driven as fast as it could possibly go.

As we bumped over the dusty track, we swerved to avoid large boulders. The wheels scooped up stones which hammered ominously under the car. We felt sure that sooner or later a stone would rip a hole in our petrol tank or damage the engine. Because of this, we kept looking back, wondering if we were leaving a trail of oil and petrol behind us.

What a relief it was when the boulders suddenly disappeared, giving way to a stretch of plain where the only obstacles were clumps of bushes. But there was worse to come. Just ahead of us there was a huge fissure. In response to renewed pleadings, Bruce stopped. Though we all got out to examine the fissure, he remained in the car. We informed him that the fissure extended for fifty yards and was two feet wide and four feet deep. Even this had no effect. Bruce went into a low gear and drove at a terrifying speed, keeping the front wheels

astride the crack as he followed its zig-zag course. Before we had time to worry about what might happen, we were back on the plain again. Bruce consulted the map once more and told us that the village was now only fifteen miles away. Our next obstacle was a shallow pool of water about half a mile across. Bruce charged at it, but in the middle, the car came to a grinding halt. A yellow light on the dash-board flashed angrily and Bruce cheerfully announced that there was no oil in the engine!

参考译文

穿越平原的道路高低不平，开车走了不远，路面愈加崎岖。我们想劝说布鲁斯把车开回我们出发的那个村庄去。尽管路面布满石头，坑坑洼洼，但布鲁斯却一点儿不慌乱。他瞥了一眼地图，告诉我们前面再走不到 20 英里就是一个村庄。这并不是说布鲁斯总是低估困难，而是他压根儿没有一点儿危险感。他认为不管路面情况如何，车必须以最高速度前进。

我们在尘土飞扬的道路上颠簸，车子东拐西弯，以躲开那些大圆石。车轮搅起的石块锤击车身，发出不祥的锤击声。我们想念迟早会飞起一个石块把油箱砸开一个窟窿，或者把发动机砸坏。因此，我们不时地掉过头，怀疑车后是否留下了机油和汽油的痕迹。

突然大石块不见了，前面是一片平地，唯一的障碍只有一簇簇灌木丛。这使我们长长地松了口气。但是更糟糕的事情在等着我们，离我们不远处，出现一个大裂缝。我们再次央求布鲁斯小心，他这才把车停了下来。我们纷纷下车察看那个大裂缝，他却呆在车上。我们告诉他那个大裂缝长 50 码，宽 2 英尺，深 4 英尺。这也没有对他产生任何影响。布鲁斯挂上慢档，把两只前轮分别搁在裂缝的两边，顺着弯弯曲曲的裂缝，以发疯的速度向前开去。我们还未来得及担心后果，车已重新开上了平地。布鲁斯又看了一眼地图，告诉我们那座村庄离我们只有 15 英里了。下一个障碍是一片约半英里宽的浅水塘。布鲁斯向水塘冲去，但车开到水塘当中，嘎吱一声停住了。仪表盘一盏黄灯闪着刺眼的光芒，布鲁斯兴致勃勃地宣布发动机里没油了！

【课文讲解】

Nothing to worry about

get sb. to do sth.: persuade / advise sb. to do

Please get them to finish the work as quickly as possible.

Please get him to give up smoking.

be littered with

be pitted with

even though: even if

not in the least= not at all / not a bit/ not the least bit 一点也不

not a little = very much

by no means= in no way =on no account
=at no times= under no circumstances 绝不

a mere==only (必须和不定冠词搭配)

It was not (to say)…… 这并不是说

dusty track==dusty road

L39-03 end 9'04"

L39-04 begin 9'25"

look back 回头看

wondering 从句做伴随状况状语

How relieved we were

give way to 为……所代替

Eg: The great clouds gradually broke up and give way to blue sky.

He has no intention of iving way to your demands.

in response to : in reaction to

本课优秀结构: Before we had time to worry about what might happen, we were back on the plain again.

hardly ... when...

He had hardly had time to settle down when he sold the house.

Before he had hardly had time to worry about what might happen when we were back on the plane again.

L39-04 end 9'25"

L39-05 begin

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 Why were the passengers so relieved when the boulders disappeared?

a. Bruce could now drive even faster.

b. They had covered the greater part of the distance to the village.

c. It seemed less likely that they would meet with disaster.

d. They had seen the huge fissure that lay ahead of them.

2 When they reached the fissure, Bruce stopped the car because _____ .

a. the passengers had begged him to do so

b. he wanted to know the exact dimensions of the fissure

c. he thought it was safer to drive across it without the passengers
d. he was not sure whether the car was wide enough to bridge it
In response to renewed pleadings, Bruce stopped.

3 Bruce's reaction to the final episode shows that ____.

a. he was not the sort of person to be perturbed by anything

b. he was extremely brave in face of danger
c. he had underestimated the depth of the pool

d. when it came to crossing water, his driving was not good enough

(背熟)

Structure

4 He believed ____ a car as fast as it could possibly go. (II.7-8)

a. driving in b. he would drive c. to drive d. in driving

believe sb. / sth. that / in

5 ____ when the boulders suddenly disappeared. (I.13)

a. How relieved we felt b. What a relief we were feeling

c. So relieved we felt d. How we felt relieved

what 感叹句的主体词是名词; how 感叹句的主体词是形容词。

6 Bruce ____ when the car came to a grinding halt. (I.21)

a. had charged through it midway b. charged through it to the middle

c. charged midway through it d. was in the middle of charging through it

(L39-05_40-01 13'21") [Lesson 40 21:36]

§ Lesson 40 Who's who 真假难辨

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- hoax n. 骗局, 戏弄
- deception n. 欺骗, 骗局
- self-respecting adj. 自重的
- indulge v. 使沉迷
- pneumatic adj. 气动的
- drill n. 钻
- silly adj. 无意义的, 无聊的
- advance adj. 预先的, 事先获得的
- archway n. 拱形门楼
- remonstrate v. 规劝, 告诫
- ironically adv. 讽刺地
- permission n. 许可

7 Bruce cheerfully announced that the engine ____ out of oil. (I.22)

a. ran b. had run c. was running d. has run

run out of

Vocabulary

8 Glancing at his map, he informed us that the next village was ____ twenty miles away. (II.4-5)

a. simply b. boringly c. only d. in significantly

9 ---- where nothing could ____ but clumps of trees. (II.13-14)

a. hinder our progress b. spoil our course
c. hold up our train d. harm our way

hinder == obstacle

10 When we pleaded ____, Bruce stopped. (I.15)

a. afresh b. aloud c. repeatedly d. forcibly

11 He said: 'It's fifteen miles ____ the village.' (II.19-20)

a. until b. to c. from d. before

12 ---- obstacle was a shallow pool of water half a mile _____. (II.20-21)

a. side by side b. from top to bottom c. from side to side d. up and down

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. C 2. A 3. A 4. D 5. A 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. C 11. B 12. C

L39-05 5'18" [Lesson 39 35:42]

●grant

v. 同意, 准予

■hoax n. 骗局, 戏弄

play a hoax on sb. 戏弄某人

play a trick on sb. 戏弄某人

play a joke on sb. 开某人玩笑

Eg: The boy student is thinking how to play a hoax on his classmate.

■deception n. 欺骗, 骗局

deception 无关紧要的骗局, 并不是故意的欺骗

Eg: She referred to the pills as sweet, so the harmless deception made it easy for her child to take them.

deceit (故意的) 欺骗

Eg: We are incapable of deceit.

fraud 对公众的欺骗行为, 多指官方的欺骗或财政舞弊

弊

trickery 欺骗 (语气上严厉), 着重有步骤地诡计来谋取私利。

Eg: He had gained control of the company by trickery.

■self-respecting adj. 自重的

■indulge v. 使沉迷

indulge oneself in sth. 沉迷于…… == be indulged in

Eg: He indulged himself in smoking and drinking.

=He was indulged in smoking and drinking.

v. 纵容

Eg: She indulges her only son.

■pneumatic adj. 气动的

■drill n. 钻

■silly adj. 无意义的, 无聊的

foolish 强调愚蠢的, 笨的, 不明智的

Eg: I remonstrated him not to do anything foolish.

silly 无意义的, 无聊的, 无知的

Eg: Being called silly is not compliment.

Don't play such a silly hoax.

stupid 人及言行缺乏良好的判断力, 天生的迟钝

Eg: His son is as stupid as all.

dull 迟钝的

Eg: the old man's hearing has become dull.

She is a dull girl.

■advance adj. 预先的, 事先获得的
advance information / in advance

■archway n. 拱形门楼

■remonstrate v. 规劝, 告诫

remonstrate sb to do sth 规劝某人做某事

■ironically adv. 讽刺地

■permission n. 许可

■grant v. 同意, 准予

ask sb. for permission 请求许可

give / grant sb. permission 准予许可

【Text】

§ Lesson 40 Who's who 真假难辨

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

How did the policeman discover that the whole thing was a joke?

It has never been explained why university students seem to enjoy practical jokes more than anyone else. Students specialize in a particular type of practical joke: the hoax. Inviting the fire brigade to put out a nonexistent fire is a crude form of deception

which no self-respecting student would ever indulge in. Students often create amusing situations which are funny to everyone except the victims.

When a student recently saw two workmen using a pneumatic drill outside his university, he immediately telephoned the police and informed them that two students dressed up as workmen were tearing up the road with a pneumatic drill. As soon as he had hung up, he went over to the workmen and told them that if a policeman ordered them to go away, they were not to take him seriously. He added that a student had dressed up as a policeman and was playing all sorts of silly jokes on people. Both the police and the workmen were grateful to the student for this piece of advance information.

The student hid in an archway nearby where he could watch and hear everything that went on. Sure enough, a policeman arrived on the scene and politely asked the workmen to go away. When he received a very rude reply from one of the workmen, he threatened to remove them by force. The workmen told him to do as he pleased and the policeman telephoned for help. Shortly afterwards, four more policemen arrived and remonstrated with the workmen. As the men refused to stop working, the police attempted to seize the pneumatic drill. The workmen struggled fiercely and one of them lost his temper. He threatened to call the police. At this, the police pointed out ironically that this would hardly be necessary as the men were already under arrest. Pretending to speak seriously, one of the workmen asked if he might make a telephone call before being taken to the station. Permission was granted and a policeman accompanied him to a pay phone. Only when he saw that the man was actually telephoning the police did he realize that they had all been the victims of a hoax.

参考译文

谁也弄不清为什么大学生好像比任何人都更喜欢恶作剧。大学生擅长一种特殊的恶作剧——戏弄人。请消防队来扑灭一场根本没有的大火是一种低级骗局, 有自尊心的大学生决不会去做。大学生们常常做的是制造一种可笑的局面, 使大家笑上一场, 当然受害者是笑不出来的。

最近有个学生看见两个工人在学校门外用风钻干活, 马上打电话报告警察, 说有两个学生装扮成工人, 正在用风钻破坏路面。挂上电话后, 他又马上来到工人那儿, 告诉他们若有个警察来让他们走开, 不要把他当回事, 还对工人说, 有个学生常装扮成警察无聊地同别人开玩笑。警察与工人都对那个学生事先

通报情况表示感谢。

那个学生躲在附近一拱形的门廊里，在那儿可以看见、听到现场发生的一切。果然，警察来了，不礼貌地请工人离开此地；但其中一个工人粗鲁地回了几句。于是警察威胁要强行使他们离开。工人说，悉听尊便。警察去打电话叫人。一会儿工夫，又来了4个警察，规劝工人离开。由于工人拒绝停下手中的活，警察想夺风钻。两个工人奋力抗争，其中一个发了火，威胁说要去叫警察。警察听后讥讽地说，这大可不必，因为他俩已被逮捕了。其中一个工人装模作样地问道，在被带往警察局之前，是否可以打一个电话。警察同意了，陪他来到一个投币地电话前，当他看到那个工人真的是给警察挂电话，才恍然大悟，原来他们都成一场骗局的受害者。

【课文讲解】

Key structure

背熟 1: **It has never been explained why university students seem to enjoy practical jokes more than anyone else.**

Eg: It has never been explained why he seems to enjoy doing it.

specialize in. 专门研究

Eg: He specialized in biology after graduation.

背熟 2: **Inviting the fire brigade to put out a nonexistent fire is a crude form of deception which no self-respecting student would ever indulge in.**

except the victims / but the victims

tear up == destroy

take sb seriously 严肃对待

be to do 结构含义:

1. should

Eg: Such a private thing should be avoided.

Such a private thing is to be avoided

2. must

Eg: No students must leave school without the permission of the police.

No students are to leave school without the permission of the police.

3. intend 意图，打算

Eg: We intend to start work next week.

We are to start work next week.

L40-01 end 18'45"

L40-02 begin 10'19"

背熟 4: **Both the police and the workmen were grateful to the student for this piece of advance information.**

be grateful to sb. for sth.

that went on == that happened

背熟 5: **he threatened to remove them by force.**

背熟 6: **The workmen told him to do as he pleased and the policeman telephoned for help.**

as he pleased 随他的意愿做

four more == another four

as this 听到

At the words, he got angry.

With the words, he left the room angrily.

背熟 7: **At this, the police pointed out ironically that this would hardly be necessary as the men were already under arrest.**

pointed out ironically 讽刺地指出

hardly be necessary 大可不必

under 与名词搭配表示一种被动的概念

under discussion / arrest / repair

背熟 8: **Pretending to speak seriously, one of the workmen asked if he might make a telephone call before being taken to the station.**

make a telephone call 打一个电话

背熟 9: **Permission was granted and a policeman accompanied him to a pay phone.**

only 引导的时间状语从句或介词短语，以及条件状语从句在句首时，句子要倒装。

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 A good hoax is a joke which depends on _____.

a. deceiving people into behaving in a way which amuses everyone but themselves

b. doing something like calling the fire bridge to a nonexistent fire

c. at least two parties being led to believe the other is fraudulent

d. people disguising themselves to look like other people

deceive sb. into doing sth.

2 When the policeman first arrived outside the university _____.

a. the student hid in an archway to see what happened next

b. he told the workmen if they disobeyed him he would call four policemen

c. the workmen refused to take his request that they should move seriously

d. he was polite to the workmen as he had expected them to be students
They didn't take the police seriously

3 When did it become clear to the police that the workmen were not students?
a. when one of the workmen angrily said he was going to call the police.
b. Not until one of the workmen asked if he could telephone the police.
c. When the policeman saw whom the workman was ringing from the pay phone.
d. Only after they had arrested the workmen and taken them to the station.

下面几题未讲

Structure

4 ---- Why students seem _____ practical jokes than anyone else. (II.1-2)
a. entertained by more b. to have been entertained more by
c. more to be entertained by d. to be more entertained by

5 ---- and told them that _____ order them to go away they were not to take them seriously. (II.10-11)
a. should the police b. the police might
c. if the policeman did d. was a policeman to

6 ---- were grateful to the student for _____ in advance. (I.12)
a. they had been informed this b. having informed them this
c. being informed of this d. informing them of this

7 The workmen told him to do _____ ... (II.15-16)
a. as it pleased him b. how he pleased
c. as he pleased d. that pleased him

8 Only then _____ that it had been a trick. (II.22-23)
a. he realized b. he understood c. did he realize d. he did realize

Vocabulary

9 ---- a student had dressed up as a policeman and was amusing himself _____. (II.1-12)
a. by joking with people b. at other people's expense
c. by making fun of people d. to other people's surprise

10 when he received a very _____ from one of the workmen ... (II.14-15)

a. impolite retort b. harsh response c. rough report d. sharp return

11 Four more policemen arrived to protest _____ the workmen's behaviour. (II.16-17)
a. with b. for c. to d. against

12 The police attempted to _____ the pneumatic drill. (II.17-18)
a. get hold of b. keep hold of c. hold back d. hold on to

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. A 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. A 6. D 7. C 8. C 9. B 10. A 11. D 12. A

L40-02 8'14" [Lesson 40 21:36]

(L41-01 begin 10'14")

§ Lesson 41 Illusions of pastoral peace

宁静田园生活的遐想

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

- illusion n. 幻想, 错觉
- pastoral adj. 田园的
- breed v. 培育
- rapture n. 欣喜
- extol v. 赞美, 颂扬
- superior adj. 优越的
- cockcrow n. 鸡叫
- twitter v. (鸟) 吱吱叫, 嘁嘁喳喳叫
- glint v. 闪烁
- pasture n. 牧场
- idyllic adj. 田园诗的
- virtually adv. 几乎; 差不多
- dubious adj. 可疑的, 怀疑的
- privilege n. 特权
- misery n. 苦难
- acquaintance n. 熟人
- treat n. 难得的乐事, 享受
- dweller n. 居住者
- stagger v. 摇晃; 蹒跚
- exotic adj. 寻乎寻常的, 外来的
- glow n. 白炽光
- descend v. 下落, 降临
- tuck v. 缩进, 隐藏
- **obstinately adv. 固执地, 顽固地**

◆ illusion n. 幻想, 错觉
under illusion that / under the impression that

I am under the impression that you are honest.

We live under the illusion.

I am under the impression that he will help me every day.

under no illusion that

We live under no illusion that country life is beautiful.

have illusion about / have no illusion about

delusion 幻觉, (精神病人)

Eg: He is under the delusion that somebody will kill him tomorrow.

He lives under the delusion that he will be killed sometime.

vision 憧憬

Eg: I live under the vision that I have a bright future.

illusioned adj. 充满幻想的

Eg: The world of children is illusioned.

illusionary adj. 错觉的, 幻觉的

Eg: Don't believe in him. What he said is illusionary picture.

illusive adj. 虚假的, 不可靠的

Eg: What he described was illusive. Don't depend on him any more.

imaginary

imaging

Eg: I can't imagine building Great Wall.

imaginary 虚构的

Eg: The story is imaginary, Don't be taken in.

L41-01 end 10'14"

L41-02 begin 18'32"

imaginary

The story is imaginary. Don't be taken in.

imaginative 富有想像力的

Children are more imaginative than adults.

unimaginative 缺乏想像力的

imaginable 能想像得出的, (须放在被修饰词之后)

This is the idea / way imaginable.

imaginary / imaginative / imaginable / unimaginative

We are imaginative

illusionary / imaginary 虚构的

◆pastoral adj. 田园的

◆breed v. 培育

vt. breed / bred / bred

breed / raise / bring up / rear

raise / breed pets

raise / breed dogs.

Do you raise dogs?

educate

As a mother, you must breed good manners into your child.

rear 抚养,

I must rear the child because I have the duty.

He rears / breeds / raises two dogs.

grow / plant tree

cause / lead / result in / give rise to

War breeds misery and ruin. 战争导致毁灭和悲

惨。

Your carelessness bred the accident

breed in and in 近亲结婚, 同种繁殖

breed out and out 非近亲结婚, 异种繁殖

breed / raise / bring up / cause

◆rapture n. 欣喜

great joy / delight

At the news, they are in raptures.

At the news, they are great delighted.

in raptures(about/ over sth.) (对……) 欣喜若狂

I am in raptures about the new book.

go into raptures(over/ about/ at sth.) (对……)感到非常的高兴!

He went into raptures when he heard the good news.

joy / happiness

We have a good time and we are full of happiness.

delight 高兴, 喜悦, 程度强于 joy, 但不如 rapture, 也不如 rapture 那么正式,

I feel delighted == I am in raptures

ecstasy 入迷; 狂喜

He is in ecstasy.

enchant v. enchantment 入迷,

He was enchanted in thoughts.

elation 兴高采烈; 得意洋洋

He has got the feeling of elation.

bliss 极乐; 无尚的幸福

Nothing in the world can make you happier than bliss.

A sound sleep is my bliss

glee 欢乐, 高兴, 欢心 (诗歌中)

rapture / in raptures / go into raptures / joy / happiness / delight / ecstasy / enchantment / elation / bliss / glee

◆◆◆extol v. 赞美, 颂扬

vt. praise

I can't find a good word to praise you / your ability.

I want to extol the virtues of human beings.

L41-02 end 18'32"

L41-03 begin 19'28"

compliment v. & n. 恭维

Do you often compliment ...?

exalt 赞扬, 歌颂, 吹捧

You disgust me. why do you extol such a stupid person.

laud 赞美

I want to do nothing but laud you.

What do you want to laud me?

I want to laud your beauty, ability and your

wealth.

extol / praise / compliment / exalt / laud

◆superior adj. 优越的

better than the average

无比较级和最高级

be superior to 比…优越

In my opinion, town life is superior to country life.

inferior

be inferior to 比…低, 不如…

Country life is superior to city life

superior / inferior

senior

senior high school

junior

The word is basic

junior high school

senior /junior

posterior / prior 后于/ 先于

This work is prior to that one.

of no confidence / importance / significance

It should be inferior to that one.

superior / inferior / senior / junior / posterior / prior

be prior to

◆cockcrow n. 鸡叫

◆twitter v. (鸟) 吱吱叫, 嘁嘁喳喳叫

◆glint v. 闪烁

shine / flash / glitter

flash 表示忽明忽暗的闪光, 也可以指反光镜反射出来的光线

Eg: A lighthouse is flashing in the distance.

glim 表示透过某种媒介而透出来的光线, 比如透过茫茫大雾的光芒

Eg: Through the fog, we saw a lighthouse glimmering.

glint 表示迅速闪烁的微弱的光, 比如阳光下闪烁的露水光

Eg: The sun glinted through the leaves.

glisten 潮湿的物体上所反射的光泽, 或是柔弱的光辉

Eg: The white snow glistened in all the colors of rainbow.

flicker 表示蜡烛或油灯在即将熄灭时所发出的摇曳的光

Eg: On the cold night, I sat in front of the only one candle which was flickering.

flash / glim / glint / glisten / flicker

◆pasture n. 牧场

◆idyllic adj. 田园诗的

He is leading an idyllic life

◆virtually adv. 几乎; 差不多

◆dubious adj. 可疑的, 怀疑的

doubtful / uncertain / questionable / suspicious / sceptical

dubious

be dubious about/of 对…怀疑, 对…不肯定, 主要表示不肯定的, 不确定的

doubt / suspect

Eg: I suspect that he stole the car last night. 语气较肯定的猜疑

I doubt whether he stole the car. 语气不太肯定

L41-03 end 19'28"

L41-04 begin 18'14"

suspicious / doubtful

Cats are suspicious of human beings.

I am not sure about your ability to do so.

I am doubtful of your ability.

I am dubious about your ability.

questionable 强调质疑, 有问题的, 值得争议的

This is a questionable conclusion / decision.

sceptical 怀疑论的, 怀疑的 (正式用法)

suspicious

Your idea is sceptical.

dubious / dubious about (of) / doubtful / uncertain / suspicious / sceptical / questionable

◆privilege n. 特权

◆misery n. 苦难

◆acquaintance n. 熟人

◆treat n. 难得的乐事, 享受

be one's treat

1. …请客 == sb. stand treat

Eg: Let's go to have dinner. It's my treat

treat sb. to

take sb. to dinner

Eg: It's my pleasure to take you to dinner.

stand treat

I stand treat 我作东。

2. 对待

treat sb. as

I treat him as my best friend.

treat with sb. 跟某人商谈

I can't bring it to a conclusion. I want to

treat with you.

treat of sth. / sb. ==speak of

We speak / treat of tramps contemptuously.

2. 荣幸, 享受

Eg: Having dinner with you is my treat.

treat sb. to 宴请某人…

Eg: It's my pleasure to treat you to dinner.

treat sb as 按…对待某人

Eg: I treat him as my best friend.

treat with sb. 跟某人商谈

Eg I can't bring it to a conclusion. I want to treat with you.

treat of sth./sb. 关于..., 提及到..., = speak of

Eg: We treat of tramps contemptuously.

◆ dweller n. 居住者

◆ stagger v. 摇晃; 蹒跚

◆ exotic adj. 寻乎寻常的, 外来的

◆ glow n. 白炽光

◆ descend v. 下落, 降临

Eg: darkness descends very soon because winter is coming.

descend from 从 传下来

Eg: The watch descended from his grandfather.

descend on / upon 突然袭击,

He visited me suddenly.

He looked me up suddenly.

He called on me suddenly.

Yesterday, my best friend descended on me.

descend to 传给.....

descend from...to

descend / descend from / descend to /
descend on / descend upon
drop

I dropped the glass onto the floor.

ascend ant.

The aeroplane is ascending at tremendous speed.

◆ tuck v. 缩进, 隐藏

◆ **obstinately adv.** 固执地, 顽固地

obstinate adj. 顽固而不易被别人所改变

Eg: If you are an obstinate person, nobody can change your mind.

stubborn 倔强

Eg: He is such a stubborn person that he insists on finishing what he wants to do. Don't try to persuade him because he is an obstinate person.

persistent

persist

Eg: If you always follow your friends around, I should say, you are a persist person.

strong minded 顽强的, 意志力强

Eg: If you are a strong minded person, you can do everything well.

obstinate / stubborn

as stubborn as mule 像牛一样倔强 (骡子)

【Text】

§ Lesson 41 Illusions of pastoral peace

宁静田园生活的遐想

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

听录音, 然后回答以下问题。

What particular anxiety spoils the country dweller's visit to the theatre?

The quiet life of the country has never appealed to me. City born and city bred. I have always regarded the country as something you look at through a train window, or something you occasional visit

5 during the weekend. Most of my friends live in the city, yet they always go into raptures at the mere mention of the country. Though they extol the virtues of the peaceful life, only one of them has ever gone to live in the country and he was back in town within six

10 months. Even he still lives under the illusion that country life is somehow superior to town life. He is forever talking about the friendly people, the clean atmosphere, the closeness to nature and the gentle pace of living. Nothing can be compared, he

15 maintains, with the first cockcrow, the twittering of birds at dawn, the sight of the rising sun glinting on the trees and pastures. This idyllic pastoral scene is only part of the picture. My friend fails to mention the long and friendless winter evenings in front of the

20 TV -- virtually the only form of entertainment. He says nothing about the poor selection of goods in the shops, or about those unfortunate people who have to travel from the country to the city every day to get to work. Why people are prepared to tolerate a four-hour journey each day for the

25 dubious privilege of living in the country is beyond me. They could be saved so much misery and expense if they chose to live in the city where they rightly belong.

30 If you can do without the few pastoral pleasures of the country, you will find the city can provide you with the best that life can offer. You never have to travel miles to see your friends. They invariably live nearby and are always available for an informal chat or an evening's entertainment. Some of my acquaintances in the country come up to town once or twice a year to visit the theatre as a special treat. For them this is a major operation which involves considerable planning. As the play draws to its close, they wonder whether they will ever catch that last train home. The city dweller never experiences anxieties of this sort. The latest exhibitions, films, or plays are only a short bus ride away. Shopping, too, is always a pleasure. The latest exhibitions, films, or plays are only a short bus ride away.

Shopping, too, is always a pleasure. There is so much variety that you never have to make do with second best. Country people run wild when they go shopping in the city and stagger home loaded with as many of the exotic items as they can carry. Nor is the city without its moments of beauty. There is something comforting about the warm glow shed by advertisements on cold wet winter nights. Few things could be more impressive than the peace that descends on deserted city streets at weekends when the thousands that travel to work every day are tucked away in their homes in the country. It has always been a mystery to me who city dwellers, who appreciate all these things, obstinately pretend that they would prefer to live in the country.

【参考译文】

宁静的乡村生活从来没有吸引过我。我生在城市，长在城市，总认为乡村是透过火车车窗看到的那个样了，或偶尔周末去游玩一下景象。我的许多朋友都住在城市，但他们只要一提起乡村，马上就会变得欣喜若狂。尽管他们都交口称赞宁静的乡村生活的种种优点，但其中只有一个人真去农村住过，而且不足6个月就回来了。即使他也仍存有幻觉，好像乡村生活就是比城市生活优越。他滔滔不绝地大谈友好的农民，洁净的空气，贴近大自然的环境和悠闲的生活节奏。他坚持认为，凌晨雄鸡第一声啼叫，黎明时分小鸟吱喳欢叫，冉冉升起的朝阳染红树木、牧场，此番美景无与伦比。但这种田园诗般的乡村风光仅仅是一个侧面。我的朋友没有提到在电视机前度过的漫长寂寞的冬夜——电视是唯一的娱乐形式。他也不说商店货物品种单调，以及那些每天不得不从乡下赶到城里工作的不幸的人们。人们为什么情愿每天在路上奔波4个小时去换取值得怀疑的乡间的优点，我是无法理解的。要是他们愿意住在本来属于他们的城市，则可以让

5 如果你愿舍弃乡下生活那一点点乐趣的话，那么你会发出城市可以为你提供生活最美好的东西。你看朋友根本不用跋涉好几英里，因为他们都住在附近，你随时可以同他们聊天或在晚上一起娱乐。我在乡村有一些熟人，他们每年进城来看一回或几回戏，并把此看作一种特殊的享受。看戏在他们是件大事，需要精心计划。当戏快演完时，他们又为是否能赶上末班火车回家而犯愁。这种焦虑，城里人是从未体验过的。坐公共汽车几站路，就可看到最新的展览、电影、戏剧。买东西也是一种乐趣。物品种类繁多，从来不必用二等品来凑合。乡里人进城采购欣喜若狂，每次回家时都买足了外来商品，直到拿不动方才罢休，连走路都摇摇晃晃的。城市也并非没有良辰美景。寒冷潮湿的冬夜里，广告灯箱发出的暖光，会给人某种安慰。周末，当成千上万进城上班的人回到他们的乡间寓所之后，空旷的街市笼罩着一种宁静气氛，没有什么能比此时的宁静更令人难忘了。城里人对这一切

心里很明白，却偏要执拗地装出他们喜欢住在乡村的样子，这对我来说一直是个谜。

【课文讲解】

背熟：The quiet life of the country has never appealed to me.

组织一篇议论文主要有三段：

- 1 开头段
- 2 支持段
- 3 结尾段

在开头段第一句话或最后一句话说出主题。

city born and city bred == as O was born and bred in a city 独立主格结构

regard as

think of ...as / refer to ...as

L41-04 end 18'14"

L41-05 begin 18'11"

go into raptures 变得欣喜若狂起来

背熟：Most of my friends live in the city, yet they always go into raptures at the mere mention of the country.

at the mere mention of 一提到

at the sight of 一看到

at the touch of 一触及到

at the news of 一听到

at the sound of 一听到

at the mention of 一提到

exalt / laud

hypocritical 虚伪

The country life never appeals to me, and never appeals to others, either.

I love English. Everyday, I got up very early to read outside in my garden. That is my treat.

keep on doing sth.

背熟：Even he still lives under the illusion that country life is somehow superior to town life.

under the illusion that

live under the illusion that

Country life is somehow superior to town life.

the life of the country (第一次提到)

the country (第二次提到)

country life (第三次提到)

Every picture has got two sides. 凡事都有两方面

背熟：This idyllic pastoral scene is only part of the picture.

对比法

fails to mention == says nothing about 没有提到……

City life appeals to me. City life is superior to country life.

L41-05 end 18'11"

L41-06 begin 14'38"

City life appeals to me. City life is superior to country life.

fails to mention == says nothing about 没有提到……

背熟：**Why people are prepared to tolerate a four-hour journey each day for the dubious privilege of living in the country is beyond me.**

be beyond me = is beyond my understanding …是我无法理解的

stand / bear / put up with / endure / tolerate

privilege: advantage

dubious : doubtful / uncertain

Country life never appeals to me.

背熟：**If you can do without the few pastoral pleasures of the country, you will find the city can provide you with the best that life can offer.**

There are advantages of living in the country, but there are few advantages living in the country than living in the big city.

背熟：**There is so much variety that you never have to make do with second best.**
never have to == need not == don't have to do without
make do with 凑合着用

do without / manage without / go without 没有……也行

I can do / manage without a car.

available : able to be used anytime 随时可以应用的

主语做表语或定语，做定语时要放在被修饰词的后边。

I am available to have a chat with you.

The books in our classroom are available for you.

be available for sb.

I have a dictionary available for you.

L41-06 end 14'38"

L41-07 begin 15'09"

inconvenience of living in the country

major : great / demanding

draw to its close = near its end 临近结束 / 尾声

背熟：**The city dweller never experiences anxieties of this sort.**

We can keep ourselves free from the anxieties of this sort which afflict the country dweller.

Eating food with different tastes is also a pleasure.

run wild 发疯

背熟：**Country people run wild when they go shopping in the city and stagger home loaded with as many of the necessities of life as they can carry.**

nor ... without 双重否定

The city has got its own beauty.

Don't shed blood

deserted : empty

all these things: all the pleasures of the city / all the advantages of living in the city
There are fewer advantages of the country than in the city.

There are more disadvantages of the country than those of the city.

L41-07 end 15'09"

L41-08 begin 12'30"

【Vocabulary】P194

Explain the meanings of the following words and phrases as they are used in the passage:

extol the virtues(l.6); illusion (l.7); superior to (l.8); maintains (l.9); glinting (l.10); tolerate (l.14); beyond me (l.15)

extol the virtues

extol = praise highly

praise 比 extol 的语义要弱得多

virtue 美德 = advantage

illusion 幻觉, 错觉 = false idea

superior 比.....有优势, ==better than

maintain == hold

glinting 闪烁 = glisten

tolerate 忍受 == endure, bear, stand, put up with, suffer without complaining

beyond me == can not be understood by me
beyond my understanding

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 What is the main difference between the writer and most of his friends?

- a. they often visit the country but he has only spent one weekend there.
- b. Unlike them, being brought up in the city, he can appreciate its worth.
- c. In contrast to them, he finds city people friendlier than country people.
- d. **He thinks them hypocritical to maintain a preference for country life.**

背熟 D 选项

think sb. hypocritical 认为某人很虚伪

maintain a preference for sth. 坚持一种想法

2 **What advantage has the city dweller over the country dweller in terms of entertainment?** (背熟)

- a. He can entertain his country friends more often than they can him.
- b. His choice of entertainment is wide and within easy reach of him.
- c. As he travels by bus and not by train, he can see the latest plays.
- d. He does not need a major operation when planning a visit to the theatre.

in terms of

have advantage over sb./ sth. 比更具有优势

背熟

within easy reach of sb. 方便, 容易达到

3 When he speaks of the beauty to be found in the city, the writer _____.

- a. alludes to the comparative cheerlessness of winter nights in the country
- b. means that if more people settled in the city they would find peace
- c. advertises the fact that the city is a warmer place than the country
- d. implies that the country is less peaceful than the city at weekends

背熟

allude to = mean

Structure

4 I _____ and bred in the city and have always regarded ... (II.1-2)

- a. being born
- b. had been born
- c. was born
- d. am born

5 He _____ talking about the friendly people ... (II.8-9)

- a. never tires of
- b. is never tiring of
- c. is never tired
- d. is never tiring when tired of 厌倦

never 频度副词, 表示情况总是如此

I am tired of doing so. 我已经厌倦了这么做。

6 The latest exhibitions, films or plays are only _____ .(I.23)

- a. by bus a short distance away
- b. a short distance by bus away
- c. a short distance away by bus
- d. the distance of a short bus away

on only short bus right away 只有几站路的路程

7 ---- **and stagger home loaded with _____ exotic items as they can carry.** (II.25-26)

- a. as many of the
- b. as many
- c. so many
- d. the most

L41-08 end 12'30"

L41-09 begin 7'03"

many of the 许多物品中的许多

You can take as many as you like. 你可以拿走你喜欢的东西。

You can take as many books as you can. 这些书籍你想拿多小就拿多少。

8 I have always been mystified _____ city dwells, who ... (II.29-30)

- a. why
- b. by the fact that
- c. for what
- d. with

It has been a mystery to me.

be mystified by 被.....所迷惑, 被..... 所困扰

be frightened by 被.....所吓着

Vocabulary

9 _____ the only form of entertainment. (I.12)

- a. pretty well
- b. altogether
- c. certainly
- d. in particular

原文: virtually 几乎, ==almost, nearly

certainly 肯定的, 当然的

altogether 总共, 完全

in particular = particularly 特别, 尤其是

pretty well 相当不错, 相当好(AE), almost (BE)

10 If you can _____ without the few pastoral pleasures of the country ... (I.17)
a. make b. manage c. succeed d. pass
10. do without, go without, manage without

11 As the play _____ ... (II.21-22)
a. reaches its climax b. nears its end c. ends its run d. draws the curtain
near its end 临近尾声 == draw to its close
reaches its climax 达到高潮

12 Few things can have such an _____ as the peace ... (II.27-28)

Lesson43 begin 1:17:43 Lesson43A begin 41:18 L43-01 begin 5'23"

§ Lesson 43 Fully Insured 全保险

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- insure v. 投保
- fete n. 游园会
- premium n. 保险费
- recover v. 使.....得到补偿, 弥补
- admittedly adv. 公认地
- purchase v. 买
- annual adj. 一年一度的
- teenager n. (13至19岁的) 青少年
- capsize v. (船) 翻
- shiver v. 打颤, 发抖
- dive v. (头向下) 跳水
- haul v. 拖曳
- hawser n. 粗缆绳
- rim n. (圆形物品的) 外沿, 边
- winch n. 绞车
- agonizing adj. 精神紧张的, 提心吊胆的
- perch v. 处于
- precariouly adv. 危险地, 不稳固地
- overbalance v. 失去平衡
- clamp n. 夹钳, 夹板
- vertically adv. 垂直地
- torrent n. 激流, 洪流
- rebound v. 弹回

◆insure v. 投保
insure == make a contract that promises to pay a sum of money in case of accident, damage, loss, etc.
insure sb/sth against 给...上保险以防...
insurance n.
insurance company 保险公司
assure 向.....保证, 使确信, 它的宾语一定是人。
I assure you that I'll bring you happiness. 我向你保证能给你带来幸福。
ensure v. 保证, 确保 宾语可以是物

a. impact b. imposition c. imprint d. impression
imposition 强人所难
impose v.
Don't impose your idea on me. 不要把你的想法强加给我。
imprint 印记, 印痕
give sb. a (deep) impression 给某人印象
have impact

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. B 11. B 12. A

L41-09 end 7'03"

Hard work can ensure our success.

guarantee 担保(指担保人的优秀品质, 视之某物的质量)

I can guarantee the watch for ten months.

L43-01 end 5'23"

L43-02 begin 12'34"

◆fete n. 游园会
◆premium n. 保险费
◆recover v. 使.....得到补偿, 弥补
recover vi 康复 recover from
recover vt. ==make up for, compensate for
Eg: Nothing can recover our health.
regain 经过努力而获得.....
regain one's courage 重新获得勇气
recover one's courage 恢复勇气
He regained / recovered his enthusiasm. 他又恢复了他的热情。
restore vt. 恢复健康, 恢复原状
He has been restored.
heal 治愈伤口
His wound has healed. 他的伤口已经痊愈了。

◆admittedly adv. 公认地
inevitably 不可避免地
Admittedly he is a great person.
admittedly == we are admitting that

◆purchase v. 买
buy vt.
purchase 比 buy 要正式, 主要用于书面语, 还可以是名词
Can you purchase freedom with money?
I need not remind you of that terrible tie you bought yesterday.(二册 L41)
purchase money 买进的价格
purchasing power 购买力
Not worth a day's purchase 危在旦夕
Eg: His life is not worth a day's purchase.

◆annual adj. 一年一度的

◆teenager n. (13 至 19 岁的) 青少年

◆capsize vi. (船) 翻

Eg: The ship capsized because of the rough wave.

◆shiver v. 打颤, 发抖

shiver == tremble

整体的颤抖用 shiver, 部分的用 tremble

Eg: His hands are trembling.

He is shivering with cold.

Eg: His trembling voice betrayed his secret.

他颤抖的声音泄漏了他的秘密。

Shudder 因为寒冷害怕的因素导致的全身抖动

◆dive v. (头向下) 跳水

◆haul v. 拖曳

haul == pull with effort our force 强调用力去拉

Eg: They hauled the boat up the beach.

pull 连续不断地拉 (应用范围最广泛)

L43-02 end 12'34"

L43-03 begin 11'46"

drag 拖拉(两者之间有摩擦力)

Eg: The stone was so heavy that I had to drag it into the room.

After a day's hard work, I dragged myself home. 工作了一天我拖着疲惫的身躯回了家

Drag oneself to 拖着疲惫的身躯去……

tug 强调飞快的拖拉

Tow 借助外力拖拉较大较重的物体

◆hawser n. 粗缆绳

◆rim n. (圆形物品的) 外沿, 边

◆winch n. 绞车

◆agonizing adj. 精神紧张的, 提心吊胆的

agonize v. 使精神紧张, 使极度痛苦

agonized 感到精神紧张

agony n. == great pain 极度痛苦

He couldn't carry out his resolution so he was so agony. 他不能实现他的坚定的决心而感到极度痛苦。

At the news he is in an agony of joy. 听到消息他感到极度的高兴。(agony 加强语气)

◆perch v. 处于(高处)

locate, situate 是正式用词, vt.

perch vi.

A bird perched on the branch of the tree for the moment.

perch on 栖息

The little village perches among the hills. 这个小山村高高地位于群山之中。

Knock sb off his perch 打败、击败

Eg: I knocked him off his perch yesterday.

come off one's perch 不再骄傲自大 = put your pride in your pocket.

put your pride in your pocket.

◆◆◆precariously adv. 危险地, 不稳固地

L43-03 end 11'46"

L43-04 begin 11'43"

Precarious = unsafe, unsteady, not firm 强调不安全, 不稳定, 不稳固而导致的危险

An actress's life would be too precarious for me. 不穩定

dangerous 危险的常用词

Eg: Playing with matches is dangerous.

hazardous 碰运气的, 冒险的 而导致的危险

Climbing the high mountain is hazardous.

adventurous 爱冒险的, 胆子很大的

perilous 语义程度比 dangerous 要高的多, 强调被伤害或被杀害的危险

Eg: It is perilous to do so. 这么做有可能会丢了性命。

◆overbalance v. 失去平衡

◆clamp n. 夹钳, 夹板

◆vertically adv. 垂直地

vertical adj.

反义词: horizontally 平行地

horizon 地平线

I draw a line vertically / horizontally.

◆torrent n. 激流, 洪流

torrent = rough wave

◆rebound v. 弹回

Eg: The ball is rebounded. 球被弹回来了。

【Text】

§ Lesson 43 Fully insured 全保险

Q: Who owned the pie dish and why?

Insurance companies are normally willing to insure anything. Insuring public or private property is a standard practice in most countries in the world. If, however, you were holding an open air garden party or a fete it would be equally possible to insure yourself in the event of bad weather. Needless to say, the bigger the risk an insurance company takes, the higher the premium you will have to pay. It is not uncommon to hear that a shipping company has made a claim for the cost of salvaging a sunken ship. But the claim made by a local authority to recover the cost of salvaging a sunken pie dish must surely be unique.

10 Admittedly it was an unusual pie dish, for it was eighteen feet long and six feet wide. It had been purchased by a local authority so that an enormous pie could be baked for an annual fair. The pie committee decided that the best way to transport the dish would be by canal, so they insured it for the trip. Shortly after it was launched, the pie committee went to a local inn to celebrate. At the same time, a number of teenagers climbed on to the dish and held a little party of their own. Dancing proved to be more than the dish could bear, for during the party it capsized and sank in seven feet of water.

15 The pie committee telephoned a local garage owner who arrived in a recovery truck to salvage the pie dish. Shivering in their wet clothes, the teenagers looked on while three men dived repeatedly into the water to locate the dish. They had little difficulty in finding it, but hauling it out of the water proved to be a serious problem. The sides of the dish were so smooth that it was almost impossible to attach hawsers and chains to the rim without damaging it. Eventually chains were fixed to one end of the dish and a powerful winch was put into operation. The dish rose to the surface and was gently drawn towards the canal bank. For one agonizing moment, the dish was perched precariously on the bank of the canal, but it suddenly overbalanced and slid back into the water. The men were now obliged to try once more. This time they fixed heavy metal clamps to both sides of the dish so that they could fasten the chains. The dish now had to be lifted vertically because one edge was resting against the side of the canal. The winch was again put into operation and one of the men started up the truck. Several minutes later, the dish was successfully hauled above the surface of the water. Water streamed in torrents over its sides with such force that it set up a huge wave in the canal. There was danger that the wave would rebound off the other side of the bank and send the dish plunging into the water again. By working at tremendous speed, the men managed to get the dish on to dry land before the wave returned.

参考译文

保险公司一般说来愿意承保一切东西。承办公共财产或私人财产保险是世界上大部分国家的正常业务。如果你要举办一次露天游园会或盛宴，为避免碰上不好的天气而遭受损失也同样可以保险，不用说，保险公司承担风险越大，你付的保险费也就越高。航

运公司为打捞沉船而提出索赔，这是常有的事，但某地当局为打捞一只焙制馅饼的盘子提出索赔，倒是件新鲜的事儿。

这个馅饼盘子确实少见，有 18 英尺长，6 英尺宽。某地方当局买下它用来焙制一个巨大的馅饼为一年一度交易会助兴。馅饼委员会确认运输这只盘子的最佳方案是通过运河水运。于是，他们对这只盘子的运输安全投了保。盘子下水后不久，馅饼委员会成员们来到当地一家小酒店庆贺。就在这个时候，许多十几岁的孩子爬盘子举行他们自己的集会。他们跳起了舞，盘子难以承受。舞会进行过程中，盘子倾覆，沉入了 7 英尺深的水中。

馅饼委员会给当地汽车修理库老板打电话，他闻讯后开着一辆急修车前来打捞盘子。那些孩子们穿着湿衣服哆嗦，看着 3 个工人轮潜入水中以确定盘子的位置。他们没费多大事儿就找到了盘子。可是把盘子捞出却是一个很大的难题。盘子四边十分光滑，要在盘边拴上绳索或链条而同时又不损坏它是很难办到的。不过，他们终于将链条固定在盘子的一端，一台大功率的绞车开动起来。盘子慢慢浮出水面，被轻轻地拽向运河岸边。在令人忐忑不安的瞬间，盘子晃悠悠地上了岸，但它突然失去了平衡，又跌回水中。工人们只得再来一次。这次，他们用沉重的金属夹子把盘子夹住，以便往盘子上安装铁链。这次，盘子必须垂直吊出水面，因为盘子的一边紧靠着运河河岸。绞盘机再次启动，一位工人发动了急修车的引擎。几分钟后，盘子被成功地拽出了水面。波浪从盘子两侧急涌而出，在运河里掀起一股大浪。但是当波浪从河对岸折回来时，就有再次把盘子拖进水里的危险。工人们动作迅速，终于赶在那股大浪返回之前把盘子拽到了岸上。

【课文讲解】

背熟: **Insurance companies are normally willing to insure anything.**

Eg: This practice is accepted and it is acceptable.

In the event of == in case of 以防万一; 如果发生; 倘若

L43-04 end 11'43"
Lesson43A end 41:18

Lesson43B begin 36:25
L43-05 begin 11'19"

In the event of being sick, you'd better not go to the party.

in the event that

You must work harder and harder in the event that you get the frustration.

In the event that you will get the frustration you must work harder and harder.

背熟: Needless to say, the bigger the risk an insurance company takes, the higher the premium you will have to pay.

Take the risk 冒险, 承担风险

背熟: It is not uncommon to hear that a shipping company has made a claim for the cost of salvaging a sunken ship.

双重否定:

1, Not + 否定 形容词 : Is not unreasonable

2, not + without I can't live without you

3, no + not/ no + no There is no cat that doesn't like fish

There is nothing he can't do.

There is no rule that has no exception / that doesn't have exception.

Make a claim 提出索赔要求

unique ==very much particular 独一无二

需要作出艰苦努力的自我约束: Self-discipline required a sedulous work.

to == in order to

From finding a right place to put the latest edition.

From finding the right place for us to put the latest edition.

L43-05 end 11'19"

L43-06 begin 12'55"

这是一项可以使你学好英语的计划。

This is a good plan for you in order to learn English well. (×)

This is a good plan for you to learn English well. (√)

the best way to do sth. 做某事的最好方法

progress 进展

背熟: Dancing proved to be more than the dish could bear, for during the party it capsized and sank in seven feet of water.

prove (to be)

The pie committee telephoned a local garage owner who arrived in a recovery truck to salvage the pie dish.

背熟: Shivering in their wet clothes, the teenagers looked on while three men dived repeatedly into the water to
Lesson44 begin 2:45:08 Lesson44A

locate the dish.

difficulty 不可数名词, 费力

可数名词, 各种困难的事情

have much difficulty 很费力

haul 从下往上拖

drag 平行的拖拉, 接触面的拖拉

L43-06 end 12'55"

L43-07 begin 12'20"

背熟: it was almost impossible to attach hawsers and chains to the rim without damaging it.

attach to

attach == tie 栓, 系

rim == the sides of the dish

Eventually == at last 语气比 at last 强烈得多,

终于: 强调失败的结果用 in the end 表示成功用 at last, eventually

eventually 重点强调经过努力而终于……

finally 只表示顺序的最后

put into operation = use

draw 表示连续不停地拉

背熟: For one agonizing moment, 在令人忐忑不安的瞬间

precariously == unsteady, unfirmly

be obliged to do == be forced to do

so that== in order that

lift 提起, 吊起, 由低到高的动作

背熟: There was danger that the wave would rebound off the other side of the bank and send the dish plunging into the water again.

send 造成, 使得, + v-ing (作宾语补足语)

什么使得你这么呢? What sent you doing so?

如果大浪从对岸折回来的话, 这个盘子就会重新落入水中。

pie dish would have been sent to water

If the huge wave had rebounded off the other side of the bank, it would have sent dish plunging into the water again.

manage to do == be able to do, succeed in doing

重点是第一自然段, 应该背熟。

L43-07 end 12'20" Lesson43B

end 36:25 Lesson43 end 1:17:43

begin 1:32:39 L44-01 begin

18'05"

§ **Lesson 44 Speed and comfort** 又快捷又舒适

If I ask you to write a composition about the advantage of travelling by air, what will you illustrate, how will you arrange your composition?

refer to L41

1. offer your topic of the advantage of travelling by air.

2. 通过对比法

3. State your view

要求全文背诵

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

●positively adv. 绝对地，完全地

●compartment n. 列车客车厢内的分隔间（或单间）

●cramped adj. 窄小的

●stuffy adj. 憋气的，闷气的

●monotonous adj. 枯燥的，乏味的，单调的

●rhythm n. 有节奏的运动

●click v. 发出咔哒声

●lull v. 催人欲睡

●snatch n. 短时，片段

●sleeper n. 卧铺

●fumble v. 乱摸，摸索

●inspection n. 检查

●inevitably adv. 必然地，不可避免地

●destination n. 目的地

●exhaust v. 使精疲力尽

●motorway n. 快车道

●ferry n. 渡船

●cruise n. 巡游船

●civilize v. 使文明； civilization n. 文明；

civilized adj. 文明的

●spacious adj. 宽敞的

●seasick adj. 晕船的； airsick adj. 晕飞机的； carsick adj. 晕车的

●intimidate v. 恐吓，恫吓

●disadvantage n. 短处，缺点

●exhilarating adj. 使人高兴的，令人兴奋的

●escapist n. 逍遥者

●sip v. 呷，啜

●champagne n. 香槟酒

●refinement n. 精心的安排

●breathtaking adj. 激动人心的；不寻常的

●soar v. 高飞，翱翔

●effortlessly adv. 不费力地

●landscape n. 景色

●fresh adj. 精神饱满的

●uncrumpled adj. 没有跨下来

◆positively adv. 绝对地，完全地

in a positive way

doubt; doubtful; uncertain; dubious 表示不是

很肯定

The food is positively uneatable.

Can you really do it positively?

在这儿相当于 sure, of cause, certainly, no problem

a piece of cake, no sweat, it's a snack 都表示不成问题

I bet 我肯定

◆compartment n. 列车客车厢内的分隔间（或单间）

◆cramped adj. 窄小的

◆stuffy adj. 憋气的，闷气的

== airless

That classroom must be stuffy.

◆rhythm n. 有节奏的运动

◆click v. 发出咔哒声

roar 车辆飞快行驶发出的声音

bark 狗叫

Don't bark your order at me.

◆monotonous adj. 枯燥的，乏味的，单调的

tedious, dull, uninteresting

monotonous == lacking variety

Eg: I don't like the way of your teaching, it is monotonous.

I hate the monotonous rhythm of travelling by train.

tedious 乏味的（重点突出 long and uninteresting 冗长乏味的）

Eg: Your article is tedious.

dull 语意比较弱，= uninteresting

Eg: I can't get along well with Mary, she is a dull girl.

Look at that dull person.

Tiresome == tiring 由于疲劳而厌倦 tired

Eg: He is tired of sleeping on the floor, because he has done so for ten years.

Long lasting meetings are tiring .

You are tiresome.

You are a little bit tiresome.

handsome

bore v.

bored adj.

boring adj. 持续时间过长而厌倦

Eg : I am tired of doing so.

I am bored with doing so. 我厌烦这么做。

be tired of

be bored with

◆lull v. 催人欲睡

vt. ==cause sb. to sleep

Eg: The mother lulled her baby to sleep.

lull sb to sleep 催人入睡

lull vi.风和日丽

What a good day, the wind lulled.
lullaby 催眠曲

◆◆◆snatch n. 短时, 片段

catch, seize, grab,
in snatches 断断续续地

Eg: On the train, we sleep in snatches.

◆sleeper n. 卧铺

◆fumble vt. 乱摸, 摸索

Eg: He fumbled the door open. 他摸索着把门打开了。

He put his hand into his pocket to take the key out.

He fumbled in his pocket for the key.
search for

◆inspection n. 检查

◆◆◆inevitably adv. 必然地, 不可避免地

Eg: Human beings are mortal, so inevitable we make mistakes, no matter how wise and eminent you are.

◆destination n. 目的地

L44-01 end 18'05"

L44-02 begin 18'48"

◆exhaust vt. 使精疲力尽

exhausted adj.

exhausting adj.

tire out

Eg: I'm exhausted. 我精疲力尽了。

What exhausts you? 什么使你精疲力尽呀?

I'm tired out.

wear out 使疲劳, 使磨损

worn

worn out

Eg: Look, your dress is worn out. 瞧, 你的衣服穿坏了。

After a day's work hard, I am worn out.

knock out

Knock sb out 1, 把某人打晕, 2, 某人筋疲力尽

Eg: The arduous work knocked me out. 这项艰难的工作使我精疲力尽。

Fatigue 使筋疲力尽, 使疲劳 (书面)

Eg: The piece of work fatigues me.

Does your work fatigue you?

◆motorway n. 快车道

express way, highway

◆ferry n. 渡船

◆cruise n. 巡游船

◆civilize v. 使文明

◆◆◆spacious adj. 宽敞的

Eg: Is your classroom spacious?

Our classroom is not so spacious as that one.

I would like to lie in the spacious classroom instead of sitting here.

==**roomy**

a roomy house

capacious 容量大的

capacity 容量

commodious 宽敞的, 便利的 (== roomy and convenient)

Eg: The cinema is both roomy and convenient.

The cinema is commodious.

expansive 易膨胀的, 广阔的

Eg: I'd like to appreciate expansive sea / ocean. 我喜欢欣赏浩瀚的海洋。

vast 幅员辽阔的

Eg: The desert in our country is vast, that is a major problem.

extensive 广泛的, 广阔的

extensive reading 泛读

intensive reading 精读

Eg: You can enlarge your vocabulary by intensive reading.

widespread 流传广的, 分布广的

Eg: The kind of news is widespread.

far-reaching 触及很远的, 流传久远的

Eg: I have a good idea and it is far-reaching.

◆seasick adj. 晕船的

airsick 晕飞机的

carsick 晕车的

bicyclesick 晕自行车的

bussick 晕公交车的

homesick 想家的

分别在词尾加上后缀-ness 变成名词

homesickness 思乡之情

◆intimidate v. 恐吓, 恫吓

frighten, horrify, terrify

Eg: Nothing can intimidate me.

◆disadvantage n. 短处, 缺点

◆◆◆exhilarating adj. 使人高兴的, 令人兴奋的

exhilarate vt. == very much excite 比

excite 语义强烈得多, 正式得多

Eg: I'm exhilarated by your visit. 对于你的来访我是高兴极了。

stimulate 刺激, 激励

stimulate sb to do sth 激励某人做某事

Eg: Your courage stimulated me to do so.

inspire 激励 (通过言辞)

Inspire sb to do 激励某人做某事 (通过言辞)

Stir 鼓动, 鼓舞

Eg: Who stirred you to do it like this? You

should look before you leap. 谁鼓动你这么 做? 你应该三思而后行。

spur 刺激

Eg: His rude remarks spurred me.

encourage

Eg: He always encourages me to study hard when I'm unwilling to do so.

◆escapist n. 逍遥者

◆sip v. 呷, 啜

vt & n.

== drink a little at a time.

take a sip of sth 喝一点

Eg: I'm really thirsty, would you mind my taking a sip of your coffee?

have a taste of sth 尝一点

Eg: I'm so hungry that I want to have a taste of your cake. 5

You can take a sip of my coffee, but my cake only belongs to me.

◆champagne n. 香槟酒

◆◆◆refinement n. 精心的安排

refine 使人精力充沛

Eg: Coffee always refined us.

Coffee always made us fresh.

L44-02 end 18'48"

L44-03 begin 18'33"

◆breathtaking adj. 激动人心的; 不寻常的

Eg: The picture takes my breath. 这幅画太美了。

The girl takes my breath.

The beautiful dress takes my breath.

decide to go for a trip 决定旅行

Eg: We decided to go for a breathtaking trip.

◆soar v. 高飞, 翱翔

Eg: We can't soar in the blue sky without wings.

soar effortlessly 自由翱翔

◆effortlessly adv. 不费力地

◆landscape n. 景色

landscape 指从高处或远处远望高看的这种大地的漂亮的风光

spectacle == extraordinary sight

scenery 自然风光

scene 场面

view 透过窗户看到的景色

Eg: Our classroom doesn't have a good view.

The rising sun in the Tai Mountain is a spectacle / landscape.

◆fresh adj. 精神饱满的

a fresh man

Eg: Look at that guy, he is really fresh.他很帅

◆uncrumpled adj. 没有跨下来

Eg: He went home fresh and uncrumpled.

【Text】

§ **Lesson 44 Speed and comfort** 又快捷又舒适

Q: Which type of transport does the writer prefer, do you think?

People travelling long distances frequently have to decide whether they would prefer to go by land, sea, or air. Hardly anyone can positively enjoy sitting in a train for more than a few hours. Train compartments soon get cramped and stuffy. It is almost impossible to take your mind off the journey. Reading is only a partial solution, for the monotonous rhythm of the wheels clicking on the rails soon lulls you to sleep. During the day, sleep comes in snatches. At night, when you really wish to go to sleep, you rarely manage to do so. If you are lucky enough to get a sleeper, you spend half the night staring at the small blue light in the ceiling, or fumbling to find your ticket for inspection. Inevitably you arrive at your destination almost exhausted. Long car journeys are even less pleasant, for it is quite impossible even to read. On motorways you can, at least, travel fairly safely at high speeds, but more often than not, the greater part of the journey is spent on roads with few service stations and too much traffic. By comparison, ferry trips or cruises offer a great variety of civilized comforts. You can stretch your legs on the spacious decks, play games, meet interesting people and enjoy good food--always assuming, of course, that the sea is calm. If it is not, and you are likely to get seasick, no form of transport could be worse. Even if you travel in ideal weather, sea journeys take a long time. Relatively few people are prepared to sacrifice up to a third of their holidays for the pleasure of travelling by sea.

Aeroplanes have the reputation of being dangerous and even hardened travellers are intimidated by them. They also have the disadvantage of being an expensive form of transport. But nothing can match them for speed and comfort. Travelling at a height of 30,000 feet, far above the clouds, and at over 500 miles an hour is an exhilarating experience. You do not have to devise ways of taking your mind off the journey, for an

aeroplane gets you to your destination rapidly. For a few hours, you settle back in a deep armchair to enjoy the flight. The real escapist can watch a free film show and sip champagne on some services. But even when such refinements are not available, there is plenty to keep you occupied. An aeroplane offers you an unusual and breathtaking view of the world. You soar effortlessly over high mountains and deep valleys. You really see the shape of the land. If the landscape is hidden from view, you can enjoy the extraordinary sight of unbroken cloud plains that stretch out for miles before you, while the sun shines brilliantly in a clear sky. The journey is so smooth that there is nothing to prevent you from reading or sleeping. However you decide to spend your time, one thing is certain: you will arrive at your destination fresh and uncrumpled. You will not have to spend the next few days recovering from a long and arduous journey.

参考译文

出远门的人常常需要决定是走旱路、水路，还是坐飞机。很少有人能够真正喜欢坐几个小时以上的火车。车厢很快就变得拥挤、闷热，想摆脱开旅途的困扰是很难的。看书只能解决部分问题。车轮与铁轨间单调的嘎吱声很快就会送你进入梦乡。白天是忽睡忽醒，到了夜晚，你真想睡了，却很难入睡。即使你走运弄到一个卧铺，夜间有一半时间你会盯着车顶那盏小蓝灯而睡不着觉；要不然就为查票摸索你的车票。一旦抵达目的地，你总是疲惫不堪。乘汽车作长途旅行则更加不舒服，因为连看书都几乎不可能。在公路上还好，你至少能以相当快的速度安全地向前行。但旅行的大部分时间都花在路上，而且只有很少的服务设施，交通也很拥挤。相比之下，坐船旅行或环游可以得到文明世界的各种享受。你可以在甲板上伸展四肢、做游戏，还能也很见到各种有趣的人，能享用各种美味佳肴——当然，这一切只有在大海风平浪静的情况下才有可能。如果大海肆虐起来，你就可能晕船，那种难受劲儿是任何一种别的旅行的方式都不会带来的。即使风平浪静，坐船旅行也要占用很长时间。没有多少人会为享受坐船旅行的乐趣而牺牲假期的时间。

飞机以危险而著称，连老资格的旅行者也怕飞机。飞机另一个缺点是昂贵。但就速度与舒适而言，飞机是无与伦比的。腾云驾雾，在 30,000 英尺高空以 500 英里的时速旅行，这种经历令人心旷神怡。你不必想办法去摆脱旅途的困扰，因为飞机会迅速地把您送到目的地。几小时之内，你躺在扶手椅上，享受着旅途的欢乐。真正会享受的人还可以在某个航班上看一场电影和喝香槟。即使没有这些消遣条件，也总是有事可做。飞机上，你可以观察世界上非同寻常的奇妙的美景。你毫不费劲地飞越高山幽谷，你确能饱览大地的风貌。如果这种景色被遮住了，你可以观赏

一下展现在你面前的、一望数英里的、连绵不断的云海，同时阳光灿烂，天空清澈明朗。旅途平稳，丝毫不妨碍你阅读或睡眠。不管你打算如何消磨时间，有件事是可以肯定的，即当你抵达目的地时，你感到精神焕发，毫无倦意，用不着因为漫长的旅途的辛苦而花几天时间休息来恢复精神。

【课文讲解】

People travelling long distances frequently have to decide whether they would prefer to go by land, sea, or air.

现在分词短语修饰 people

people who travel long distance frequently frequently 定期地，经常地 quite often

have to decide == have to make up their mind

would rather; would sooner 要和动词原形搭配

had better do 最好地

would prefer to do

would rather do

hardly + anyone 等不定代词时不倒装，在这相当于 nobody; 或 nearly nobody, virtually nobody

You concentrate your mind on the journey itself, nothing can help you to keep away from it.

take your mind off sth 把某人注意力从...转移开
Eg: A holiday can take your mind off your anxiety.

Do keep your mind off your unhappiness.

I can't take my mind off my examination, because examination day is coming.

partial solution == one part of solution

L44-03 end 18'33"

L44-04 begin 18'35"

Inevitably you arrive at your destination almost exhausted.

exhausted 在这里是形容词做状语

wear out; tire out; fatigue; knock out 筋疲力尽

Long car journeys are even less pleasant, for it is quite impossible even to read.

The writer emphasize disadvantage of travelling by train.

Travelling by car is more unpleasant than travelling in the train.

fairly 的语气是最弱的

more often than not 主要用在书面语言当中，

means very often, usually, frequently

By comparison 通过对比

offer == provide

comforts 在这儿指代 service

Be likely to do 有可能.....

== it is probable that

could not be + 形容词比较级, can not be + 形容词比较级, no... could be 表示“没有什么比...”

Eg: Nobody can be more beautiful than you.

No place can / could be better. 没有什么地方比这儿更好。

relatively 相对来讲

Eg: A large number of people are prepared to sacrifice their higher pay for the privilege of becoming white collar.

Relatively, few people are prepared to sacrifice their holiday time for the dubious pleasure of travelling by sea.

dubious == uncertain == doubtful

paragraph 2

Aeroplanes are famous / well-known for its being dangerous.

L44_42-04 end 18'35"

L44-05 begin 18'52"

have the disadvantage of
have the reputation of

match sb. for
but nothing can be equal to them.

第二部分当中是采用对比法

It is almost impossible to take your mind off the journey.

You don't have to / needn't devise ways of taking your mind off the journey.

hardly... when

You had hardly had time to feel tired when you arrived at your destination.

on some services 在这儿指代 on airplane

Keep one's mind off 转移注意力

Keep sb. occupied 集中注意力

however == no matter how

If you can do without the few pleasures of travelling by land, you will find aeroplanes provide up with the best.

Please illustrate the disadvantage and advantage of studying abroad.

at first, you must illustrate your topic

the disadvantage of studying at home.

the disadvantage of studying abroad.

最后通过实例详细论述出国留学的好处。

关于写作:

三段法

第一段: 开门见山

中间段: 支持段一般是由一段或两段组成, 目的是支持论点

每段的开头一句话和最后一句话一定要和主题密切联系。

参见 Lesson 41

L44-05 end 18'52"

Lesson44A end 1:32:39

Lesson44B begin 1:12:29

L44-06 begin 18'43"

最主要的方法有三种: 对比法, 比较法, 例证法

结尾段起到的作用是再次肯定和强调主题, 加深读者印象。

段落是由主题句, 扩展句组成, 扩展句之后是具体的例子。

想表达不同的理论概念, 要用转折句。

主题句应该要简练, 要明确地表达中心思想。

Eg: 1. The discrimination against women is very obvious in the world.

2. The discrimination against women is especially obvious in the job of marketing.

3. The discrimination against women began in 1910.

topic 应为 2。

主题句应该具有概括性, 但是概括又不能太宽泛。

主题句确立之后, 还要进一步利用扩展句为说明解释主题句的内容。

重复使用关键词。

内容要连贯。

衔接词的使用

1. **起** (开篇, 引出论点): at first, first, firstly, in the beginning (起初), first of all, at present (目前), nowadays, currently, to start with, to begin with, for one thing (首先), for another (其次), in one hand 一方面, in the other hand 另一方面

2. **承**: to start with, at the same time, at any rate 无论如何,

besides 此外, 除了...之外还有, apart from, in addition, in addition to, furthermore, in fact 事实上, actually, as a matter of fact, in reality, moreover, no doubt, without any doubt,

similarly 同样地, in the same way,

meanwhile, in the meantime, obviously 明显地, particularly,
such as, for example, for instance, consequently, as a consequence, as a result,
what is more, what is worse, what is better
above all

L44-06 end (43-02) 18'43"

L44-07 begin 16'36"

3. 折: after all 毕竟, 终究, **all the same** 虽然, 但是, anyway 无论如何, somehow, but, **however**, nevertheless, nonetheless, by the time 到这个时候, 此时, **conversely**, on the contrary, despite, in spite of, in contempt of, in disregard of, **by contrast**, **by comparison**, fortunately, in other words 换句话说, on the other hand, unlike 和.....不同, 不像, whereas 然而,

Eg: He made a mistake, after all he is a child aged 5.

Even though you are not of most help, I'm grateful to you **just the same**.

I had expected myself to pass the examination, **somehow** I failed.

I don't have the ability to do the work, **fortunately** my friends promise me to help me.

4. 合: 主要是用来小结上文的或是用作结尾段: accordingly 于是, 因此, as has been noted (above) 如前所述的, as has been mentioned, as has been talked of,
at last, finally, lastly, at length, briefly 简而言之, in brief, in short, in a word, in conclusion, in sum, in summary, to sum up, to summarize, to conclude, on the whole 总起说来

L44-07 end 16'36"

L44-08 begin 15'56"

no doubt 毫无疑问, undoubtedly, truly, certainly, positively, surely, obviously,

Topic 主题

1. 可以使用谚语作为 topic

as the saying goes; as proverb goes

2. 定义法

What is advertisement, it is the words or pictures on a media to promote product / the sale of product.

作业: illustrate your opinion about advertisements on media.

3. 可以使用提问法: Lesson 7

illustrate your opinion about friendship

Do you have a good / large circle of friends?

4. 概括法: 出现在开头段的首句或末句。

I quite agree with this idea.

5. 间接开头法: 先叙述别人的观点, 然后引出自己的真实看法。

Eg: People often say that money can buy all the things, but I think it is not true.

读文章时的注意点:

1. 注意结构安排
2. 找出文章关键词
3. 注意每一自然段的段首段尾。

L44-08 end 15'56"

L44-09 begin 11'23"

【Vocabulary】Page 206

cramped and stuffy: not roomy, not spacious, lacking space, airless lacking space and air monotonous 单调乏味的 unchanging

lulls: cause to sleep

in snatches: not continuously

destination: terminal

Destination is a place where someone is going.

stretch your legs: have a rest, go for a walk

sacrifice: give up for a purpose

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1. The great disadvantage shared by train and car travel alike is _____.

a. the fact that one cannot get to sleep on either form of transport

b. the fact that one cannot concentrate on what one is reading

c. the monotony of travelling at fast speeds along railway lines or roads

d. the tedium and discomfort of the journey

The great disadvantage that shared by train and car travel alike as

alike; as well

was adored by the rich and poor alike.

2 An aeroplane journey invariably provides such distractions as _____.

a. the thought that one has not long to wait before arriving

b. the exhilarating quality of the air one breathes at 30,000 feet

c. being able to watch a film or drink champagne

d. the marvellous views of land or clouds you can see from the plane

distraction 转移注意力

such ... as 比如.....

He can speak such languages as English, Japanese.

背熟题干

3 Having arrived at your destination by air, you will _____.

- a. not feel exhausted as you will have had plenty of sleep
b. feel the expense was worth the comfort and speed of the 500-mile flight
c. have the satisfaction of knowing you could not have got there any faster
d. at least feel fresh though your clothes might be a mass

L44-09 end (44-01) 11'23"

L44-10 begin 10'06"

No forms of transport can be more comfortable and faster than aeroplanes.

Structure

4 People travelling long distances frequently have to decide _____ they would prefer to go by land sea or air. (ll.1-2)

- a. which b. how c. what d. if

5 If you are _____ a sleeper ...(ll.8-9)

- a. luckily getting b. lucky and get c. to get luckily d. so lucky to get

★★6 ----and enjoy good food _____, of course, that the sea is calm. (ll.13-14)

- a. provided b. in the event c. in case d. if only

如果内心的期望和事实没有关系,表达“如果”采用的结构形式不是 if,不是 suppose,而是 providing or provided

Eg: I'll take all the shirts if / provided you reduce the price to \$1 each.

7 In addition, it _____ their being the most expensive form of transport. (l.19)

- a. has been a grave disadvantage b. is the great disadvantage that
c. is a great disadvantage d. has been the great disadvantage of

in addition 表示承上启下,除此之外还有

如果用 apart from, besides, in addition to, 必须和宾语进行搭配。

it 是形式主语

It is no use crying. 哭没有用。

Lesson45 begin 1:19:05 Lesson45A begin 41:21 L45-01 begin 10'28"

§ **Lesson 45 The power of the press** 新闻报道的威力

It is no use pretending that I didn't see him.
假装没看见他是没有用的了。

Vocabulary

★★★8 If it is not and you are _____, no form of transport could be worse. (ll.14-15)

- a. provably seasick b. bad at sailing c. sick of the sea d. prone to seasickness

If it is not == If it is not calm

be prone to sth. to 在这里是介词。

相当于 be likely to do 表示极有可能。

During cold winter, we are likely to catch cold.

During cold winter, we are prone to cold.

9 Nothing can _____ aeroplanes for speed and comfort. (ll.19-20)

- a. match with b. equal c. equal with d. equal to

match 指大小, 色调, 形状, 性质等相配或相称

10 For a few hours, you _____ a deep armchair to enjoy the flight. (ll.22-23)

- a. relax in b. sit up in c. sit on d. install

sit up 不睡觉 = stay up

install 安装, 固定

Eg: Let us install a television set on the wall.

11 You can enjoy the extraordinary _____ of unbroken cloud plains ... (ll.26-7)

- a. scene b. vision c. spectacle d. scenery

spectacle = landscape

scenery 自然风光

scene 场景

12 You won't send the next few days getting _____ a long and arduous journey. (l.30)

- a. above b. over c. up from d. away from

get over 从.....中恢复过来

Eg: He hasn't got over his wife's death.

He doesn't get over his illness.

get away from 从.....逃脱掉。

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. D 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. B 6. A 7. C 8. D 9. B 10. A 11. C 12. B

L44-10 end 10'06" Lesson44B end 1:12:29 Lesson44 end2:45:08

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

●democrat 民主的

●restrict v. 限制

●abuse v. 滥用

●contention n. 论点

●untold adj. 数不尽的, 无限的
●South Dakota 南达科他州 (美国)
●perpetual adj. 永久的
●quintuplet n. 五胞胎之一
●obscurity n. 默默无闻
●radically adv. 彻底地, 完全地
●exclusive adj. 独占的, 独家的
●nursery n. 育婴室, 保育室
●commercialization n. 商品化
●commodity n. 商品

◆democrat 民主的

◆restrict v. 限制

keep within a certain limit

Eg: The prisoners' activity is restricted within narrow limits.

limit: 表示时间、空间、程度等方面的限定, 且限定到某一个点

restrict: 只说明限定范围

Eg: Land development must be **limited**.

He **restricts** himself to two cigarettes a day.

restrict sb. to 限制在.....范围内

confine

confine sb. to

Eg: The boy is **confined** to the dark room.

The boy is **restricted** to the dark room.

cramp 限制 (限制某人的活动或是限制动植物特生长)

Eg: No body can **cramp** children.

You can not **cramp** my activity.

hamper 限制, 妨碍; 困累

Eg: What **hampered** you to do so?

The housewife has a lots to do every day, because she is **hampered** by poverty.

My **limited** vocabulary hampered my reading.

I am **hampered** by my limited vocabulary.

★★★**impede** 限制; 妨碍

impede doing sth.

Eg: Nothing will **impede** my studying English.

bound 限定, 以.....为界限

L45-01 end 10'28"

L45-02 begin 10'05"

◆abuse v. 滥用

Eg: Don't abuse your authority. 不要滥用职权。

We shouldn't abuse our rights. 不能乱用自己的权力。

For VIP, they shouldn't abuse their privilege.

◆contention n. 论点

◆◆◆untold adj. 数不尽的, 无限的

=too many to be counted

Eg: There are untold stars in the sky.

I am afflicted by / with untold anxieties.

numerous 无数的

countless anxieties 无数的烦恼

Eg: As human being, we can't keep ourselves free from countless anxieties.

countable: can be counted

uncountable

number

numberless 无数的, 没有房号的

Eg: This is a numberless room. 这是一个没有房号的房间。

numberable 数得清的

innumerable 不能数得清的

◆South Dakota 南达科他州 (美国)

◆◆◆perpetual adj. 永久的

permanent

eternal

lasting for a long time

everlasting

perpetual: 不休止的, 一直持续下去的, 不易受阻的

Eg: They are as poor as church mouse, they have to struggle against perpetual poverty.

constant 连续的, 不断的

constantly

Eg: It is raining constantly. 雨不停地下着。

continuous 连续不断的

Eg: They have continuous discussion.

They have continuous attempt.

They made great success in their continuous attempt.

continual 频繁的

continually adj.

Eg: It rains continually. 最近频繁地在下雨。

It is raining continuously / constantly.

lasting

everlasting 持久的, 耐久的

Eg: The pair of trousers is lasting.

Generally speaking, jeans are lasting.

L45-02 end 10'05"

L45-03 begin 10'38"

endless

Eg: You can appreciate endless unbroken clouds.

Studying English is our perpetual task.

eternal adj. 永恒的, 永久的, 不朽的

immortal

Eg: His name is immortal because the longest suspension bridge was named for him.

temporary
temporary job.
permanent 非临时的, 永久的
Eg: In a big city, sometimes we can not get permanent job.

**constant; continuous; everlasting;
lasting; endless; eternal; permanent;
perpetual**

◆quintuplet n. 五胞胎之一

◆obscurity n. 默默无闻

in obscurity

Eg: He is in obscurity.

obscure adj. 不起眼的

Eg: The bus stopped at a obscure bus stop.

◆radically adv. 彻底地, 完全地

completely, entirely, thoroughly, fully,
inclusive

◆◆◆exclusive adj. 独占的, 独家的

exclusive 独占的, 独家的 (not share with
others)

Eg: The swimming pool is for my exclusive
use.

exclusive right 独权

Eg: The newspaper offered a large sum of
money to the person to get exclusive right to
publish his article.

exclusive 排外的, 排它的

inclusive 包括在其中的

Eg: The school is exclusive, only very clever
children can go to it.

这所学校很排外, 只有特别聪明的孩子
可以在这儿上学。

The store is exclusive, only very wealthy
people can visit it.

这个商场很排外, 只有特别有钱的人才
能光顾。

◆nursery n. 育婴室, 保育室

◆commercialization n. 商品化

◆commodity n. 商品

commodity economy 商品经济

commodity market 商品市场

goods, wares

【Text】

§ **Lesson 45 The power of the press** 新
闻报道的威力

Q: Does the writer think the parents were
lucky or unlucky to gain prosperity in this
way? Why?

In democratic countries any efforts to
restrict the freedom of the press are rightly

condemned. However, this freedom can
easily be abused. Stories about people often
attract far more public attention than
political events. Though we may enjoy
reading about the lives of others, it is
extremely doubtful whether we would
equally enjoy reading about ourselves.
Acting on the contention that facts are
sacred, reporters can cause untold suffering
to individuals by publishing details about
their private lives. Newspapers exert such
tremendous influence that they can not only
bring about major changes to the lives of
ordinary people but can even overthrow a
government.

The story of a poor family that acquired
fame and fortune overnight, dramatically
illustrates the power of the press. The family
lived in Aberdeen, a small town of 23,000
inhabitants in South Dakota. As the parents
had five children, life was a perpetual
struggle against poverty. They were
expecting their sixth child and faced with
even more pressing economic problems. If
they had only had one more child, the fact
would have passed unnoticed. They would
have continued to struggle against economic
odds and would have lived in obscurity. But
they suddenly became the parents of
quintuplets, four girls and a boy, an event
which radically changed their lives. The day
after the birth of the five children, an
aeroplane arrived in Aberdeen bringing sixty
reporters and photographers.

The rise to fame was swift. Television
cameras and newspapers carried the news to
everyone in the country. Newspapers and
magazines offered the family huge sums for
the exclusive rights to publish stories and
photographs. Gifts poured in not only from
unknown people, but from baby food and
soap manufactur-

ers who wished to advertise their products.
The old farmhouse the family lived in was to
be replaced by a new \$500,000 home.
Reporters kept pressing for interviews so
lawyers had to be employed to act as spokes-

men for the family at press conferences.
While the five babies were still quietly
sleeping in oxygen tents in a hospital nursery,
their parents were paying the price for fame.

It would never again be possible for them to
lead normal lives. They had become the
victims of commercialization, for their names
had acquired a market value. Instead of
being five new family members, these
children had immediately become a
commodity.

参考译文

在民主国家里，任何限制新闻自由的企图都理所当然地受到谴责。然而，这种自由很容易被滥用。常人轶事往往比政治事件更能引起公众注意。我们都喜欢看关于别人生活的报道，但是否同样喜欢看关于自己生活的报道，就很难说了。记者按事实至上的论点行事，发表有关别人生活的细节，有时会给当事人造成极大的痛苦。新闻具有巨大的威力。它们不仅可以给寻常人家的生活带来重大的变化，甚至还能推翻一个政府。

下面这户穷人一夜之间出名发财的故事戏剧性地说明了新闻报道威力。这户人家住在南达科他州一个人口为 23,000 的小镇上，镇名为阿拜丁。家里已有 5 个孩子，全家人常年在贫困中挣扎。第 6 个孩子即将问世，他们面临着更为严峻的经济问题。如果他们只添了 1 个孩子，这件事本来就不会引起任何人的注意。这家人会继续为克服经济上的拮据而奋斗，并默默无闻地活下去。但是他们出人意料生了个五胞胎，4 女 1 男。这事使他们的生活发生了根本的变化。五胞胎降生第二天，一架飞机飞抵阿拜丁，随机带来 60 名记者与摄影师。

这一家迅速出了名。电视摄像机和报纸把消息传送到全国。报纸、杂志出高价向他们购买文字、图片的独家报道权。不但素昧平生的人寄来了大量的礼物，而且婴儿食品、婴儿肥皂制造厂商为了替自己产品做广告也寄来了大量的礼物。这家人住的旧家舍将由一座价值 50 万美元的新住宅所取代。由于记者纷纷要求会见，他们不得不请了律师充当他们家的发言人举行记者招待会。眼下，五胞胎还静静地躺在医院婴儿室的氧气帐里，他们的父母却为这名声付出了代价，他们再也无法过正常的生活。他们成了商业化的受害者，因为他们的名字具有了市场价值。这些孩子立即成了商品，而不是 5 个新的家庭成员。

【课文讲解】

要求全文背诵

In fact, the power of the press is beyond our description.

any efforts are rightly condemned.

effort 企图

try; attempt 尝试

make every effort; spare no effort; make every endeavor

go to great lengths

blame

scold

reproach

reprimand

condemn 正式的谴责

L45-03 end 10'19"

L45-04 begin 10'38"

deed 行为，行径

Eg: Your deeds should be rightly condemned.

forest authorities 森林当局

education authorities 教育当局

the authorities 有关当局

the authorities of the press 新闻当局

According to this sentence, we know we are much more interested in private stories.

Sometimes some people even want to smell out people's secrets or particular scandals.

lives of others: 替代 story about people

extremely doubtful == extremely uncertain
== extremely dubious.

Eg: If a family skeleton is reviewed, one's reputation will be damaged / destroyed / spoiled / ruined immediately.

equally == in the same way = alike

We wouldn't like our secret to be reviewed.

Acting on 以.....来行事，遵循.....来行事

that 引导的部分是 contention 的同位语从句

When stories published in details by the press are wonderful, you will become famous very soon.

If the story is terrible, your reputation will be ruined immediately.

exert... on sth.

bring about 带来，导致

lead to

cause

result in

L45-04 end 10'38"

Lesson45A end 41:21

Lesson45B begin 37:44

L45-05 begin 10'19"

major: great, considerable

In the first paragraph the writer illustrate how powerful the press is in the general way.

acquire: gain == obtain

acquire fortune: 发财

acquire fame 出了名

make fortune

the city dweller 城市居住者

the country dweller 乡村居住者

expect a baby

in the interesting condition

in the family way

pregnant

be faced with 面临

The window faces the south. 窗户朝南

In the process of studying English, We are faced with a great many problems, which should be surmounted.

surmount 克服

solve problem 解决问题

In the process of studying English, we are faced with a great many problems, which should be surmounted / got rid of / removed as quickly as possible.

economic: problems = poverty

pressing 紧迫的

unnoticed 形容词做状语

odds n. 各种让人烦的小事

L45-05 end 10'19"

L45-06 begin 10'05"

bear 容忍; 生育 born 是 bear 的过去分词

attract the attention of the press

The rise to the fame is swift==Their being famous was rapid.

huge sums ==huge sums of money

care for 关心

press for == demand

形象地表达出不停的催问

Eg: The students kept pressing for examinations.

L45-06 end 10'05"

L45-07 begin 13'46"

【Vocabulary】 P210

restrict: 限制 (restrict to)

confine (confine to), limit

equally: 同样地

alike, in the same way / degree

contention: 论点

argument

untold: 数也数不清的

countless, uncountable, numerous, innumerable, numberless

acquired : 已获得的

got, gained, obtained

perpetual struggle:永无休止的斗争
fight

in obscurity 默默无闻的, 不出名的

not being well-known

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 The Press will argue that they have the right to publish a story, although it may seriously affect the individual concerned, because _____ .

a. in a democracy, the individual deserves more attention than politics

b. facts in themselves, however unpleasant they may be, must be respected

c. people not only enjoy reading about others but about themselves as well

d. they only use their power to influence events of national importance

argue

affect 负面的影响

原文: Acting on the **contention** that facts are sacred, reporters can cause untold suffering to individuals by publishing details about their private lives.

2 News editors and reporters wanted to publish the story because _____ .

a. they always defend the freedom of the Press

b. they know that stories about people sell a lot of newspapers

c. they wanted to change the lives of these poor people

d. they believed it was the right thing to do

3 The interest that was taken in the family was _____ .

a. of national importance because of the rise in the birth rate

b. charitable, for people of all kinds were concerned about their poverty

c. so overwhelming that even lawyers attended their press conferences

d. mainly from commercial organizations who wanted to promote their sales

Structure

4 The public are often far more interested _____ political events. (ll.3-4)

a. in people's stories than b. in stories about people than in

c. with stories about people than d. by people's stories than by

be interested in...

5 The influence of newspapers is _____ bring about major changes in the lives of ordinary people but they can even overthrow a government. (ll.8-9)

a. such that not only can they b. so that

not only they can
c. such that they cannot only d. so that
not only can they
not only...but...
so 必须用来修饰形容词或副词
如果强调的是在一个主干的名词部分, 用 such

6 A sixth child _____ expected so they were faced ... (II.12-13)
a. was b. being c. having d. had been
economic problems/ economic odds
perpetual struggle against poverty
被动语态

7 ★★ ★ While the five babies _____ in oxygen tents... (II.23-24)
a. were remaining quietly sleeping b. remained quietly sleeping
c. remained to sleep quietly d. remaining were quietly sleeping
remain (系动词)不能用进行时态

Vocabulary

8 Stories about people are often _____ (I.3)
a. of great interest to everyone b. in the public interest
c. a matter of publicity d. publicly attended

9 Newspapers _____ tremendous influence over the lives of ordinary people. (I.8)
a. press b. invoke c. impose d. wield
原文: bring about

L45-07 end 13'46"

L45-08 begin 3'40"

Lesson46 begin 1:43:28 Lesson46A begin 48:31 L46-01 begin 9'23"

§ Lesson 46 Do it yourself 自己动手

【New words and expressions】生词和短语
●plead v. 找(借口), 辩解
●ignorance n. 无知, 不懂
●publication n. 出版物
●newlyweds n. 新婚夫妇
●gaily adv. 愉快地, 高兴地
●leisure n. 空闲
●keen adj. 热心的, 渴望的
●advisory adj. 咨询的
●novice n. 新手
●consumer n. 消费者, 顾客
●assemble v. 装配, 组装
●outlet n. 出路

press: 榨汁; 熨烫; 按住, 压住 (n.) 出版, 发行
invoke 求助, 祈求
impose 强加于人
wield 造成 (== bring about, cause, result in)

10 Reporters _____ interviews ... (I.22)
a. went on strike for b. went on printing
c. made repeated requests for d. were continually
原文: **Reporters kept pressing for interviews so lawyers had to be employed to act as spokesmen for the family at press conferences.**
pressing for: 不断的催问, 要求

11 Lawyers were employed to act as spokesmen _____ the family. (II.22-23)
a. on account of b. instead of c. on behalf of d. for the sake of
instead of: 代替 (某物、谁)
on account of == because of
for the sake of 出于.....的缘故

12 Instead of being five new family members, these children had become _____ (I.26)
a. victims of commercialization b. something to be bought and sold
c. a public conerience d. a product of the market

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. B 2. D 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. D 10. C 11. C 12. A

L45-08 end 3'40" Lesson45B end 37:44 Lesson45 end 1:19:05

●creative adj. 创造性的
●handyman n. 手巧的人, 能工巧匠
●resourceful adj. 足智多谋的
●fuse v. 由于烧断保险丝而短路
●rickety adj. 要散架的, 晃动的
●clog v. 堵塞
●delusion n. 错觉
●lawn mower 割草机
●adjustment n. 调整
●screw n. 螺丝钉
●dismantle v. 拆卸
●chunk n. (厚)块
●snap v. 绷断
●insurmountable adj. 不能克服的, 难以对付的
●jigsaw n. 线锯
●nag v. 唠叨不休

●rust v. 生锈

◆plead v. 找（借口），辩解

plead ignorance: 一无所知

Eg: The authorities plead ignorance.

I pleaded that I was ill so I couldn't go to the party.

plead that...

pleadable 可辩护的

Eg: This is a pleadable case.

pleading n. 辩护，恳求

pleader n. 辩护人

beg vt. 肯求（可怜地一再要求）

beg sb. not to do

ask 请求，要求（期待肯定的答复）

entreat: 请求（通过反反复复的请求，来说服、软化对方）

implore 要求（迫切地、痛苦地要求）

Eg: The poor man implored me for help.

◆ignorance n. 无知，不懂

◆publication n. 出版物

◆newlyweds n. 新婚夫妇

◆gaily adv. 愉快地，高兴地

◆◆◆leisure n. 空闲

spare time

leisure hours

at leisure 悠闲自得的，空闲的

L46-01 end 9'23"

L46-02 begin 13'05"

Eg: I'm quite at leisure if you want to me to help you.

at one's leisure 在某人空闲的时候，在某人高兴的时候

Eg: Look me up, at your leisure.

drop in me, at your leisure.

At your leisure, please call me.

wait sb.'s leisure 等某人有空闲的时候

◆◆◆keen adj. 热心的，渴望的

eager, anxious

be keen about 迷上，喜欢上

The boy is keen about football.

be keen on sth. 迷上，喜欢上（口）

anxious（焦急的心情，因焦虑而渴望）

eager（因特别想得到或拥有某物而渴求）

Eg: What are you eager for?

keen（因为极大的兴趣和欲念而热衷于）

◆advisory adj. 咨询的

◆novice n. 新手

◆consumer n. 消费者，顾客

◆assemble v. 装配，组装

assemble vi. 众多人的集会

==fit, put the parts / pieces together

Eg: It took me three hours to assemble thy bicycle.

amass, accumulate, collect, gather, assemble, store up, hold up

◆outlet n. 出路

排水口，通风口

a way through which sth. may go out

an outlet for water 排水口

an outlet for air 通风口

Eg: This is an outlet for you to get success.

He wants an outlet for his anger.他需要一个出气筒。

outlet for

inlet 进口，入口

◆creative adj. 创造性的

inventive adj. 善于创造的，发明的

◆handyman n. 手巧的人，能工巧匠

◆◆◆resourceful adj. 足智多谋的

==witty 机智的，俏皮的，言辞巧妙的

wit 智慧，智谋

L46-02 end (46-03) 13'05"

L46-03 begin 13'05"

Eg: He's in trouble and he's witts ended.

wit: 智慧，智谋（通常用复数形式）

resource 资源；消遣，娱乐 ==entertainment, amusement

entertainment 为使某人开心而进行的娱乐和消遣

== amusement

resource 消遣的目的是为了打发时间

◆fuse v. 由于烧断保险丝而短路

◆rickety adj. 要散架的，晃动的

◆clog v. 堵塞

◆delusion n. 错觉

◆lawn mower 割草机

◆adjustment n. 调整

adjust 指调整，调节，使之适应

◆◆◆screw n. 螺丝钉

screw vt. 1. 拧

screw down 用螺丝钉固定住；约束

screw up 固定住；把.....揉成一团

screw out 拧出来；勉强拿出，逼出

screw around 鬼混；闲逛

as he has a screw loose / missing

Eg: Don't have a chat with him as he has a screw loose. 不要跟他闲聊，他这个人疯疯颠颠的。

You must have your head screwed properly. 你必须保持头脑清醒。

L46-03 end 13'05"

L46-04 begin 13'05"

◆dismantle v. 拆卸

take apart

He took a longmor apart.

◆chunk n. (厚) 块

◆snap v. 绷断

猛咬 (==bite); 拍快照

break suddenly

The chain snap suddenly.

snap one's fingers at sb. 弹响指

snap sth. up 迅速地抓住机会抢购

Eg: The cheapist dresses were quickly snapped up. 抢购一空

in a snap 立刻, 马上

It is a snap. 很轻松, 小菜一碟

◆insurmountable adj. 不能克服的, 难以对付的

==cannot be overcome

surmount: 克服 surmount difficulty

Eg: They are faced with insurmountable difficulties.

vanquish: 克服

◆jigsaw n. 线锯

◆nag v. 唠叨不休

◆rust v. 生锈

【Text】

§ Lesson 46 Do it yourself 自己动手

Q: Did the writer repair his lawn mower in the end? Why / Why not?

5 So great is our passion for doing things for ourselves, that we are becoming increasingly less dependent on specialized labour. No one can plead ignorance of a subject any longer, for there are countless do-it-yourself publications. Armed with the right tools and materials, newlyweds gaily embark on the task of decorating their own homes. Men, particularly, spend hours of their leisure time installing their own fireplaces, laying out their own gardens; 10 building garages and making furniture. Some really keen enthusiasts go so far as to build their own computers. Shops cater for the do-it-yourself craze not only by running special advisory services for novices, but by offering consumers bits and pieces which they can assemble at home. Such things provide an excellent outlet for pent up creative energy, but unfortunately not all of us are born

handymen.

Some wives tend to believe that their husbands are infinitely resourceful and can fix anything. Even men who can hardly drive a nail in straight are supposed to be born electricians, carpenters, plumbers and mechanics. When lights fuse, furniture gets rickety, pipes get clogged, or vacuum cleaners fail to operate, some women assume that their husbands will somehow put things right. The worst thing about the do-it-yourself game is that sometimes even men live under the delusion that they can do anything, even when they have repeatedly been proved wrong. It is a question of pride as much as anything else.

Last spring my wife suggested that I call in a man to look at our lawn mower. It had broken down the previous summer, and though I promised to repair it, I had never got round to it. I would not hear of the suggestion and said that I would fix it myself.

One Saturday afternoon, I hauled the machine into the garden and had a close look at it. As far as I could see, it only needed a minor adjustment: a turn of a screw here, a little tightening up there, a drop of oil and it would be as good as new. Inevitably the repair job was not quite so simple. The mower firmly refused to mow, so I decided to dismantle it. The garden was soon littered with chunks of metal which had once made up a lawn mower. But I was extremely pleased with myself. I had traced the cause of the trouble. One of the links in the chain that drives the wheels had snapped. After buying a new chain I was faced with the insurmountable task of putting the confusing jigsaw puzzle together again. I was not surprised to find that the machine still refused to work after I had reassembled it, for the simple reason that I was left with several curiously shaped bits of metal which did not seem to fit anywhere. I gave up in despair. The weeks passed and the grass grew. When my wife nagged me to do something about it, I told her that either I would have to buy a new mower or let the grass grow. Needless to say our house is now surrounded by a jungle. Buried somewhere in deep grass there is a rusting lawn-mower which I have promised to repair one day.

参考译文

现在我们自己动手做事的热情很高, 结果对于专业工人的依赖越来越少了。由于出版了不计其数的教人自己动手做事的书报杂志, 没有人再能说对某事一无所知。新婚夫妇找来合适的工具和材料, 喜气洋洋

地开始布置新房。特别是男人，常利用空闲时间安装壁炉、布置花园、建造车库、制作家具。有些热衷于自己动手的人甚至自己组装电脑。为了满足自己动手热的需要，商店不仅为初学者提供专门的咨询服务，而且为顾客准备了各种零件，供他们买回家去安装。这些东西为人们潜在的创造力提供了一个绝妙的用武之地。但不幸的是，我们并非人人都是能工巧匠。

妻子常常认为她们的丈夫无比聪明能干。甚至有些连一枚钉子都钉不直的男人都被认为是天生的电工、木匠、水管工和机械师。每当电灯保险丝烧断、家具榫头松动、管道堵塞、吸尘器不动时，有些妻子认为丈夫总有办法。自己动手的例子中最糟糕的是，有时甚至是男人尽管接连失败却还误以为自己什么都行，原因就是面子。

今年春天，妻子让我请人检查一下我家的割草机。那台割草机去年夏天就坏了，尽管我答应修，但一直没抽出时间，我不愿听妻子的建议，说我自己会修。一个星期六的下午，我把割草机拉到了花园里，仔细检查了一番。在我看来，只需稍加调整即可。这儿紧紧螺丝，那儿固定一下，再加几滴油，就会像新的一样了。事实上，修理工作远不是那么简单。修完后割草机还是纹丝不动。于是，我决定把它拆开。一会儿工夫，割草机便被拆成一个个金属零件，乱七八糟地堆在花园里。但我却非常高兴，因为我找到了毛病所在。驱动轮子的链条断了一节。我买来一根新链条后，面临的就是如何把这些令人眼花缭乱的拼板重新组装起来。等我装完后，那台割草机仍然一动不动，对此我倒并不感到吃惊。原因很简单，因为还剩下几个形状奇特的零件似乎哪里也装不上去。我无可奈何，只好罢休。几个星期过去了，草长了起来。妻子喋喋不休让我想点办法。我告诉她，要么买一台新割草机，要么让草长下去。不用说，我家现在已被丛林包围。深草丛中的某个地方有一台正在生锈的割草机，那就是我曾答应某日要修理的割草机。

【课文讲解】

本文非常优秀，一是在句子结构上，二是在系列短语上

背诵：So great is our passion for doing things for ourselves, that we are becoming increasingly less dependent on specialized labour.

此句的基本句型是 so...that... 引导的结果状语从句，为了强调 great 这个词，把 so great 提到句首，因此主谓要倒装。

passion 热情

passion for doing sth.

be / become dependent on \neq independent

less dependent = more independent

specialized == skillful

背诵：No one can plead ignorance of a subject any longer,

plead ignorance of sth. 对.....一无所知

Eg: He pleaded ignorance of the accident.

countless 不计其数的

背诵：Armed with the right tools and materials, newlyweds gaily embark on the task of decorating their own homes.

armed with 佩戴上

L46-04 end 13'05"

Lesson46A end 48:31

Lesson46B begin 54:56

L46-05 begin (47-02) 13'58"

gaily == happily, cheerfully

embark on doing sth. 从事做(新的、难度大的事情) == start sth. (new or difficult)

lay out 安排，布置

go so far as to do: 竟然到了干.....的地步

Eg: Oh, my god, he went so far as to refuse my demand.

She goes so far as to go shopping / with it shop every day.

keen: 感兴趣的，热心的

enthusiasm 热情

cater for 满足，迎合人们的需要 == provide what is necessary

Eg: Our school tries to cater for students needs / demands.

do-it-yourself 合成形容词

craze == passion

bits and pieces 备件，零件

特点：重复介词使用

in dread of: 害怕

背诵：Such things provide an excellent outlet for pent up creative energy,

provide an outlet for: 寻找.....出路

pent up: 被压抑的 == oppressed

potential 潜在的

not all of us 部分的否定

none of us 全部的否定

born: 生来就是

L46-05 end 13'58"

L46-06 begin 14'08"

背诵：Some wives tend to believe that their husbands are infinitely resourceful and can fix anything.

Some wives live under the illusion that their husbands are infinitely resourceful and can fix anything.

tend to: 倾向于

tend to do sth. 有.....倾向

tend to sth. 照料, 伺候==attend to (应付, 对付==deal with)

背诵: **Even men who can hardly drive a nail in straight are supposed to be born electricians, carpenters,**
be supposed to 一致公认

背诵: **When lights fuse, furniture gets rickety, pipes get clogged, or vacuum cleaners fail to operate, some women assume that their husbands will somehow put things right.**

some women assume that their husbands will somehow put things right.

presume: 表示猜测, 主观判断, 有事实可以依据

assume: 主观武断的认为

L44: You can stretch your legs on the spacious decks, play games, meet interesting people and enjoy good food--always **assuming**, of course, that the sea is calm.

The worst thing is that...最糟糕的事情
delusion(语气强烈)==illusion

背诵: **The worst thing about the do-it-yourself game is that sometimes even men live under the delusion that they can do anything, even when they have repeatedly been proved wrong.**

背诵: **It is a question of pride as much as anything else.**

It is a question of pride...

as much as anything (else) 加强语气==very, very much

call in a man to look at sth.

break down: 坏掉了

fail to operate

L46-06 end 14'08"

L46-07 begin 14'15"

get / come round to sth. 抽出时间做某事

make time to do sth. / spare time to do sth.

Eg: I got round to writing the letter after two days delay.

as far as I could see == as far as I knew / as far as I could find / discover 在我看来
minor≠major

it would be as good as new

as good as 几乎, 差不多==almost, actually, virtually, nearly

Eg: He as good as turned me down. 他实际上

就是拒绝了我。

inevitably 不可避免地

背诵: **The garden was soon littered with chunks of metal which had once made up a lawn-mower.**

be littered with 放满了

make up 表示一种状态

assemble: 强调动作

背诵: **I had traced the cause of the trouble.**

trace: 跟踪==find, discover

背诵: **After buying a new chain I was faced with the insurmountable task of putting the confusing jigsaw puzzle together again.**

be faced with 面对, 面临

confusing == puzzling, perplexing

for the simple reason that: 出于这个简单的原因

背诵: **Buried somewhere in deep grass there is a rusting lawn-mower which I have promised to repair one day.**

buried somewhere in deep grass... 连接上下文, 加强语气, 修饰 lawn mower

L46-07 end 14'15"

L46-08 begin 12'09"

【Vocabulary】 P214

Explain the meanings of the following words and phrases as they are used in the passage:

increasingly(l.2); plead ignorance (l.3); gaily embark on the task (l.5); installing (l.7); novices (l.9); repeatedly (l.17)

increasingly: more and more

plead ignorance 找借口辩解说不知情 (=get an excuse for not knowing)

gaily embark on the task: happily start the job

installing: fixing

novice: 新手 beginner / learner

repeatedly: 反反复复地, 重复地 (=again and again; renewedly)

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 Why did the writer's wife suggest calling in a man to look at the mower?

a. To get her husband to mend it, believing

him to be a born carpenter.
b. She had forgotten that her husband had promised to mend it.
c. She suspected it would otherwise remain unrepaired and the grass uncut.
d. Her husband had repeatedly tried mending it already without success.
suspected (that) ... / doubt whether...
remain unrepaired uncut

2 The writer decided to dismantle the mower because _____.
a. it was a Saturday and he had the time to spare
b. he had discovered the cause of the trouble
c. he thought it was a sure way of roving it would not work
d. what repairs he had already carried out had not proved adequate
dismantle: take apart 拆开
adequate: enough

背熟: what repairs he had already carried out had not proved adequate

3 The writer's house is now surrounded by a jungle because _____.
a. he lost several pieces of the mower in the process of dismantling it
b. by now the lawn mower is too rusty to cut the grass with
c. besides not having cut the grass, he has failed to cut down the trees
d. his wife was not prepared to let him buy a new lawn mower
be prepared to do

Structure

4 ★★★ ---- that we are _____ dependent on specialized labour as we used to be. (II.1-2)
a. increasingly less b. becoming not so
c. not nearly as d. becoming less
as...as
used to be
Eg: He doesn't work as hard as he used to.

5 Whatever it is, a fused light, _____ furniture, a clogged pipe, a broken-down vacuum cleaner, wives automatically assume... (II.14-15)
a. shaken b. a shaken c. a shaky d. shaky
平行结构

6 ---- my wife said to me: 'Darling, _____
Lesson47 begin 1:43:18 Lesson47A begin 48:29 L47-01 begin 12'05"
§ **Lesson 47 Too high a price?** 代价太高

call someone in to look at the lawn mower?' (I.18)
a. why don't you b. why you don't c. would you be kind to d. do you kindly suggest doing sth. ----Why don't you? Why not?

7 ---- which I have promised to get round _____ one day. (I.19)
a. to repair it b. to repairing c. repairing d. to repairing it
get round to doing / come round to doing

Vocabulary

8 To plead ignorance of a subject is no longer a _____, for there are... (II.2-4)
a. wise precautioning b. literary discussion
c. legitimate excuse d. reasonable allowance
precaution: 预防措施 take precautions
legitimate: reasonable

9 Men, _____ spend hours of their leisure time on do-it-yourself. (II.6-7)
a. mostly b. especially c. rather d. specially
particularly, especially

10 Some women assume that their husbands will somehow put things _____ (II.14-15)
a. in order b. well c. in straight d. correctly

L46-08 end 12'09"

L46-09 begin 0'37"

11 I was left with bits of metal which did not seem to _____ anywhere. (I.28)
a. fasten b. suit c. go d. fix
suit 指合乎要求, 口味, 性格

12 _____, our house is now surrounded by a jungle. (II.29-30)
a. As a matter of fact b. As you can imagine c. As a result d. As a last resort

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. C 2. D 3. D 4. C 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. A 11. C 12. B

L 46-09 end 0'37" Lesson46B end 54:56 Lesson46 end 1:43:28

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

●pollution n. 污染

●overpopulated adj. 人口多的

●over-industrialized adj. 过度工业化的

●sheer adj. 纯粹的, 不掺杂的

●worldwide adv. 在全世界

●overwhelm v. 制服, 使不知所措

●pollute v. 污染

●pesticide n. 杀虫剂

●fertilizer n. 肥料

●salmonella n. 沙门氏菌

●listeria n. 利斯特杆菌

●vegetarian n. 吃素的人

●organically-grown adj. 有机培植的 (不施化肥和其他化学品培植)

●insidious adj. 暗中为害的

●urban adj. 城市的

●burglar n. 窃贼

●burgle v. 入室偷窃

●scream v. 尖叫

●profound adj. 极度的

●irritation n. 烦躁

●incessantly adv. 连续不断地

●whine v. 发呜呜声

●helicopter n. 直升飞机

●maximum adj. 最大的

●technology n. 技术

●contribution n. 贡献

●mobile adj. 可移动的

●snore v. 打鼾

●offender n. 冒犯者

●staggering adj. 令人惊愕的

●trumpet v. 吹号

●partner n. 伙伴

◆pollution n. 污染

More and more water is been pollution.

Pollution is the major problem we are faced with.

pollute

polluted

pollution

polluter 污染源

Eg: Gases from cars are one of the polluters of air pollution.

contaminate

taint

defile

pollute

poison

◆overpopulated adj. 人口多的

overpeopled

sparsely-populated community

sparsely-peopled

population

Eg: What's the population in your country?

Our country has a population of one billion.

The city has a population of two million.

population explosion

populous adj.

crowd 公交车拥挤 crewed

Eg: The narrow street is populous with people.

The most populous province in China is Shichun.

province 省

The most populous country in the world is China.

◆over-industrialized adj. 过度工业化的

◆sheer adj. 纯粹的, 不掺杂的

有四个基本语意

1. pure unmixed

2. steep sheer cliff

L46-09_47-01 end 12'45"

L47-02 begin 12'03"

3. complete

Eg: What are you talking about sheer nonsense?

4. transparent

sheer silk stockings

◆worldwide adv. 在全世界

◆overwhelm v. 制服, 使不知所措

Eg: He was overwhelmed by grief. 他伤心至极
Grief seized him.

Your kindness quite overwhelms me. 您的这份好心使我感动得难以言表。(被你制服了)

If our country were overwhelmed by pollution, it would be terrible.

conquer

overcome

get rid of

insurmountable

vanquish

◆pollute v. 污染

◆pesticide n. 杀虫剂

◆fertilizer n. 肥料

◆salmonella n. 沙门氏菌

◆listeria n. 利斯特杆菌

◆vegetarian n. 吃素的人

◆organically-grown adj. 有机培植的 (不施化肥和其他化学品培植)

◆insidious adj. 暗中为害的

◆urban adj. 城市的

◆burglar n. 窃贼

◆burgle v. 入室偷窃

◆scream v. 尖叫

scream at

◆profound adj. 极度的

intence

extreme
complete
Eg: Yesterday he had a profound sleep.
He is afflicted with profound anxieties.
knowledgeable
He is a profound scholar.

◆irritation n. 烦躁
irritate v. 使烦躁
irritated
irritating

L47-02 end 12'03"

L47-03 begin 12'03"

◆incessantly adv. 连续不断地
perpetual
permanent
eternal
continuance
continual
continually
constant
endless
incessant adj.
Eg: It has been raining incessantly for three hours.

There is a week of incessant rains.
ceaseless
none stop
unbroken
uninterrupted
Eg: Last night I had an uninterrupted party. 15
He gave us a talk uninterrupted.

◆whine v. 发呜呜声
◆helicopter n. 直升飞机
◆maximum adj. 最大的
◆technology n. 技术
◆contribution n. 贡献
◆mobile adj. 可移动的
◆snore v. 打鼾
◆offender n. 冒犯者
◆staggering adj. 令人惊愕的

surprise
amaze
astonish
astound
astounding
Eg: The old lady reported to the police and they felt astounded / found it staggering. 20

◆trumpet v. 吹号
◆partner n. 伙伴

【Text】

§ Lesson 47 Too high a price? 代价太高

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

听录音，然后回答以下问题。

What does the writer describe as an 'amusing old-fashioned source of noise'?

5 Pollution is the price we pay for an overpopulated, over industrialized planet. When you come to think about it, there are only four ways you can deal with rubbish: dump it, burn it, turn it into something you can use again, attempt to produce less of it. We keep trying all four methods, but the sheer volume of rubbish we produce worldwide threatens to overwhelm us.

R
rubbish, however, is only part of the problem of polluting our planet. Increasing quantities of cheap food leads to a different kind of pollution. Industrialized farming methods produce cheap meat products: beef, pork and chicken. The use of pesticides and fertilizers produces cheap grain and vegetables. The price we pay for cheap food may be already too high: Mad Cow Disease (BSE) in cattle, salmonella in chicken and eggs, and wisteria in dairy products. And if you think you'll abandon meat and become a vegetarian, you have the choice of very expensive organically-grown vegetables or a steady diet of pesticides every time you think you're eating fresh salads and vegetables, or just having an innocent glass of water!

10 However, there is an even more insidious kind of pollution that particularly affects urban areas and invades our daily lives, and that is noise. Burglar alarms going off at any time of the day or night serve only to annoy passers-by and actually assist burglars to burgle. Car alarms constantly scream at us in the street and are a source of profound irritation. A recent survey of the effects of noise revealed (surprisingly?) that dogs barking incessantly in the night rated the highest form of noise pollution on a scale ranging from 1 to 7. The survey revealed a large number of sources of noise that we really dislike. Lawn mowers whining on a summer's day, late-night parties in apartment blocks, noisy neighbors, vehicles of all kinds, especially large container trucks thundering through quiet village, planes and helicopters flying overhead, large radios carried round in public places and played at maximum volume. New technology has also made its own contribution to noise. A lot of people object to mobile phones, especially when they are used in public places like restaurants or on public transport. Loud

conversations on mobile phones invade our thoughts or interrupt the pleasure of meeting friends for a quiet chat. The noise pollution survey revealed a rather spurring and possibly amusing old fashioned source of noise. It turned out to be snoring! Men were found to be the worst offenders. It was revealed that 20% of men in their mid-thirties snore. This figure rises to a staggering 60% of men in their sixties. Against these figures, it was found that only 5% of women snore regularly, while the rest are constantly woken or kept awake by their trumpeting partners. Whatever the source of noise, one thing is certain: silence, it seems, has become a golden memory.

参考译文

污染就是我们为这个人口过密，过度工业化的星球所付出的代价。当我们开始考虑垃圾问题时，我们只有4种对付垃圾的方法：倾倒、焚烧、把垃圾变成再生材料或试图少产生一些垃圾。我们一直在试这4种方式，但是，我们在世界范围内仅产生的垃圾的量就有把我们覆盖的危险。

然而，垃圾只是我们这个星球的污染问题的一个方面。日益增长的对廉价食物的需求导致了另一种形式的污染。工业化的农作方式生产出廉价的肉类制品——牛肉、猪肉和鸡肉。使用杀虫剂和化肥生产出廉价的谷物和蔬菜。为了廉价食物我们付出代价已经太高了：牛肉中的疯牛病，鸡肉和鸡蛋中的沙门氏菌，奶制品中的利斯特杆菌。如果你想放弃肉类而变成一位素食者，那么你可以两者择一：或是选用价格昂贵、有机培植的蔬菜，或是当你认为在享用新鲜色拉和新鲜蔬菜或饮用一杯无害的水的时候，实际上每次都不断吃进杀虫剂。

但是，还有一种更加隐蔽有害的污染，它专门影响城镇地区，侵袭我们的日常生活，那就是噪音。防盗警报器在白天和黑夜的任何时候都会响起来，它的作用只是骚扰过路人，而实际上却帮助窃贼入室行窃。在街上，汽车的防盗警报不断对我们吼叫，这是人们极度烦躁的一个原因，最近一个有关噪音的作用的调查（令人吃惊地）指出，夜间连续不断的狗叫声，在一个从1级至7级刻度表上应列为最严重的噪音污染。这个调查揭示了我们所不喜欢的大量的噪音的来源：夏天呜呜作响的割草机，公寓楼里深夜聚会的喧哗声，大声吵闹的邻居，各式各样的车辆，特别是穿越寂静的村庄的集装箱卡车，从头顶飞过的飞机和直升机，被带到公共场所、音量开到最大的大功率收音机。新技术也为噪音作了它的贡献。许多人都反对移动式电话，特别是在如饭店，公共汽车等公共场所使用移动电话。用移动电话大声交谈干扰我们的思路，破坏我们和朋友在一起轻声聊天所得到的乐趣。这个有关噪音的污染调查还揭示了一种出人意外而同时可能会引人意外而同时可能会引人发笑的老式噪音源。它竟然是鼾声。人类是这方面的罪魁祸首。调查指出，20%的35岁左右的男人打鼾；而到60岁

这个年龄段，这个数字上升到令人惊愕的60%。与这些数字相比，只有5%的女性经常打鼾；而其余则经常被与她们同睡、像吹号似地打着呼噜的男人吵醒或弄得睡不着。不管噪声来自何方，有一点是肯定的：看来寂静已变成一种珍贵的回忆。

【课文讲解】

背诵：**Pollution is the price we pay for an overpopulated, over industrialized planet.**

I was blamed for being late.

L47-03 end 12'03"

L47-04 begin 12'22"

Losing health is the price he paid for his hard work./ (working hard/ over working)

come to == get to

并列平行结构

There are some good ways to study English well.

listen, speak, read and write.

There are four good ways to study English: listening, speaking, reading and writing.

reuse it recycle it

背熟：**We keep trying all four methods, but the sheer volume of rubbish we produce worldwide threatens to overwhelm us.**

volume == amount

threaten to do

Eg: The coming earthquake threatens the village.

Dark clouds threaten a heavy storm. 乌云预示着有一场风暴。

The sun promises a good day.

It is possible...

背熟：**The need to produce ever-increasing quantities of cheap food leads to a different kind of pollution.**

leads to

L47-04 end 12'22"

Lesson47A end 48:29

Lesson47B begin 54:49

L47-05 begin 49-02

背熟：**The price we pay for cheap food may be already too high**

The price we pay is too high.

abandon 强调被迫放弃

organically-grown vegetable: 绿色蔬菜

every time: whenever
innocent (of) adj. 清白的, 无辜的, 无知的

Paragraph 3 (l.15)

noise

L47-05 end 12'19"

L47-06 begin 12'49"

Paragraph 3 (l.15)

insidious 暗中为害的, 阴险的

Burglar alarms going off at any time of the day or night serve only to annoy passers-by and actually (to) assist burglars to burgle.

背熟: Car alarms constantly scream at us in the street and are a source of profound irritation.

Eg: Her husband earns a lot of money every month and he is a source of income. 他的丈夫每月能赚很多钱, 这是他的一棵摇钱树。

背熟: The survey revealed a large number of sources of noise that we really dislike.

名词结构 (平行结构)

lawn mower 割草机

container trucks: 集装箱卡车

sources of noise

背熟: New technology has also made its own contribution to noise.

make contribution to 作出..... 的贡献

L47-06 end 12'50"

L47-07 begin 14'08"

contribute to 引起, 导致, 是.....的起因

Eg: Air pollution contributes to disease.

object to take object to

背熟: Loud conversations on mobile phones invade our thoughts or interrupt the pleasure of meeting friends for a quiet chat.

Eg: The air pollution survey revealed... 空气污染调查显示.....

turn out: prove

offend: 惹怒 offender 罪魁祸首

were found: 客观描述

It is said...

It is revealed...

背熟: 20% of mem in their mid-thirties in their early thirties

背熟: Against these figures, it was found that ...

Comparing these figures, we found that...

背熟: are woken 被惊醒 / keep awake 不能入睡

比较:

Whatever the source of noise, one thing is certain: silence, it seems, has become a golden memory.

However you decide to spend your time, one thing is certain: you will arrive at your destination fresh and uncrumpled. (L44, l128-29)

L47-07 end 14'08"

L47-08 begin 10'08"

【Vocabulary】P218

Explain the meanings of the following words and phrases as they are used in the passage:

dump(l.3); sheer volume (l.5); rubbish (l.5);

leads to (l.8); dairy (l.11); abandon

(l.11)organically-grown (l.12)

dump: drop completely

sheer volume: pure amount

rubbish: garbage

lead to: result in, cause; bring about

dairy: a place where milk is kept and milk product are made

abandon: give up

organically-grown: using farming or gardening methods without artificial chemicals or fertilizer

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 ---- the sheer volume of rubbish we produce worldwide ____.

a. is heaped up like a great mountain

b. is spread over the world like a blanket

c. is already beyond our control

d. is like a tide that will rise and drown us

2 The root cause of pollution in agriculture is ____.

a. the intensive use of pesticides and fertilizers

b. the twin pressures to produce more food and at lower cost

c. the conflict between good hygiene and cheap meat production

d. the unrealistic price of organically-grown

vegetables

背熟: **The root cause of pollution in agriculture is the twin pressures to produce more food and at lower cost.**

3 For most people, the most distressing form of noise pollution is _____.

- a. dogs barking all night b. people using mobile phones
c. heavy trucks in quiet villages d. noisy neighbours having parties

4 Snoring causes a severe noise problem for _____.

- a. young males in particular b. a majority of middle-aged men
c. women of all ages d. young women especially

背熟: **Snoring causes a severe noise problem for women of all ages.**

Structure

5 ---- there are only four ways _____ rubbish. (II.2-3)

- a. of dealing with b. which to deal with
c. can be dealt with d. to be dealing with

6 We keep trying _____ methods. (I.5)

- a. these all four b. of these all four c. all of these four d. all these of four

7 Burglar alarms _____ at any time of the day or night serve only to annoy. (II.16-17)

- a. that go off b. that are going off c. go off d. which going off
people traveling around the world quite often

L47-08 end 10'08"

L47-09 begin 5'34"

8 A recent survey revealed that _____ dogs barking incessantly in the night that we
Lesson48 begin 1:05:22 Lesson48A begin 36:10 L48-01 begin 4'45"

§ **Lesson 48 The silent village** 沉默的村庄

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- inaccessible adj. 难接近的,达不到的
- hospitable adj. 不好客的
- hostile adj. 不友好的,有敌意的
- vicinity n. 周围,近邻
- architectural adj. 建筑的
- fresco n. 壁画
- abruptly adv. 突然地,意外地
- tramp v. 徒步行进
- moor v. (用绳、链、锚)系(船)
- ferry v. (用渡船)运

dislike most. (II.18-19)

- a. it is b. is c. there be d. there are

vocabulary 词汇

9 ★★★ New technology has also _____ in noise pollution. (I.23)

- a. done its bit b. done a share c. played a role d. given its all
make contributio to 导致,造成了
play an important role / part in sth.
Eg: Reading plays an important role in our English study.

do its bit: 尽本份做应该做的

do a share: 做好份内工作

10 A lot of people _____ to mobile phones, especially in public places. (I.24)

- a. except b. offend c. take exception
d. take offence

take exception against

offernd 冒犯,触怒,使不舒服

take offence **at** sb. / sth.

11 背熟: The noise pollution survey _____ a rather surprising source of noise. (II.26-27)

- a. brought to light b. gave birth to c. came to be d. took the lid off
bring sth. to light
come to light

12 _____ these figures, it was found that only 5% of women snore. (I.29)

- a. Comparing with b. By comparison with
c. In comparing d. In comparing with
by comparison
by comparison with sth.

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. A
8. A 9. C 10. C 11. A 12. B

L47-09 end 5'34" Lesson47B end 54:49 Lesson47 end 1:43:18

- straggle v. 蔓延,散乱分布
- sardine n. 沙丁鱼,沙丁鱼罐头
- dilapidated adj. 陈旧破烂的,倒塌的
- rag n. 破烂衣服
- motionless adj. 不动的
- procession adj. 不动的
- shawl n. 披巾,围巾
- peer v. 凝视,盯着
- quicken v. 加快

◆inaccessible adj. 难接近的,达不到的

access n. 通路,通道

entrance 入口

accessible adj.: easy to get to / easy to understand

Eg: The book is accessible to learners / beginners.

The facts are accessible to all of us. 易于得到的/ 易于理解的

L48-01 end 4'45"

L48-02 begin 10'55"

Eg: Heavy snow made the village inaccessible to traffic.

approach: v. 接近

approachable

unapproachable 无可匹敌的; 难以接近的

Eg: He has got unapproachable beauty.

access: opportunity 机会

Eg: Only high officials have access to him.

Only teachers have access to the headmaster.

◆hospitable adj. 好客的

amiable 亲切的

cordial 热诚的, 热心的

faithful 忠诚的

friendly 友好的

neighborly 和睦的

receptive 善于接受的, 接纳的

L48-02 end 10'55"

L48-03 begin 10'24"

◆hostile adj. 不友好的, 有敌意的

unfriendly

be hostile **to** / be unfriendly **to**

antagonistic: 对抗性的, 敌对的

offensive: 进攻性的

Eg: I took notice of his offensive remarks.

aggressive; 挑衅的

◆vicinity n. 周围, 近邻

in the vicinity / in the neighborhood 比后一个正式 (书面用词)

I often visit the fair in the vicinity.

vicinity: about

in the vicinity of

He is in the vicinity of fifty. 他大约 50 岁吧。

the inhabitant of the vicinity

◆architectural adj. 建筑的

◆fresco n. 壁画

◆abruptly adv. 突然地, 意外地

◆tramp v. 徒步行进

◆moor v. (用绳、链、锚) 系 (船)

◆ferry v. (用渡船) 运

◆straggle v. 蔓延, 散乱分布

◆dilapidated adj. 陈旧破烂的, 倒塌的

dilapidate vt. 使倒塌, 使破损

dilapidation n.

batter v. 撞坏, 撞击

battered adj.

Eg: It is easy to recognize the battered car.

broken-down

run down 渐渐变糟, 恶化; run-down: 渐渐被恶化的

L48-03 end 10'24"

L48-04 begin 10'11"

Eg: The doctor had not to do with his run-down renewal.

◆sardine n. 沙丁鱼, 沙丁鱼罐头

◆rag n. 破烂衣服

◆motionless adj. 不动的

◆procession adj. 不动的

◆shawl n. 披巾, 围巾

◆peer v. 凝视, 盯着

◆quicken v. 加快

【Text】

§ **Lesson 48 The silent village** 沉默的村庄

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

听录音, 然后回答以下问题。

Why was the village silent?

In this much-travelled world, there are still thousands of places which are inaccessible to tourists. We always assume that villagers in remote places are friendly and hospitable. But people who are cut off not only from

5

foreign tourists, but even from their own countrymen can be hostile to travellers. Visits to really remote villages are seldom enjoyable -- as my wife and I discovered during a tour through the Balkans.

10

We had spent several days in a small town and visited a number of old churches in the vicinity. These attracted many visitors, for they were not only of great architectural interest, but contained a large number of beautifully preserved frescoes as well. On the day before our departure, several bus loads of tourists descended on the town. This was more than we could bear, so we decided

15

to spend our last day exploring the countryside. Taking a path which led out of the town, we crossed a few fields until we came to a dense wood. We expected the path to end abruptly, but we found that it traced its way through the trees. We tramped through the wood for over two hours until we arrived at a deep stream. We

could see that the path continued on the other side, but we had no idea how we could get across the stream. Suddenly my wife spotted a boat moored to the bank. In it there was a boatman fast asleep. We gently woke him up and asked him to ferry us to the other side. Though he was reluctant to do so at first, we eventually persuaded him to take us.

20 The path led to a tiny village perched on the steep sides of a mountain. The place consisted of a straggling unmade road which was lined on either side by small houses. Even under a clear blue sky, the village looked forbidding, as all the houses were built of grey mud bricks. The village seemed deserted, the only sign of life being an ugly-
25 looking black goat on a short length of rope tied to a tree in a field nearby. Sitting down on a dilapidated wooden fence near the field, we opened a couple of tins of sardines and had a picnic lunch. All at once, I noticed that my wife seemed to be filled with alarm. Looking up I saw that we were surrounded by children in rags who were looking at us silently as we ate. We offered them food and spoke to them kindly, but they remained motionless. I concluded that they were simply shy of strangers. When we later walked down the main street of the villager, we were followed by a silent procession of children. The village which had seemed deserted, immediately came to life. Faces appeared at windows. Men in shirt sleeves stood outside their houses and glared at us. Old women in black shawls peered at us from doorways. The most frightening thing of all was that not a sound could be heard. There was no doubt that we were unwelcome visitors. We needed no further warning. Turning back down the main street,
30 we quickened our pace and made our way rapidly towards the stream where we hoped the boatman was waiting.

参考译文

在这个旅游频繁的世界里，仍有成千上万个游人足迹未至的地方。人们总是以为偏僻的地方的村民们热情好客。但是，那些不但与外国旅游者隔绝，而且与本国同胞隔绝的人们有可能对游客抱有敌意。到真正偏僻的村庄去旅游并不是一件愉快的事情。我与妻子在一次周游巴尔干半岛时对此深有体会。

我们在一座小镇上逗留了几夭，参观了附近的许多古老的教堂。这些教堂吸引大量游客，不仅是因为建筑风格奇特，而且还有大量保存完好的壁画。我们离开小镇的前一天，镇上来了几辆满载游客的公共汽车。人多得使我们难以忍受，于是我们决定利用最后一天去乡间一游。我们走上了一条出镇的小路，穿过

几块农田，来到一片茂密的树林。我们原以为小路会到此突然终止。没想到它到树林中继续向前延伸。我们在树林中跋涉了两个多小时，到了一条深溪边。我们可以看到小路在深溪对岸继续向前伸展，但却不知如何越过这道深溪。突然，妻子发现岸边泊着一条小船，船上有一船夫在呼呼大睡。我们轻轻地把他唤醒，请他把我们摆渡过溪。一开始，他很不愿意，但经劝说，终于同意了。

顺着小路，我们来到一个座落在陡峭山坡上的小村庄。这儿有一条未经修筑的弯弯曲曲的道路，路两边排列着一些矮小的农舍。农舍全用灰色的土坯建成，因此，即使在晴朗的蓝天底下，村庄看上去也会令人感到难以亲近。村里似乎无人居住，唯一的生命迹象是附近田里一只面目可憎的黑山羊，用一截短绳拴在一棵树上。我们在田边一堵东倒西歪的篱笆墙上坐下来，打开几听沙丁鱼罐头，吃了一顿野外午餐。突然，我注意到妻子十分惊恐。我抬头一看，发现我们被一群衣衫褴褛的小孩团团围住了，他们在默不作声地看着我们吃饭。我们给他们东西吃，客客气气地同他们交谈，但他们却一动也不动。我认为这不过是他们在陌生人面前表现出的害羞。后来，我们在村里的主要街道上行走的时候，一队默不作声的孩子跟在我们后头。刚才还似乎空荡荡的村庄一下子活跃了起来，窗口露出了一张张面孔，只穿着衬衣的男人们站在屋子外面凶狠地盯着我们，披黑纱巾的老妇人站在门口偷偷地瞅着我们。最令人害怕的是到处没有一点声音。毫无疑问，我们的来访是不受欢迎的。我们不需要进一步的警告了。便掉转身子，沿着那条主要街道加快步伐，快速地朝深溪边走去，希望船夫还在那儿等着我们。

【课文讲解】

只讲关键句型部分

be accessible / inaccessible to sb. 是……难以达到的

not only from / but from 强调介词

cut off from: separate from / isolate from 与……隔绝

背熟: Visits to really remote villages are seldom enjoyable

L48-04 end 10'11"

Lesson48A end 36:10

Lesson48B begin 29:12

L48-05 begin (51-02) 10'06"

Eg: He is cut off from all his friends after he went abroad.

Such people who are hostile to travellers are ones who are cut off from the society.

第一自然段很重要，请背熟。

of great interest

beautifully-preserved

背熟: On the day before our departure, several bus loads of tourists descended on the town.

背熟: several bus loads of tourists

背熟: Taking a path which led out of the town, we crossed a few fields until we came to a dense wood.

背熟: The village seemed deserted, the only sign of life being an ugly-looking black goat on a short length of rope tied to a tree in a field nearby.

背熟: The village which had seemed deserted, immediately came to life.

背熟: The most frightening thing of all was that not a sound could be heard.

there is no doubt that / without any doubts
毫无疑问

trace its way

make one's way out of

fight one's way 杀出一条路来

feel one's way 摸出一条路

wind one's way 蜿蜒一条路

背熟: but we had no idea how we could get across the stream.
a boat moored to the bank

Lesson49 begin 1:05:22 L49-01 begin 16'57"

§ **Lesson 49 The ideal servant** 理想的仆人

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

●rambling adj. 杂乱无章的

●sentimentally adv. 感情上, 多情地

●lavishly adv. 慷慨地, 大方地

●immaculate adj. 清洁的, 无污点的

●parquet n. 镶木地板

●gleam v. 发亮, 闪光

●preside v. 指挥

●invisible adj. 看不见的, 无形的

●scrub v. 擦拭, 刷洗

●enlightened adj. 开明的

●fickleness n. 变化无常

●unrelenting adj. 不屈不挠的, 不松懈的

●disillusion v. 使幻想破灭

●industriousness n. 勤奋

●qualification n. 资格, 能力

●mirth n. 欢笑, 高兴

●stack v. 整齐地堆放

●cellar n. 地窖

◆rambling adj. 杂乱无章的

ramble vi.

1. 闲逛, 漫步

L48-05 end 10'06"

L48-06 begin 9'54"

a boatman fast asleep

fast asleep 熟睡

背熟: The path led to a tiny village perched on the steep sides of a mountain.

背熟: The place consisted of a straggling unmade road which was lined on either side by small houses.

on either side == on both sides

L48-06 end 9'54"

L48-07 begin 9'17"

all at once == almost immediately

背熟: I concluded that they were simply shy of strangers.

现在分词做状语

定语从句

过去分词做定语

L48-07 end 9'17" Lesson48B end 29:12 Lesson48 end 1:05:22

stroll

go for a walk / have a walk

go for a stroll / have stroll

They rambled through the forest.

2. 漫谈, 聊开

Eg: The old lady began to ramble about her youth.

3. 植物的蔓延生长

Eg: The wild roses ramble over the fence.

◆sentimentally adv. 感情上, 多情地

sentiment n.

sentiments 情操

The sentiments of pity: 怜悯之心

emotion 感情 (总称)

out of sentiments: 出于同情

sentimental adj. emotional

◆◆◆lavishly adv. 慷慨地, 大方地

lavish adj. 慷慨的, 大方的

eg: Are you lavished to your friend.

extravagant 挥霍的, 奢侈的

lavish money on sth. /sb.

lavish praises on sb.

grudge 舍不得给

Eg: Do you lavish praises on your friends? 你

总是大肆吹捧你的朋友吗？

lavish care on sb. 过度的关心或宠爱

generous 慷慨大方的

liberal: 开明的

prodigal: 浪费的, 挥霍无度的

wasteful

反义词: thrifty, economical, frugal, not wasteful

L49-01 end 16'57" 52-01

L49-02 begin 16'54"

◆immaculate adj. 清洁的, 无污点的
spotless

◆parquet n. 镶木地板

◆gleam v. 发亮, 闪光

◆preside v. 指挥

vi. preside at

Eg: Who will preside at the party?

Yesterday my friend visited me so I
preside at tea. 招待

◆invisible adj. 看不见的, 无形的
visible

◆scrub v. 擦拭, 刷洗

参见 L15

polish: 润色

◆enlightened adj. 开明的

◆fickleness n. 变化无常

◆unrelenting adj. 不屈不挠的, 不松懈的
strong-minded
continuous

◆disillusion v. 使幻想破灭

◆industriousness n. 勤奋

◆qualification n. 资格, 能力

◆mirth n. 欢笑, 高兴 (书面化, 文学中或诗歌中)
happiness, joy, merriment, fun, amusement,
entertainment, delight, rapture

◆stack v. 整齐地堆放

◆cellar n. 地窖

【Text】

Lesson 49 The ideal servant 理想的仆人

Listen to the tape then answer the question
below.

听录音, 然后回答以下问题。

What was Bessie's little weakness?

It is a good thing my aunt Harriet died years
ago. If she were alive today she would not
be able to air her views on her favourite
topic of conversation: domestic servants.

Aunt Harriet lived in that leisurely age when
servants were employed to do housework.
She had a huge, rambling country house
called 'The Gables'. She was sentimentally
attached to this house, for even though it
was far too big for her needs, she persisted
in living there long after her husband's death.

Before she grew old, Aunt Harriet used to
entertain lavishly. I often visited The Gables
when I was boy. No matter how many guests
were present, the great house was always
immaculate. The parquet floors shone like
mirrors; highly polished silver was displayed
in gleaming glass cabinets; even my uncle's
huge collection of books was kept
miraculously free from dust. Aunt Harriet
presided over an invisible army of servants
that continuously scrubbed, cleaned, and
polished. She always referred to them as
'the shifting population', for they came and
went with such frequency that I never even
got a chance to learn their names. Though
my aunt pursued what was, in those days, an
enlightened policy, in that she never allowed
her domestic staff to work more than eight
hours a day, she was extremely difficult to
please. While she always criticized the
fickleness of human nature, she carried on an
unrelenting search for the ideal servant to the
end of her days, even after she had been
sadly disillusioned by Bessie.

Bessie worked for Aunt Harriet for
three years. During that time she so gained
my aunt's confidence that she was put in
charge of the domestic staff. Aunt Harriet
could not find words to praise Bessie's indus-
triousness and efficiency. In addition to all
her other qualifications, Bessie was an
expert cook. She acted the role of the
perfect servant for three years before Aunt
Harriet discovered her 'little weakness'. After
being absent from the Gables for a week, my
aunt unexpectedly returned one afternoon
with a party of guests and instructed Bessie
to prepare dinner. No only was the meal well
below the usual standard, but Bessie seemed
unable to walk steadily. She bumped into the
furniture and kept mumbling about the
guests. When she came in with the last
course -- a huge pudding -- she tripped on
the carpet and the pudding went flying
through the air, narrowly missed my aunt,
and crashed on the dining table with
considerable force. Though this caused great
mirth among the guests, Aunt Harriet was
horrified. She reluctantly came to the
conclusion that Bessie was drunk. The guests
had, of course, realized this from the
moment Bessie opened the door for them

and, long before the final catastrophe, had had a difficult time trying to conceal their amusement. The poor girl was dismissed instantly. After her departure, Aunt Harriet discovered that there were piles of empty wine bottles of all shapes and sizes neatly stacked in what had once been Bessie's wardrobe. They had mysteriously found their way there from the wine cellar!

参考译文

我的姑妈哈丽特好多年前就去世了，这倒是件好事。如果她活到今天，她将不能就她热衷的话题“佣人”发表意见了。哈丽特生活在一个悠闲的年代，家务事都由雇来的佣人代劳。她在乡下有一幢巨大杂乱的房子，叫作“山墙庄园”。她对这幢房子在感情上难舍难分。房子实在太大了，但在丈夫去世多年后，她仍然执意长年住在那儿。哈丽特姑妈年轻时，喜欢大摆宴席，招待宾客。我小时候常去“山墙庄园”作客。不管去多少宾客，大房子里总是收拾得干干净净。镶木地板洁如明镜，擦得发亮的银器陈列在明亮的玻璃柜里，连姑夫的大量藏书也保存得很好，奇迹般地一尘不染。哈丽特姑妈统率着一支看不见的佣人大军，他们不停地擦拭、清扫、刷洗。她称这些佣人叫“流动人口”，因为他们来匆匆，所以我甚至都没有机会知道他们的姓名。姑妈待佣人在当时算是开明的，从来不让佣人每天工作超过8小时，但他们很难使她称心如意。她一方面总是批评人的本性朝三暮四，另一方面她又持之以恒地寻找一个理想的佣人。即使在贝西大大地伤她的心之后，她还在找，一直到她死去。

贝西在哈丽特家干了3年。在此期间，她赢得了姑母的赏识，甚至当上了大管家。哈丽特不知该用什么言辞来赞扬贝西的勤奋与高效。贝西除了有各种本领以外，还是一个烹饪大师。她担任“理想仆人”角色3年之后，哈丽特终于发现她有“小小的弱点”。一次，姑妈有一个星期没在“山墙庄园”住。一天下午，她出其不意地回来了，带来一大批客人，吩咐贝西准备晚饭。结果，不仅饭菜远不如平时做得好，而且贝西走路来似乎东倒西歪。她撞到了家具上，嘴里还不断咕咕哝哝议论客人。当她端着最后一道菜——一大盘布丁——走进屋来时，在地毯上绊了一跤。布丁飞到半空，从姑母身边擦过，然后狠狠地砸在餐桌上。这件事引起了客人们的欢笑，但哈丽特却着实吓了一跳。她不得不认定贝西是喝醉了。客人们自然从贝西为他们开门那一刻起就看出来了，在好长一段时间里，即最后这个乱子发生前，他们努力克制才没笑出声来。贝西当即被解雇了。贝西走后，哈丽特姑妈发现在贝西以前用过的衣柜里整整齐齐地放着一堆堆形状各导、大小不一的酒瓶子。这些酒瓶神不知鬼不觉地从酒窖来到了这里。

【课文讲解】

背熟：If she were alive today she would not be able to air her views on her favourite topic of conversation:

domestic servants.

air one's views on sth. / sb. 对.....发表意见

背熟：lived in that leisurely age when

背熟：She was sentimentally attached to this house, for even though it was far too big for her needs, she persisted in living there long after her husband's death.

attach to

背熟：she persisted in living there long after her husband's death.

persist in doing sth.

long after

short after

long before

short before

L49-02 end 16'54"

L49-03 begin 15'18"

even my uncle's huge collection of books was kept miraculously free from dust.

背熟：She always referred to them as 'the shifting population', for they came and went with such frequency that I never even got a chance to learn their names.

refer to / regard sb. as

背熟：she was extremely difficult to please.

背熟：While she always criticized the fickleness of human nature, she carried on an unrelenting search for the ideal servant to the end of her days, even after she had been sadly disillusioned by Bessie.

carry on

During that time

put sb. in charge of 安排某人负责

in addition to

L49-03 end 52-03 15'18"

L49-04 begin 16'23"

act the role: play the role

be absent from: be away from

not only 位于句首，引导完整的语句，部分倒装

below, above 常用的修饰词是 well

bump into: knock oneself into / onto

背熟: **reluctantly came to the conclusion that...**

come to the conclusion
draw a conclusion
arrive at conclusion
reach conclusion
jump to conclusion

Lesson50 begin 1:41:50 Lesson50A begin 52:13 L50-01 begin 53-01 10'28"

§ **Lesson 50 New Year resolutions** 新年的决心

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

- resolution n. 决心
- mentally adv. 内心里
- compile v. 编辑, 编制
- formidable adj. 令人畏惧的
- recur v. 再发生, 又出现
- regularity n. 规律性
- accomplishment n. 成就
- attainment n. 达到
- inveterate adj. 根深蒂固的
- self-improvement n. 自我完善
- scheme n. 简单的计划, 方案
- ambitious adj. 雄心勃勃的
- pitfall n. 意外的困难, 易犯的错误
- modest adj. 要求不过分的
- assiduously adv. 刻苦地
- self-discipline n. 自我约束
- frame n. 躯体
- betray v. 暴露, 显露
- troop v. 成群结队地走动
- unsettle v. 使不安
- taunt n. 嘲笑, 奚落人的话
- jibe n. 嘲弄, 挖苦
- good-humouredly adv. 和气地, 心情好地
- wane v. 逐渐变小, 变弱
- diminish v. 减少, 缩小
- hypnotize v. 使欲睡, 使蒙眬
- undoing n. 祸根, 毁灭的原因
- screen n. 电视机屏幕

◆resolution n. 决心

resolution

1. the quality of being resolute / formal decision 决心, 决议

take resolution to do sth. / make up one's mind to do sth.

be determined to do sth. / decide to do sth.

resolve / resolve to do sth.

resolve sb. on sth. 使某人做某事

Eg: Before we came here, we resolved to learn English hard.

I resolved him on English study.

Nobody resolved him on this decision. 没有人使他做这样的决定。

have a difficult time doing sth. : have trouble / difficulty in doing sth

背熟: **They had mysteriously found their way there from the wine cellar!**

L49-04 end 16'23" Lesson49 end 1:05:22

resolute adj. 坚决的, 果断的

resolution / resolve / resolute

Eg: We must be true in word and resolute in deed. 我们必须是言必信, 行必果。

◆mentally adv. 内心里

◆compile v. 编辑, 编制

compile

compile / edit vt.

editor

compile: collect information and arrange in a book (great book / dictionary)

edit: collect information and arrange in newspaper or magazine

Eg: The editor is busy editing the newspaper.

◆formidable adj. 令人畏惧的

◆recur v. 再发生, 又出现

recur v.

occur: happen

occur to

A good idea occurred to me. / It occurred to him that he should open the door.

recur: occur again

incur: vt. 导致, 招致, 造成 (lead to / result in / give rise to / cause)

Eg: Air pollution incurs some terrible disease.

L50-01 end 10'28"

L50-02 begin 53-02 10'25"

◆regularity n. 规律性

◆accomplishment n. 成就

◆attainment n. 达到

accomplish 成功地达到目的

accomplish one's purpose / goal / dream / aim / work / task

He accomplished his journey.

attain: 得到, 获得 (经过艰苦努力)

attain one's ambition

get success / attain success

achieve : 达到一定目的时的表现及努力

Eg: This is what he achieved after ten years of hard work.

treasure / cherish / value / prize 珍惜

Eg: We always cherish what we have achieved.

I feel very happy because you accomplish your dream.

accomplishment: 成就(修养, 才艺, 本领方面)

attainment 获得, 得到

Eg: Such accomplishment is beyond your attainment.

His attainment is beyond my understanding.

His accomplishment is unexpected to me.

achievement / accomplishment

attain to / attain

attain to : 某人希望达到的成就

attain: 某人已经达到的成就

Eg: He has attained heights that I can never attain to.

This is the height that I hope to attain to.

This is the height that I have attained.

◆ inveterate adj. 根深蒂固的

◆ self-improvement n. 自我完善

◆ scheme n. 简单的计划, 方案

◆ ambitious adj. 雄心勃勃的

ambition

Eg: Everybody in the modern society must be ambitious.

If you work hard, you can attain your ambition.

◆ pitfall n. 意外的困难, 易犯的错误

◆ modest adj. 要求不过分的

Eg: I make New Year resolution and I think them modest.

L50-02 end 10'28"

L50-03 begin 10'48"

Eg: Being modest is one of our virtues.

◆ assiduously adv. 刻苦地

assiduously == diligently

Eg: If you study English assiduously, nothing is difficult.

◆ self-discipline n. 自我约束

self-improvement 自我完善

◆ frame n. 躯体

body

◆ betray v. 暴露, 显露

Eg: I don't know who betrayed me.

Her face betrayed her nervousness.

◆ troop v. 成群结队地走动

◆ unsettle v. 使不安

◆ ◆ ◆ taunt n. 嘲笑, 奚落人的话

taunt vt.

taunt sb. with sth. 因为某事而讥笑某人

Eg: They taunt him with being poor / poverty.

make fun of / laugh at

Eg: He is wearing a strange hat, so we make fun of him.

jeer vi.

jeer at 嘲笑, 戏弄

Eg: We know he is eccentric, but anyway don't jeer at him

mock / mock at

Eg: Mocked (at) by others, he had my sympathy.

When the teacher is writing on the blackboard, naughty boy student mocked at him.

scoff at / pour scorn on

Eg: Don't scoff at those students who don't have good accomplishment / mark.

gibe

gibe at sb. / sth.

taunt: try to make sb. angry or upset by saying unkind remarks.

Eg: They taunted him with being poor, so he felt angry.

gibe: say sth. that is intended to make the person look silly.

Eg: I gibe at him because, in my opinion, he was dull.

L50-03 end 10'48"

L50-04 begin 10'23"

朗读: taunt / make fun of / jeer at / mock / mock at / scoff at / gibe at

◆ jibe n. 嘲弄, 挖苦

◆ good-humouredly adv. 和气地, 心情好地

◆ ◆ ◆ wane v. 逐渐变小, 变弱

wane: becoming less or weaker

Eg: He exerts subtle influence on his children, but his children are growing up, so his influence is waning.

wane: showing a decreasing bright area after full moon.

The moon will wax, the moon will wane.
月有阴晴圆缺

◆ diminish v. 减少, 缩小

diminish: vt. make smaller in size, amount, number and so on.

Eg: The Second World War diminished the country's wealth.

diminish vi.

Eg: Time will never cause our friendship to diminish. 我们的友谊决不会因时间的流逝而淡薄。

reduce

Eg: If you reduce the price to 10 dollars, I will take it.

reduce to / reduce by

The shop assistant reduced the price by 10

dollars.

lessen 数量, 价值, 可能性的降低

sharp / sharpened wide / widen quick / quicken
Eg: I agree to your idea that you can climb the tree, but anyway, please lessen the risk of being hurt / **injured**

I agree to your idea that you can climb the tree, but anyway, please lessen the risk of being hurt / injured.

increase / decrease

Eg: Our interest in English / clothes is increasing.

L50-04 end 10'23"

L50-05 begin 54-01

lessen 可能性的降低

wane 渐渐地衰退

◆hypnotize v. 使欲睡, 使蒙胧

lull 催人欲睡

lull sb. to sleep

◆undoing n. 祸根, 毁灭的原因

◆screen n. 电视机屏幕

【Text】 § Lesson 50 New Year resolutions 新年的决心

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

听录音, 然后回答以下问题。

What marked the end of the writer's New Year resolutions?

The New Year is a time for resolutions. Mentally, at least, most of us could compile formidable lists of 'dos' and 'don'ts'. The same old favorites recur year in year out with monotonous regularity. We resolve to

5 get up earlier each morning, eat less, find more time to play with the children, do a thousand and one jobs about the house, be nice to people we don't like, drive carefully, and take the dog for a walk every day. Past experience has taught us that certain accomplishments are beyond attainment. If we remain inveterate smokers, it is only because we have so often experienced the frustration that results from failure. Most of us fail in our efforts at self-improvement because our schemes are too ambitious and we never have time to carry them out. We also make the fundamental error of 30 announcing our resolutions to everybody so that we look even more foolish when we slip back into our bad old ways. Aware of these

pitfalls, this year I attempted to keep my resolutions to myself. I limited myself to two modest ambitions: to do physical exercise every morning and to read more of an evening. An all-night party on New Year's Eve provided me with a good excuse for not carrying out either of these new resolutions on the first day of the year, but on the second, I applied myself assiduously to the task.

The daily exercises lasted only eleven minutes and I proposed to do them early in the morning before anyone had got up. The self-discipline required to drag myself out of bed eleven minutes earlier than usual was considerable. Nevertheless, I managed to creep down into the living room for two days before anyone found me out. After jumping about on the carpet and twisting the human frame into uncomfortable posi-

tions, I sat down at the breakfast table in an exhausted condition. It was this that betrayed me. The next morning the whole family trooped in to watch the performance. That was really unsettling, but I fended off the taunts and jibes of the family good-humouredly and soon everybody got used to the idea. However, my enthusiasm waned. The time I spent at exercises gradually diminished. Little by little the eleven minutes fell to zero. By January 10th, I was back to where I had started from. I argued that if I spent less time exhausting myself at exercises in the morning, I would keep my mind

fresh for reading when I got home for work. Resisting the temptation to hypnotize myself, I sat in my room for a few evenings with my eyes glued to a book. One night, however, feeling cold and lonely, I went downstairs and sat in front of the television pretending to read. That proved to be my undoing, for I soon got back to my old bad habit of dozing off in front of the screen. I still haven't given up my resolution to do more reading. In fact, I have just bought a book entitled How to Read a Thousand Words a Minute. Perhaps it will solve my problem, but I just haven't had time to read it!

【课文讲解】

背熟: **The New Year is a time for resolutions.**

a time for

The spring Festival is a time for gathering.

Mentally: at heart

We become illogical when we decide what can be eaten and what can not be eaten.

背熟: **The same old favorites recur year in year out with monotonous regularity.**

favourite: resolution

recur: happen / take place

year in year out: one year after another / year by year

day by day / one day after another / day in day out

resolve to: 下定决心

背熟: **Past experience has taught us that certain accomplishments are beyond attainment.**

It is hard for us to attain some certain accomplishment

inveterate: deep rooted

背熟: **If we remain inveterate smokers, it is only because we have so often experienced the frustration that results from failure.**

Because we have too often experience the frustration, it means nothing to me.

result from: 由 产生的

result in: lead to / cause

Failure will result in frustration. 失败会导致挫败心理。

L50-05 end 10'17"

Lesson50A end 52:13

Lesson50B begin 49:36

L50-06 begin 10'18"

背熟: **Most of us fail in our efforts at self-improvement because our schemes are too ambitious and we never have time to carry them out.**

carry out: carry off

fail in our efforts / attempt

Eg: We accumulate clutter in an attempt to avoid waste.

背熟: **We also make the fundamental error of announcing our resolutions to everybody so that we look even more foolish when we slip**

back into our bad old ways.

Eg: If you often make some common mistakes, you will get the frustration.

slip back into: return to the normal way

背熟: **Aware of these pitfalls, this year I attempted to keep my resolutions to myself.**

keep my resolutions to myself: keep my resolutions secret

Eg: We arrived at our destination exhausted.

Exhausted, we arrived at our destination.

Aware of the importance, I attempt to carry it out. 由于意识到了此事的重要性, 我竭尽全力来把它实现。

limit oneself to

ambitions: New Year resolutions

limit: 限定到点

restrict: 限定到范围

L50-06 end 10'18"

L50-07 begin

A good beginning is half success.

背熟: **but on the second, I applied myself assiduously to the task.**

apply oneself to / apply one's time to / apply one's mind / energy to

be devoted / dedicated to

In 2002, I shall apply myself to learning English.

propose to do / I decided to do

The self-discipline required to study English hard is considerable as well.

nevertheless: however

背熟: **I sat down at the breakfast table in an exhausted condition.**

in an exhausted condition: exhausted

It...that... 句型

It was exhausted condition that betrayed my secret.

troop in: went / came into the room in group
unsettle: upset

背熟: **That was really unsettling, but I fended off the taunts and jibes of the family good-humouredly and soon everybody got used to the idea.**

L50-07 end 10'39"

L50-08 begin 10'32"

fend off: defeat

wane: diminish step by step
argue: got a good excuse

keep one's mind fresh for doing sth.

背熟: **Resisting the hypnotizing effect of television, I sat in my room for a few evenings with my eyes glued to a book.**
the temptation to do

slip back into our bad old ways / I was back to where I had started from / got back to my old bad habit

dozing off: half sleep

I soon got back to my old bad habit of nodding.

a book entitled: a book which is entitled

We must be true in word and resolute in deed.

L50-08 end 10'32"

L50-09 begin 12'38"

【Vocabulary】P230

Explain the meanings of the following words and phrases as they are used in the passage: mentally(l.1); formidable(l.2); recur year in year out(l.3); beyond attainment(l.8); inveterate(l.8); frustration(l.9); carrying out(l.14)

mentally: 本质上, 内心里 at heart; in the mind

formidable: causing fear

recur year in year out: occur again, appear year after year

beyond attainment: can not be attained / accomplished / achieved

inveterate: deep rooted

frustration: disappointment in one's mind or the feeling that you get from your failure.

carrying out: putting into practice

【Multiple choice questions】 P231 Comprehension

1 In making his New Year resolutions, the writer _____.

a. decided against choosing any of his old favourites

b. did not tell his family of them in case they announced them in public

c. was careful to choose two which he thought were within his scope

d. underestimated the time it would take him to get up in the mornings

within his scope

Eg: I choose the job which I think is within my scope. 我选择了这项工作, 我认为是我力所能及的。

2 The family realized what one of his resolutions was when they _____.

a. noticed how tired he looked when he came to breakfast

b. heard him jumping about on the carpet in the living room

c. came down earlier than usual and saw him doing his exercises

d. saw him reading instead of looking at television

3 The writer's efforts to read more have so failed because _____.

a. he is not able to read quickly enough in the time he has available

b. he enjoys watching television more than he does reading

c. his room is too cold for comfort and he misses his family

d. he has not been able to resist the hypnotic effects of television

one's effort to do sth. 干什么所做出的努力

Structure

4 Past experiences has taught us that we _____ certain accomplishments. (ll.7-8)

a. never attain b. would never attain c. are never attaining d. will never attain

5 ---- we look even more foolish than we _____ when we slip back into our old ways. (ll.11-12)

a. would b. should c. need d. ought

6 I jumped about on the carpet and _____ uncomfortable positions that I sat down exhausted. (ll.20-21)

a. so twisted me into b. so twisted myself into

c. twisted myself into such d. twisted me into such

7 I argued that _____ less time exhausting myself, I would ... (ll.25-26)

a. to spend b. by spending c. my spending d. to have spent

Eg: I will learn English well by working hard every day.

L50-09 end (55-01) 12'38"

L50-10 begin 5'37"

Vocabulary

8 This year I attempted to keep my resolutions _____ . (l.12)

a. private b. personal c. intimate d.

solitary
private 强调私人所有的
personal 个人的
solitary 宁静的, 孤独的
He is leading a solitary life. 他过着孤独的生活。
intimate 亲密的

9 _____, I managed to creep down into the living room ...(l.19)
a. Meanwhile b. Little by little c. Just the same d. By all means
meanwhile==at the same time
little by little == step by step
by all means: 通过各种方式
just the same==in spite of this == still

10 The whole family _____ to watch the performance. (ll.21-22)
a. gathered round b. marched by c. flocked in d. joined in
gather around 聚集在.....周围
march by 行军而过
flocked in
join in 参加

Lesson52 begin 1:21:35 Lesson52A begin 42:29 L52-01 begin 5'35"
§ **Lesson 52 Mud is mud** 实事求是

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

- permanent adj. 永久的
- tint v. 给.....染色
- delicate adj. 淡色的
- shade n. 色度
- observant adj. 观察力敏锐的
- greyish adj. 浅灰色的
- dispel v. 驱散, 消除
- outlandish adj. 稀奇古怪的
- acquisition n. 获得
- cosmetic n. 化妆品
- outrageous adj. 无理的, 令人不能容忍的
- fanciful adj. 想像出来的
- insoluble adj. 不可溶解的
- prompt v. 敦促, 激励
- exclusive adj. 专售高档商品的
- syllable n. 音节
- bewilderment n. 迷惑, 糊涂
- freckle n. 雀斑
- evidently adv. 显然的, 明显地
- weird adj. 奇异的, 古怪的
- concoction n. 调制品
- intoxicate v. 陶醉, 得意忘形
- blank adj. 无表情的, 茫然的
- discreetly adv. 谨慎地
- clutch v. 抓住
- adorn v. 装饰, 打扮

11 My enthusiasm for my new resolutions soon _____. (ll.23-24)
a. faded b. evaporated c. ran out d. fell out
fade 褪色, 凋零
Eg: The flower has already begun to fade.
The color of the dress faded.
run out 用完, 用光
Eg: We run out of petrol. 我们把汽油用完了。
evaporate: 蒸发, 消失, 渐渐地化为乌有

12 I soon _____ into my old habit of dozing off ... (ll.29-30)
a. returned b. slipped back c. went back d. took again
本小节的重点是:
1, 2, 3 题的题干和答案的基本结构; 结构题中 5、7 11 题的基本含义。

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. C 2. A 3. D 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. A 10. C 10. C 11 B 12. B

L50-10 5'37" Lesson50B end 49:36 Lesson50 end 1:41:50

◆permanent adj. 永久的
permanent job / house
temporary 临时的

◆tint v. 给.....染色
tint the paper yellow 把纸染成黄色 (双宾语)

◆delicate adj. 淡色的
Eg: I like the delicate dress. 我喜欢淡颜色, 比较雅致的裙子。

◆shade n. 色度
shade 荫凉
in the shade 在荫凉处
shady adj.
in the shady street 在有荫凉的街道上
in the shady spot 在有荫凉的地方

◆◆observant adj. 观察力敏锐的

◆greyish adj. 浅灰色的
light grey

◆dispel v. 驱散, 消除

◆outlandish adj. 稀奇古怪的
odd
strange
fantastic
queer
peculiar

weird
eccentric
L31
Eg: I can't get along well with the weird.
outlandish: queer
strange and unpleasant
weird: strange and unnatural
difficult to understand

L52-01 end 5'35"

L52-02 begin 12'21"

◆◆◆acquisition n. 获得
acquire
acquire confidence
acquire courage
acquire knowledge
acquire skills
acquisition: the act of acquiring
Eg: He devotes his time to the acquisition of knowledge.他把全部的精力都用在知识的获得上。
the acquisition of sth. (通常形式)
Eg: Acquiring confidence is essential.
The acquisition of confidence is essential.
The acquisition of skills is necessary in the modern society.
acquirement: 仅指精神上的获得
acquisition: 可以指泛泛的概念
the acquisition / acquirement of knowledge
知识的获得
the acquisition of money 金钱的获得
Eg: The acquisition of money is what a large number of people run after.

◆cosmetic n. 化妆品
◆outrageous adj. 无理的, 令人不能容忍的
He found my offer outrageous
unreasonable
irrational
illogical
ridiculous
unpleasant
unpleasing
(L28)

◆fanciful adj. 想像出来的
imaginable
imagining doing
fancying doing

◆insoluble adj. 不可溶解的
solve 解决
insolve 不可溶解

◆◆◆prompt v. 敦促, 激励
vt. urge sb. to do sth.
persuade sb. to do sth.

prompt sb. to do
Eg: What prompted him to be so generous.
Our discussion prompted some questions.
我们的讨论引出了几个问题。
lead to; cause; result in;
Eg: What prompts you to study English so hard?
promptly adv.
prompt: quick
take measure 采取措施
Eg: He took a prompt measure. 他作出了一个果断的决定。

He made a prompt decision.
swift 没有任何干扰, 一点也不费力地连续不断地迅速, 形容相当快
Eg: His rise to fame was swift.
The car is going fast.
The car is going swiftly.
He made rapid / swift progress.
rapid 迅速的 (某事发生的速度快)
rapid recovery 快速康复
Eg: He is still young, so his recovery is rapid.
speedy
don't do it in such a speedy way.
haste
more haste less speed. 欲速则不达
hasty 匆匆忙忙, 草率
Eg: Sometimes we make a decision hastily.
Sometimes we make a decision in a haste way.

◆exclusive adj. 专售高档商品的
◆syllable n. 音节
◆bewilderment n. 迷惑, 糊涂
bewilder : puzzle

L52-02 end 12'21"

L52-03 begin 12'11"

Eg: Your question puzzled me.
bewilder: 令人眼花缭乱
Eg: Yesterday I went shopping, but countless beautiful dresses bewildered me.
in bewilderment

◆freckle n. 雀斑
◆evidently adv. 显然的, 明显地
evident 显眼的, 突出的
Eg: She is evident at party.
in evidence 相当于 evident, 也相当于 evidently

◆weird adj. 奇异的, 古怪的
◆concoction n. 调制品
◆intoxicate v. 陶醉, 得意忘形
excite greatly beyond self-control
be intoxicated by
be intoxicated with

Eg: When we pass out important examinations, we are intoxicated with our success.

intoxicate 喝醉

Eg: If you drink too much whiskey, you will get intoxicated.

get drunk

become intoxicated.

intoxicating 令人陶醉的

Eg: He failed in his examination, but he was intoxicated with that, and his intoxication was beyond my understanding.

◆blank adj. 无表情的, 茫然的

◆discreetly adv. 谨慎地

discreet ==careful in speech and action

Eg: He's discreet in giving his opinion.

He's discreet in airing his views.

When you have to make a big decision, particularly in front of a large number of people, you must be discreet.

be discreet in doing sth.

careful 细心的 (不表示谨慎)

Eg: Whatever we do, we must be careful.

Be careful, a car is rushing towards you.

cautious 谨慎的 (既表示细心, 又表示谨慎)

Eg: He is a cautious person, so whatever he does, he is not only discreet but careful as well.

considerate: 考虑周到的, 细心的 (thoughtful)

Eg: You will live easily if you have a considerate friend with you.

prudent 慎重的

Eg: You must make a prudent decision.

wary 小心翼翼的

tactful 机智的, 考虑周全的

tact 机智

discreet / careful / cautious / considerate / prudent /10

L52-03 end 12'11"

L52-04 begin 12'29"

◆clutch v. 抓住

snatch

seize

grasp

clutch

clasp

◆adorn v. 装饰, 打扮

well decorated walls 装饰得很漂亮的墙壁

adorn 打扮, 佩戴

Eg: We adorn our rooms with flowers.

decorate: 装修

Eg: Newly weds embark on the task of decorating their new house. 新婚夫妇忙着装修

自己的新房子。

adorn 装点

Eg: He adorned his story with all sorts of adventures that never happened.

She adorned her dress with a lace.

ornament v. 增添细节或装饰物

Eg: The dress is ornamented / adorned with lace.

a woman adorned in jewelry and fur 一位珠光宝气、穿着皮衣的妇女

in jeans 穿着牛仔裤

in jewelry 佩戴首饰

in fur 穿着裘皮大衣

a miss adorned in mink coat 一位穿着貂皮大衣的小姐

a beautifully adorned room

a beautifully decorated house

【Text】

Lesson 52 Mud is mud 实事求是

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

听录音, 然后回答以下问题。

Why did Harry decide to give up his little game?

My cousin, Harry, keeps a large curiously-shaped bottle on permanent display in his study. Despite the fact that the bottle is tinted a delicate shade of green, an observant visitor would soon notice that it is filled with what looks like a thick, grayish substance. If you were to ask Harry what was in the bottle, he would tell you that it contained perfumed mud. If you expressed doubt or surprise, he would immediately invite you to smell it and then to rub some into your skin. This brief experiment would dispel any further doubts you might have. The bottle really does contain perfumed mud.

How Harry came into the possession of this outlandish stuff makes an interesting story which he is fond of relating. Furthermore, the acquisition of this bottle cured him of a bad habit he had been developing for years.

Harry used to consider it a great joke to go into expensive cosmetic shops and make outrageous requests for goods that do not exist. He would invent fanciful names on the spot. On entering a shop, he would ask for a new perfume called 'Scented Shadow' or for 'insoluble bath cubes'. If a shop assistant told him she had not heard of it, he would pretend to be considerably put out. He loved to be told that one of his imaginary products was temporarily out of stock and he would faithfully promise to call again at some future date, but of course he never did. How Harry managed to keep a straight face

during these performances is quite beyond me.

20 Harry does not need to be prompted to explain how he bought his precious bottle of mud. One day, he went to an exclusive shop in London and asked for 'Myrolite', the shop assistant looked puzzled and Harry repeated the word, slowly stressing each syllable. When the woman shook her head in bewilderment, Harry went on to explain that

25 'myrolite' was a hard, amber-like substance which could be used to remove freckles. This explanation evidently conveyed something to the woman who searched shelf after shelf. She produced all sorts of weird concoctions, but none of them met with Harry's

30 requirements. When Harry put on his act of being mildly annoyed, the assistant promised to order some for him. Intoxicated by his success, Harry then asked for perfumed mud. He expected the assistant to look at him in blank astonishment. However, it was his turn to be surprised, for the woman's eyes immediately lit up and she fetched several bottles which she placed on the counter for Harry to inspect. For once, Harry had to admit defeat. He picked up what seemed to be the smallest bottle and discreetly asked the price. He was glad to get away with a mere twenty pounds and he beat a hasty retreat, clutching the precious bottle under his arm. From then on, Harry decided that this little game he had invented might prove to be expensive. The curious bottle, which now adorns the bookcase in his study, was his first and last purchase of rare cosmetics.

【课文讲解】

这是一篇记叙文

keep sth. on permanent display

duriously-shaped 形状奇怪的

wine bottles of all shapes and sizes

despite the fact that 尽管事实如此

in spite of the fact that

used to 过去常常而现在不

would 现在有可能存在

Eg: He would often have clas in the morning.

if you should 和 if you were to 可以互换

should + 动词原形 可能性大

were to + 动词原形 可能性极小

L52-04 end 12'29"

Lesson52A end 42:29

Lesson52B begin 39:06

L52-05 begin 12'10"

背熟: **If you expressed doubt or surprise**

背熟: **This brief experiment would dispel any further doubts you might have.**

brief: 简单的 simple

does 用来加强语气

背熟: **How Harry came into the possession of this outlandish stuff makes an interesting story which he is fond of relating.**

come into the possession of sth. 获得的过程

Eg: How harry married his beautiful wife makes an interesting story. 哈里是怎样娶了这样一位漂亮的妻子还有一段有趣的故事。

he is fond of relating == he is fond of talking about

stuff==material == substance

furthermore == what is more == moreover

背熟: **the acquisition of this bottle cured him of a bad habit he had been developing for years.**

own habits by heart 积习难改, 本性难移

背熟: **Harry used to consider it a great joke to go into expensive cosmetic shops and make outrageous requests for goods that do not exist.**

consider it a great joke to do sth. 把做某事看作是巨大的乐趣

consider it great fun

consider it great amusement

consider it a great joy

He would invent fanciful names on the spot.

== He would invent names **imaginable** on the sopt.

on the sopt 当场, 当时

on entering a shop== as soon as he enters a shop

背熟: **he would pretend to be considerably put out.**

pretend to do 装做.....

put out == upset == annoy

Eg: He was put out by my rude words.

imaginary 虚构的, 想象的

out of stock 脱销

L52-05 end 12'10"

L52-06 begin (56-03) 13'29"

背熟: **he would faithfully promise to call again at some future date**

faithfully permise 信誓旦旦地说

at some future date == some day == one day

背熟: **How Harry managed to keep a straight**

face during these performances is quite beyond me.

keep a straight face == keep serious

is quite beyond me == is quite beyond my understanding == is quite beyond my imagination

重点: how 引导主语从句

keep sth. on permanent display 永远展示, 陈列

Eg: We don't know how he came into (the) possession of the farm.

Paragraph 3

You needn't encourage him to explain his story.

of his own accord 自然而然地, 相当于 willingly

背熟: Harry does not need to be prompted to explain

exclusive shop: only wealthy people can visit such expensive shop

exclusive right to publish their stories

exclusive: 独家的, 独占的; 不相容的

The school is exclusive.

exclusive shop 专售高档商品的商店

背熟: **the shop assistant looked puzzled and Harry repeated the word, slowly stressing each syllable.**

puzzled 茫然不知所措

bewildered

stressing 加重每一个音节

go on to do sth. 继续做别的事情

cat-like; dog-like

amber-like 象琥珀一样的

be used to do 被用来干

be used to doing 习惯于做.....

背熟: This explanation evidently conveyed something to the woman who searched shelf after shelf.

shelf after shelf == one shelf after another

produced == showed

He produced a cigaret to me. 他拿出了一颗烟给我。

背熟: She produced all sorts of weird concoctions, but none of them met with Harry's requirements.

meet with sb's requirments / need 满足某人的需要

requirments == demands

When Harry put on his act of being mildly annoyed

put on his act of doing 装模作样

put on == pretend

Eg: She said that she felt ill, but she was just putting it on.

He put on the act of understanding me / what I said. 他装出理解我的话的样子。

He pretends to be wealthy.

He put on an act of being wealthy.

L52-06 end 13'29"

L52-07 begin 13'35"

背熟: Intoxicated by his success, Harry then asked for perfumed mud.

in blank astonishment 茫然惊奇地

背熟: However, it was his turn to be surprised, for the woman's eyes immediately lit up and she fetched several bottles which she placed on the counter for Harry to inspect.

surprised == amazed 惊奇地

Eg: The custom officer's face lit up as soon as he saw the tiny bottle on the bottom of my suitcase.

inspect == choose == select

admit defeat == take a beating 认输

My aunt Harriet found piles of bottles of all shapes and sizes in what had been Bessie's wardrobe.

what was in those days enlightened policy 当时所谓的开明政策

seemed to be == looked like

discreet 言行小心

背熟: He was glad to get away with a mere twenty pounds and he beat a hasty retreat, 不定式 **to** 表示原因

retreat 撤退

beat a retreat 溜走

hasty == speedy

Eg: He left the shop as quickly as possible.

clutching 现在分词做伴随状况状语

Eg: I got away with precious chalk marks on my luggage. (L11)

pay the price 付出代价

‘The curious bottle, which now adorns the bookcase in his study, was his first and last purchase of rare cosmetics.’

非限制性定语从句

Eg: The girl studies English well who lives in my neighbourhood.

The girl, who lives in my neighbourhood, studies English well.

重点结构表达:

admit defeat 认输

beat a hasty retreat 匆忙溜掉

Lesson53 begin 1:08:04 L53-01 begin 17'22"

§ Lesson 53

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- evolve v. 逐渐形成
- high-handed adj. 高压的, 专横的
- incompetent adj. 不够格的, 不称职的
- over-zealously adv. 过分热情地
- safeguard v. 保护
- parliamentary adj. 国会的
- qualified adj. 合格的
- grievance n. 不平, 冤屈
- Justiteombudsman n. (瑞典的) 司法特派员
- ombudsman n. (瑞典和英国的) 司法特派员
- secretive adj. 保密的
- correspondence n. 来往信件
- alter v. 改变
- accusation n. 谴责, 指控
- ascertain v. 查出, 查明
- prejudiced adj. 有偏见的, 不公平的
- prompt adj. 即时的

◆evolve v. 逐渐形成

vt. develop gradually

Eg: He has developed / evolved a new system for running the factory.

evolve a system for doing sth.

Man has evolved from the ape. 人类是从类人猿进化而来的。(演化)

evolve from

evolution 发展, 演变

Eg: The evolution isn't unexpected.

-ism / socialism / evolutionism 进化论

evolutionist 进化论者

evolutional 发展的, 进化的

resolve (L50) / resolve to do sth. 下定决心做某事

resolution / revolve

Eg: The earth is round, and every day and night it is revolving.

involve vt. 卷入, 牵涉 / be involved in

Eg: He is involved in the case.

◆high-handed adj. 高压的, 专横的

◆incompetent adj. 不够格的, 不称职的

competent: having ability / qualification to do sth.

be competent to do sth.

be competent for sth.

qualified / fit

Eg: He is competent / qualified / fit for the

stress each syllable 加强音节

in bewilderment

in blank astonishment

L52-07 end 13'35" (Lesson52B end 39:06 Lesson52 end 1:21:35

job.

incompetent / unfit

competent: sufficient / enough adequate

Eg: He has a competent knowledge of French.

He is competent to teach the language.

competence / qualification for / to

the competence for / to

Eg: He has the ability to do the job.

He has the capability / capacity of doing the job.

He has the competence to do / for the job.

qualification

◆over-zealously adv. 过分热情地

over- zealous / zealously

◆safeguard v. 保护

safeguard: n. / vt. (书面用语, 比较正式)

protect

Eg: We must safeguard our motherland.

We must safeguard our state territorial integrity.

Keeping clean is a safeguard against disease.

safeguard / guard 保安

Eg: We need several safeguards.

protect

safeguard / protect our eyes

◆parliamentary adj. 国会的

◆qualified adj. 合格的

◆grievance n. 不平, 冤屈

grief

Eg: I can't go to the cinema with you tonight because I have to comfort my friend in grief.

grieve: cause grief to

Eg: It grieves me to see him in such bad health.

L53-01 end 17'22"

L53-02 begin 17'18"

grieve for / about / over

grieve / in grief

grieve / it grieves me

◆Justiteombudsman n. (瑞典的) 司法特派员

◆ombudsman n. (瑞典和英国的) 司法特派员

◆secretive adj. 保密的

secretive letters

◆correspondence n. 来往信件

keep up correspondence 保持通信联系

keep in touch with sb. by writing letters

Eg: We keep up correspondence recently for several years.

by / through correspondence

by writing letters

correspondence school 函授学校

correspondence course 函授课程

correspondence: agreement / similarity 相似, 一致

in correspondence with sb. 与.....一致 / 保持通信联系

bring sth. into correspondence with sth.

Eg: We must bring your idea into correspondence with mine.

correspondent 通信员, 通信者

10

◆◆◆alter v. 改变

alter / change

alter: change in character, appearance etc. partly

Eg: The shirt must be altered. It is too large.

change: 完全、彻底的变化

Eg: Great changes have taken place in our country.

He changed a lot after so many years of hard work, so I even can't recognise him.

convert: 改变(态度上); 变化

Eg: He converted to Buddhism.

20

The new house is converted from an old one.

transform: 形态或性质上发生变化, 主要指物理能量上的转变, 或电压的改变

Eg: We can transform one form of energy into another.

25

vary: 由于改变而使多样化

Eg: Customs vary with the times turn

◆accusation n. 谴责, 指控

◆ascertain v. 查出, 查明

find out / get to know / make certain / make sure

Eg: Let us ascertain when we will hold the party.

读音: certain / ascertain

30

◆prejudiced adj. 有偏见的, 不公平的

prejudice

Pride and Prejudice 傲慢与偏见

◆prompt adj. 即时的

【Text】

Lesson 53 In the public interest 为了公众的利益

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

听录音, 然后回答以下问题。

What could not be reported in the official files?

The Scandinavian countries are much admired all over the world for their enlightened social policies. Sweden has evolved an excellent system for protecting the individual citizen from high-handed or incompetent public officers. The system has worked so well, that it has been adopted in other countries too.

The Swedes were the first to recognize that public official like civil servants, police officers, health inspectors or tax-collectors can make mistakes or act over-zealously in the belief that they are serving the public. As long ago as 1809, the Swedish Parliament introduced a scheme to safeguard the interest of the individual. A parliamentary committee representing all political parties appoints a person who is suitably qualified to investigate private grievances against the State. The official title of the person is 'Justiteombudsman', but the Swedes commonly refer to him as the 'J.O.' or 'Ombudsman'. The Ombudsman is not subject to political pressure. He investigates complaints large and small that come to him from all levels of society. As complaints must be made in writing, the Ombudsman receives an average of 1,200 letters a year. He has eight lawyer assistants to help him and examines every single letter in detail. There is nothing secretive about the Ombudsman's work, for his correspondence is open to public inspection. If a citizen's complaint is justified, the Ombudsman will act on his behalf. The action he takes varies according to the nature of the complaint. He may gently reprimand an official or even suggest to parliament that a law be altered. The following case is a typical example of the Ombudsman's work.

A foreigner living in a Swedish village wrote to the Ombudsman complaining that he had been ill-treated by the police, simply because he was a foreigner. The Ombudsman immediately wrote to the Chief of Police in the district asking him to send a record of the case. There was nothing in the record to show that the foreigner's complaint was justified and the Chief of Police strongly

denied the accusation. It was impossible for the Ombudsman to take action, but when he received a similar complaint from another foreigner in the same village, he immediately sent one of his layers to investigate the matter. The lawyer ascertained that a policeman had indeed dealt roughly with foreigners on several occasions. The fact that the policeman was prejudiced against foreigners could not be recorded in the official files. It was only possible for the Ombudsman to find this out by sending one of his representatives to check the facts. The policeman in question was severely reprimanded and was informed that if any further complaints were lodged against him, he would be prosecuted. The Ombudsman's prompt action at once put an end to an unpleasant practice which might have gone unnoticed.

【课文讲解】

for: because of

be admired for

Eg: He is admired by us for his humor.

worldwide

背熟: evolved an excellent system for protecting the individual citizen from..

evolve a system for doing sth.

protect / safeguard from

Eg: I can't conceal my amusement. 我不能够掩饰我幸灾乐祸的心情。

Your excitement is beyond me. 你的激动的表现/心情是我难以理解的。

evolve an excellent system for doing sth.

has worked so well: workable

adopt / adapt

L53-02 end 17'18"

L53-03 begin 16'24"

adopt 采纳

adapt 改编, 以适应 (指修改或改变以适应新条件)

unsuitable mistakes

were the first / secone / last / only to do sth.

public officials: public officers

in the belief that: believe in

Eg: He turned to me for help because he believed that I could help him.

He turned to me for help in the believe that I could lend him a hand.

He turned to me for help believing that I could lend him a hand.

in the hope: hoping

in the thought: thinking

Eg: We come here in the hope that we will learn English well.

We come here hoping to learn English well.

Judges, however wise or eminent, are mortak and can make mistakes.

as long ago as 1809: dating back to 1809

date back to / date from

introduce : bring in 引入

Eg: He introduced science to the game boxing.

He brought science into the game boxing.

scheme 制度

Eg: Sometimes, you need to find a right place to put your latest addition.

represent

Eg: The statue represented a goddess.

A monitor representing his classmates.

be qualified to do sth. / be competent to do sth.

refer to sb. as 把某人称之为.....

背熟: The Ombudsman is not subject to political pressure.

be subject to sth. 易受.....的影响 (to 介词); 隶属于

Eg: He is subject to cold during winter.

be likely to do (不定式 to)

Eg: He is likely to catch cold during winter.

be prone to

Eg: He is prone to flu during winter.

be liable to do

隶属于

Eg: Your plan is subject to my approval.

We have a good plan, but the plan must be subject to our teacher's approval.

背熟: He investigates complaints large and small that come to him from all levels of society.

complaints large and small 形容词短语做定语, 放在被修饰词之后

grievances

Eg: A great many students, boy and girl, went to the party yesterday.

Many people, old and yound, visit the shop.

L53-03 end 16'24"

L53-04 begin 17'18"

be made in writing: be written down

an average of 平均

I work for 8 hours every day.

I work for an average of 8 hours a day.

We have got 15 students in each class.

each 二个的平均

every 三个以上的平均

Eg: We have got an average of 15 students

in each / every class.

in detail / in details

justified: justice

on his behalf: in his interest

vary / varied / various

名词前加定冠词 the 表示“这一类”时，名词就不要加表示复数的-s，否则则表示这部分。

Eg: The refrigerators are useful during hot summer. (错)

The refrigerator is useful during hot summer.

Refrigerators are useful during hot summer.

A refrigerator is useful during hot summer.

nature: character

a law (should) be altered

suggest to sb.

背熟: The following case is a typical example of the Ombudsman's work.

The following case is a typical example of it you can judge by yourself.

Paragraph 3:

A foreigner living in a Swedish village: A foreigner who is living in a Swedish village.

A foreigner wrote a letter to the Ombudsman complaining...

The editor sent a fax instructing the
Lesson54 begin 1:31:41 Lesson54A begin 56:23 L54-01 begin 18'53" (P245)

§ **Lesson 54 Instinct or cleverness?** 是本能还是机智

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

●insect n. 昆虫

●wage v. 进行(斗争)

●contaminate v. 弄脏

●provocation n. 惹怒

●spider n. 蜘蛛

●wasp n. 黄蜂

●moth n. 飞蛾

journalist to get statistics.

simply because: only because / just because

accuse sb. of doing sth.

the matter: the case

背熟: The lawyer ascertained that a policeman had indeed dealt roughly with foreigners on several occasions.

ascertain that / sth.

made sure that / made certain that

dealt roughly with: ill-treated

be prejudiced against sb. / sth.

Eg: If you are prejudiced against sth. , you must take objection to it.

find this out: to discover it

check the facts: verify the facts

It is only possible for us to learn the language well if we study hard.

representative / represent

a committee representing all political parties

lawyer assistants

in question: 当事人的, 所涉及的

practice: what the policeman did / the way

that he treated with foreigners

put an end to

stop

prevent

You prevent me from doing the work

背熟: The Ombudsman's prompt action at once put an end to an unpleasant practice which might have gone unnoticed.

which might have gone unnoticed: which might have gone without being noticed

Eg: If they had had only one more child, they would have lived in obscurity unnoticed.

L53-04 end 17'18" Lesson53 end 1:08:04

●ant n. 蚂蚁

●revulsion n. 厌恶

●horde n. 群

●uncanny adj. 神秘的, 不可思议的

●erase v. 擦, 抹去

●praying mantis 螳螂

●entranced adj. 出神的

●beetle n. 甲虫

●sheltered adj. 伤不着的, 无危险的

●luscious adj. 甘美的

●cluster n. 一簇

●aphid n. 蚜虫

●underside n. 底面, 下侧

●colony n. 一群

- sticky adj. 粘的
- scurry v. 小步跑
- swarm v. 聚集
- ingenuity n. 机灵

◆ insect n. 昆虫

◆ wage v. 进行（斗争）

wage: begin and continue a struggle

wage a war against / on

Eg: Life means perpetual struggle against poverty.

carry on

undertake to do 着手

Eg: He undertook to inform people concerned.

engage in / be engaged in / be determined on sth. / be dedicated to sth. / be devoted to sth.

◆◆◆ contaminate v. 弄脏

contaminate / pollute

contaminate: make dirty or bad or impure by mixing with dirty or poisonous matter.

Eg: Don't eat the apple. It has been contaminated by flies.

Never eat food contaminated by flies.

Don't read the hot story just because it will contaminate your mind. 别阅读黄色书刊。

hot story 色情小说 blue movie 色情电影

pollute

Eg: The air has been polluted severely / terribly / badly.

pollution / polluted

tint vt. 弄脏(通常指坏因素对你的影响)

Eg: Don't read the hot story just because it will contaminate / tint your mind.

His reputation was tinted by the scandal. 他的名声被丑闻沾污了。

scandal 丑闻

foul : 弄脏 make sth. dirty

Eg: Dogs are forbidden to go into the streets because we are afraid the streets will be fouled.

The factory is responsible for fouling up the air. (相当于 pollute)

foul up == pollute

defile 弄脏, 污染 make sth. impure

Eg: I like honey, but I don't want to drink the honey defiled by flies.

poison / foul up / pollute

Eg: Gases from cars are poisoning the air of our city.

Read: **pollute / foul up / poison / contaminate / defile / tint**

Eg: He is contaminated / tinted by hot stories.

Hot stories contaminate / tint his mind.

◆ provocation n. 惹怒

provoke v.

1. make angry or bad-tempered

Eg: He was provoked beyond his endurance.

He was provoked and it was more than he could endure.

2. cause 引起, 导致, 激起

arouse

Eg: The book arouses / provokes my interest.

bring about / result in / lead to / give rise to

provoke sb's interest in sth.

provoke sb, to do / provoke sb. into doing / cause sb. to do sth.

Eg: You provoked him to say so. Why?

L54-01 end 18'53"

L54-02 begin 18'48"

Eg: His provocation is beyond my endurance.

◆ spider n. 蜘蛛

◆ wasp n. 黄蜂

◆ moth n. 飞蛾

◆ ant n. 蚂蚁

◆ revulsion n. 厌恶

disgust / dislike

◆ horde n. 群

◆ uncanny adj. 神秘的, 不可思议的

mysterious

Eg: They are leading a mysterious life.

In spite of this, he survived mysteriously.

eerie 怪诞的, 奇异的

Eg: He looks eerie. / What he said is eerie to me.

weird 怪异的, 怪诞的, 神秘的 (行为举止让人摸不着头尾)

Eg: I can't get along well with him because he is a weird person.

Why do you decide to marry such a weird person?

cryptic 神秘的, 鬼鬼祟祟的

Eg: Why did you do such a little thing in a cryptic way.

Read: eerie / weird / cryptic / mysterious / uncanny

◆ erase v. 擦, 抹去

Eg: Erase the idea from your mind!

He erases the name from the namelist.

cancel / write off / cross off

Eg: The word is unnecessary here, so it is crossed off.

wipe out

Eg: I want to write on the blackboard, so I

have to wipe all the words here out.

I can't imagine why you are so hot, please wipe out sweat on your face.

obliterate 涂去

Eg: He obliterated two words in ink / with a pen.

I obliterate the word with chalk.

◆praying mantis 螳螂

◆entranced adj. 出神的

entrance

entrance to the room / hall

entrance: carry away with joy and delight 入迷, 出神

be entranced in thought

Eg: I don't know what he has in his mind.

Anyway he is entranced in thought.

be entranced with fear 吓得魂不附体

Eg: At the story at night, I was entranced with fear.

be pleased with / be satisfied with / be popular with / be entranced with performance / film / book

Eg: He was entranced with film.

Are you entranced with the story?

He listened to the story entranced.

The writer watched ants entranced.

◆beetle n. 甲虫

◆sheltered adj. 伤不着的, 无危险的

◆luscious adj. 甘美的

◆cluster n. 一簇

◆aphid n. 蚜虫

◆underside n. 底面, 下侧

◆colony n. 一群

◆sticky adj. 粘的

◆scurry v. 小步跑

◆swarm v. 聚集

◆ingenuity n. 机灵

Eg: The boy shows ingenuity in making toys.

【Text】

Lesson 54 Instinct or cleverness? 是本能还是机智

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

听录音, 然后回答以下问题。

Was the writer successful in protecting his peach tree? Why not?

5 We have been brought up to fear insects. We regard them as unnecessary creatures that do more harm than good. We continually wage war on them, for they contaminate our food, carry diseases, or devour our crops. They sting or bite without provocation; they fly uninvited into our rooms on summer nights, or beat against our lighted windows. We live in dread not only

of unpleasant insects like spiders or wasps, but of quite harmless one like moths. Reading about them increases our understanding without dispelling our fears. Knowing that the industrious ant lives in a highly organized society does nothing to prevent us from being filled with revulsion when we find hordes of them crawling over a carefully prepared picnic lunch. No matter how much we like honey, or how much we have read about the uncanny sense of direction which bees possess, we have a horror of being stung. Most of our fears are unreasonable, but they are impossible to erase. At the same time, however, insects are strangely fascinating. We enjoy reading about them, especially when we find that, like the praying mantis, they lead perfectly horrible lives. We enjoy staring at them, entranced as they go about their business, unaware (we hope) of our presence. Who has not stood in awe at the sight of a spider pouncing on a fly, or a column of ants triumphantly bearing home an enormous dead beetle?

20 Last summer I spent days in the garden watching thousands of ants crawling up the trunk of my prize peach tree. The tree has grown against a warm wall on a sheltered side of the house. I am especially proud of it, not only because it has survived several severe winters, but because it occasionally produces luscious peaches. During the summer, I noticed that the leaves of the tree were beginning to wither. Clusters of tiny insects called aphids were to be found on the underside of the leaves. They were visited by a large colony of ants which obtained a sort of honey from them. I immediately embarked on an experiment which, even though it failed to get rid of the ants, kept me fascinated for twenty-four hours. I bound the base of the tree with sticky tape, making it impossible for the ants to reach the aphids.

25 The tape was so sticky that they did not dare to cross it. For a long time. I watched them scurrying around the base of the tree in bewilderment. I even went out at midnight with a torch and noted with satisfaction (and surprise) that the ants were

still swarming around the sticky tape without being able to do anything about it. I got up early next morning hoping to find that the ants had given up in despair. Instead, I saw that they had discovered a new route. They were climbing up the wall of the house and then on to the leaves of the tree. I realized sadly that I had been completely defeated by their ingenuity. The ants had been quick to find an answer to my thoroughly unscientific methods!

参考译文

我们自幼就在对昆虫的惧怕中长大。我们把昆虫当作害多益少的无用东西。人类不断同昆虫斗争，因为昆虫弄脏我们的食物，传播疾病，吞噬庄稼。它们无缘无故地又叮又咬；夏天的晚上，它们未经邀请便飞到我们房间里，或者对着露出亮光的窗户乱扑乱撞。我们在日常生活中，不但憎恶如蜘蛛、黄蜂之类令人讨厌的昆虫，而且憎恶并无大害的飞蛾等。阅读有关昆虫的书能增加我们对它们的了解，却不能消除我们的恐惧的心理。即使知道勤奋的蚂蚁生活具有高度组织性的社会里，当看到大群蚂蚁在我们精心准备的午间野餐上爬行时，我们也无法抑制对它们的反感。不管我们多么爱吃蜂蜜，或读过多少关于蜜蜂具有神秘的识别方向的灵感的书，我们仍然十分害怕被蜂蜇。我们的恐惧大部分是没有道理的，但去无法消除。同时，不知为什么昆虫又是迷人的。我们喜欢看有关昆虫的书，尤其是当我们了解螳螂等过着一种令人生畏的生活时，就更加爱读有关昆虫的书了。我们喜欢入迷地看它们做事，它们不知道（但愿如此）我们就在它们身边。当看到蜘蛛扑向一只苍蝇时，一队蚂蚁抬着一只巨大的死甲虫凯旋归时，谁能不感到敬畏呢？

去年夏天，我花了好几天时间站在花园里观察成千只蚂蚁爬上我那棵心爱的桃树的树干。那棵树是靠房子有遮挡的一面暖墙生长的。我为这棵树感到特别自豪，不仅因为它度过了几个寒冬终于活了下来，而且还因为它有时结出些甘甜的桃子来。到了夏天，我发现树叶开始枯萎，结果在树叶背面找到成串的叫作蚜虫小虫子。蚜虫遭到一窝蚂蚁的攻击，蚂蚁从它们身上可以获得一种蜜。我当即动手作了一项试验，这项试验尽管没有使我摆脱这些蚂蚁，却使我着迷了24小时。我用一条胶带把桃树底部包上，不让蚂蚁接近蚜虫。胶带极粘，蚂蚁不敢从上面爬过。在很长一段时间里，我看见蚂蚁围着大树底部来回转悠，不知所措。半夜，我还拿着电筒来到花园里，满意地（同时惊奇地）发现那些蚂蚁还围着胶带团团转。无能为力。第二天早上，我起床后希望看见蚂蚁已因无望而放弃了尝试，结果却发现它们又找到一条新的路径。它们正在顺着房子的外墙往上爬，然后爬上树叶。我懊丧地感到败在了足智多谋的蚂蚁的手下。蚂蚁已很快找到了相应的对策，来对付我那套完全不科学的方法！

【课文讲解】

背熟：**We have been brought up to fear insects.**

Eg: We have been brought up to eat certain food.

We have learnt to do ...

We have learnt to fear insects.

Girls have been brought up to fear mice.

do more harm than good

Eg: The exercise will do you good.

Smoking will do you harm.

wage war against / wage war on them

Eg: Two dogs benefited from the accident and they devoured the remains of the cake.

Her eyes devour the beautiful dress.

fly uninvited into our rooms / without being invited 不请自来

做定语时，light 只能用 lighted 形式。

背熟：**We live in dread not only of unpleasant insects like spiders or wasps, but of quite harmless one like moths.**

Eg: I did so as / because I believe that you can do it well.

I did so in the belief that...

in the thought that / in the hope that

in / under

Eg: Even he still lives under the illusion that country life is much more beautiful.

L54-02 end 18'48"

L54-03 begin 18'57"

Eg: We live under the illusion that city life is wonderful.

in dread: in fear

in dread of

dread doing / dread to do

ones: insects

在使用 not only..., but (also) ... (as well) 句型时，要突出介词短语或动词短语中的介词，则此介词要重复出现。

Eg: I live in dread not only of dogs, but of cats.

be afraid of

Eg: I am afraid not only of dogs, but of cats.

both ... and ...

Eg: We live in dread of both dogs and cats.

I am interested not only in English, but in French.

dispel : erase / get rid of / remove 消除

Knowing that the industrious ant lives in a highly organized society does nothing to prevent us from being

主语

filled with revulsion when we find hordes of them crawling over a carefully prepared picnic lunch.

时间状语从句

disgusting

in a highly organized society

Eg: We live in a highly organized society.

用 does nothing to do 造句

Eg: Doing so does nothing to prevent me from hating you.

prevent sb. from doing sth.

Eg: Nothing will prevent me from saying so.

Whatever you say does nothing to prevent me from attaining / accomplish my goal.

accomplish goal / attain goal

accomplish aim / attain aim

horde / colony

crawl / creep / climb

背熟: No matter how much we like honey, or how much we have read about the uncanny sense of direction which bees possess, we have a horror of being stung.

No matter how: however much

dread / fear / horror / terror

we become illogical when we have a horror of being stung.

It is impossible for us to do sth.

It is impossible for us to erase the fears.

It is easy for everyone to read. / it is easy to read.

be fascinated with

strangely: uncanny

go about their business: as they do what they should do

as they get down to

their business

Let us get down to our business.

You should go about your business. 你该干你应该干的事。

背熟: Who has not stood in awe at the sight of a spider pouncing on a fly

L54-03 end 18'57"

Lesson54A end 56:23

Lesson54B begin 35:17

L54-04 begin 20'16"

stand in awe: fear but respect

pounce on: jump at / charge at

stand in awe of 谓语

Eg: Generally speaking, employees stand in awe of their employer.

In primary school, pupils stand in awe of their teacher.

a colony of ants

Paragraph 2:

prize: dear

如果要突出原因, 则要重复 because

wither

horde / colony / column / cluster

were to be found / were found

see / find / congratulate (祝贺) 常和 be to 搭配, 用于被动语态。

Eg: The boy was found behind the door.

The boy was to be found behind the door.

He was congratulated by his friends.

He was to be congratulated by his friends.

We can't find him anywhere. / We can find him nowhere.

He is nowhere to be found / seen.

which obtained: to obtain

embark on: set out to do / set about doing

Eg: I immediately set out to do an experiment.

本课的要点内容: even though if failed to get rid of the ants, kept me fascinated for twenty-four hours.

kept me fascinated : kept me occupied

bind / bound

背熟: I bound the base of the tree with sticky tape, making it impossible for the ants to reach the aphids.

making it impossible for sb. to do

Eg: I work hard making it possible to pass the examination.

I prepared dinner carefully, making it possible to please my guests.

They didn't dare to cross it. / They dared not cross it.

need

Eg: You needn't come here on Sunday. 助动词

You don't need to come here on Sunday. 实义动词

in bewilderment: were lost

swarming around

without being able to do anything about it

unable to do anything about it

背熟: **I got up early next morning hoping to find that the ants had given up in despair.**

hoping to do: in the hope that

背熟: **I realized sadly that I had been completely defeated by their ingenuity.**

I took a beating completely.

be quick to find answer to / a solution to

Eg: Daniel Mendoza was quick to learn.

Ants are quick to find answer to their problem.

L54-04 end 20'16"

L54-05 begin 11'58"

【Vocabulary】P246

Explain the meanings of the following words as they are used in the passage: contaminate (l.3); devour (l.4); provocation (l.4); dispelling (l.8); revulsion (l.9); pouncing (l.15)

contaminate: make dirty, make impure

contaminate / taint

contaminate / defile

pollute / foul up / poison

devour: eat hungrily

provocation: being make angry

provoke: make angry

dispelling: erasing

dispel: erase

Nothing can dispel our fear.

industrious: hard working

revulsion: dislike

pouncing: jumping at suddenly

pounce on: 猛扑向

Eg: The customs officer pounced on my tiny bottle.(L11)

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 We may learn more about the behaviour of insects _____ .

a. and become so fascinated by them that we are no longer moved by them

b. but we are no less likely to lose our irrational fear of them

c. provided they remain unaware of our presence while we observe them

d. as long as they only harm each other and not us

(背熟答案)

rational 理性的 / irrational 没理性的

logical / illogical

reasonable / unreasonable

retional / irrational

outrageous / ridiculous

be likely to do 有可能做

no less likely 可能性不大

we are no less likely to do sth.

2 The ant is an insect which _____ .

a. will eat its way through anything from picnic lunches to aphids

b. lives in a highly organized society which we find disgusting

c. once it has killed its prey, will bear it home in a triumphal column

d. shows great ingenuity at finding its way round any obstacle in its path

3 Had the peach tree been planted on the opposite side of the house _____ .

a. it might not have survived the severe winters

b. the writer would not have spent days looking at it

c. the ants would have had further to go before reaching it

d. the ants would not have found another route of access to the leaves

4 The reason for the ants' swarming up and down the tree was that _____ .

a. they collected a kind of honey from the leaves

b. they fed on a kind of honey contained in the sap of the tree

c. they were milking a kind of honey from the aphids on the leaves

d. they needed to go back to their nest in the branches of the tree

up and down 上上下下 / 来来回回

around 来来回回

Clusters of insects called aphids were to be found on the underside of the leaves.

Structure

5 By reading about them, we may increase our understanding but _____ dispel our fears. (ll.7-8)

a. we will not b. it does not c. this will not d. not

结合第1题

6 Most of our fears are unreasonable, but we find _____ . (l.12)

a. it impossible to erase them b. that they cannot erase

c. them to erase impossible d. erasing them impossible

背熟题干和答案

7 ---- an experiment which, _____ failure to get rid of the ants, kept me fascinated. (ll.22-23)

a. even though it was b. in spite of the

c. despite its d. was a
in spite of / despite / in contempt of / in
disregard of

8 _____ long to find an answer to ... (ll.30-31)

- a. The ants had not been b. The quick ants had not been
c. The ants had not spent d. It had not taken the ants
it takes sb. or sth. some time to do

Vocabulary

9 Even when we know that the ant is an industrious creature which leads a highly organized life, we cannot _____ being filled with ... (ll.8-10)

- a. refuse b. help c. prevent d. lose
can not help doing / can not resist doing

10 ---- we have read about the _____ sense of direction which bee possess ... (l.11)

- a. unknown b. mysterious c. infinite
d. disabled
uncanny

Lesson58 begin 33:13 L58-01 begin 9'11"

§ Lesson 58 A spot of bother 一点儿小麻烦

文章介绍：记叙文

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

- lift n. 电梯
- monstrous adj. 极大的，可怕的
- negligence n. 粗心大意
- prudent adj. 谨慎的
- composure n. 镇静，沉着
- intruder n. 入侵者（尤指欲行窃者）
- lurk v. 潜藏
- hinder v. 妨碍
- fingerprint n. 指纹
- chaos n. 混乱，无秩序
- inconceivable adj. 不可思议的
- veritable adj. 真正的，地地道道的
- magpie n. 喜欢收藏物品的人
- toss v. 扔
- discard v. 丢弃
- constable n. 警察
- ransack v. 洗劫
- balcony n. 阳台
- fussy adj. 大惊小怪的，小题大作的

◆lift n. 电梯
elevator

◆monstrous adj. 极大的，可怕的
monstrous ghost

L54-05 end 11'58"

L54-06 begin 3'11"

11 The tree occasionally produces _____ fruit. (ll.19-20)

- a. deliciously fresh b. sweet and juicy
c. tender d. exotic
luscious
deliciously fresh 美味的
tender 温柔的，
exotic 未来的

12 I had been completely defeated by the _____ (ll.29-30)

- a. speedy swarms b. hungry hordes c. inventive creatures d. ingenuous insects
speedy / swift / rapid / fast / quick / hasty
ingenuous 天真的，老实的

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. C 6. A 7. C
8. D 9. B 10. B 11. B 12. C

L54-06 end 3'11" Lesson54B end 35:17 Lesson54 end 1:31:41

◆negligence n. 粗心大意
carelessness 比其正式

Eg: We must be careful otherwise we would get into trouble because of negligence.

◆prudent adj. 谨慎的
discreet / careful / cautious

◆composure n. 镇静，沉着
calm

◆intruder n. 入侵者（尤指欲行窃者）
intrud
burglar

◆lurk v. 潜藏
lurk in the darkness

◆hinder v. 妨碍
hinder sb. from doing sth. / prevent sb. from doing sth.

◆fingerprint n. 指纹
◆chaos n. 混乱，无秩序
in state of chaos
order / disorder
confusion
conceive

◆inconceivable adj. 不可思议的
conceive

conceivable
 conceive of
 Eg: I can't conceive of it.
 conceive of sth. as
 Eg: I conceive of the life there as beautiful picture.
 regard as / describe as / imagine as / refer to ... as / think of ... as
 conceivable / inconceivable

◆◆veritable adj. 真正的, 地地道道的

◆magpie n. 喜欢收藏物品的人
 collector
 magpie: a person who likes to collect things as mania or serious hobby.
 Eg: Let us toss a coin to decide.

◆toss v. 扔
 ◆discard v. 丢弃
 abandon / desert / forsake
 discard: give up as useless
 discard useless things
 discard sth. for
 discard a for b

◆constable n. 警察
 ◆ransack v. 洗劫
 Eg: The robbers ransack the bank.
 ◆balcony n. 阳台
 ◆fussy adj. 大惊小怪的, 小题大作的
 Eg: You are a fussy person.

Read: 本课重点词

- monstrous adj. 极大的, 可怕的
- negligence n. 粗心大意
- prudent adj. 谨慎的
- hinder v. 妨碍
- chaos n. 混乱, 无秩序
- inconceivable adj. 不可思议的
- toss v. 扔
- discard v. 丢弃
- ransack v. 洗劫
- fussy adj. 大惊小怪的, 小题大作的

【Text】

§ **Lesson 58 A spot of bother** 一点儿小麻烦

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

听录音, 然后回答以下问题。

What did the old lady find when she got home?

The old lady was glad to be back at the block of flats where she lived. Her shopping had tired her and her basket had grown heavier with every step of the way home. In the lift

her thoughts were on lunch and a good rest; but when she got out at her own floor, both were forgotten in her sudden discovery that her front door was open. She was thinking that she must reprimand her home help the next morning for such a monstrous piece of negligence, when she remembered that she had gone shopping after the home help had left and she knew that she had turned both keys in their locks. She walked slowly into the hall and at once noticed that all the room doors were open, yet following her regular practice she had shut them before going out. Looking into the drawing room, she saw a scene of confusion over by her writing desk. It was as clear as daylight then that burglars had forced an entry during her absence. Her first impulse was to go round all the rooms looking for the thieves, but then she decided that at her age it might be more prudent to have someone with her, so she went to fetch the porter from his basement. By this time her legs were beginning to tremble, so she sat down and accepted a cup of very strong tea, while he telephoned the police. Then, her composure regained, she was ready to set off with the porter's assistance to search for any intruders who might still be lurking in her flat.

They went through the rooms, being careful to touch nothing, as they did not want to hinder the police in their search for fingerprints. The chaos was inconceivable. She had lived in the flat for thirty years and was a veritable magpie at hoarding; and it seemed as though everything she possessed had been tossed out and turned over and over. At least sorting out the things she should have discarded years ago was now being made easier for her. Then a police inspector arrived with a constable and she told them of her discovery of the ransacked flat. The inspector began to look for fingerprints, while the constable checked that the front door locks had not been forced, thereby proving that the burglars had either used skeleton keys or entered over the balcony. There was no trace of fingerprints, but the inspector found a dirty red bundle that con-

tained jewellery which the old lady said was not hers. So their entry into this flat was apparent but first they had to find the burglars' job and they must have

n disturbed. The inspector then asked the old lady to try to check what was missing by the next day and advised her not to stay alone in the flat for a few nights. The old lady though she was a fussy creature, but since the porter agreed with him, she rang up her daughter and asked for her help in what she described as a little spot of bother.

参考译文

老妇人回到了她居住的公寓楼，心里很高兴。去商店买东西把她搞得筋疲力尽；在回家的路上，她每走一步，就感到手里的篮子又重了一点。她乘上电梯后，只想着午餐和好好休息一下。但她到自己的楼层走出电梯后，就把这两件事忘了个干净，因为她突然发现她家的大门开着。她心想明天上午一定要好好训斥那个干家务的帮手，她竟如此疏忽大意。但突然记起来了，帮手是在她出去买东西之前走的，她还记得曾用了两把钥匙把大门锁上了。她慢慢地走进前厅，立即发现所有的房门都敞开着，而她记得在出门买东西前，她按老规矩是把房门一一锁上的。她往起居室里看去，写字台边一片狼籍。事情很清楚，在她外出时，窃贼曾闯进家门。她第一个条件反射是各个房间搜寻一下窃贼，但转念一想，像她这个年纪，最好找个人一起去。于是她到地下室去找看门的人。这时她两腿累得开始发抖，于是坐了下来，喝了一杯浓茶。与此同时，看门的人给警察挂了电话。此刻老妇人也镇定了下来，准备在看门人的协助下搜寻可能仍躲藏在她房里的窃贼。

他俩搜遍这每一个房间，小心翼翼地不接触任何东西，因为他们怕妨碍警察寻找指纹。房间里的混乱状况是无法想像的。老妇人在这套公寓里住了 30 年，她又是个名副其实的收藏家。看来她的每一件东西都被翻了出来，并且被里里外外看了遍。这样一来，她倒是容易将那些几年前就该扔掉的东西找出来了。过了一会，一位巡官带着一名警察来了。她向他们讲述了发现公寓遭劫的经过。巡官开始搜寻指纹，警察经检查发现大门锁头并无撬过的迹象。由此可以证明，窃贼或者是用万能钥匙，或者是翻越阳台进来的。巡官没有发现指纹，却发现了一个装有珠宝的、肮脏的红包袱。老妇人说那不是她的。很明显，闯进这套公寓的窃贼那天并不是首次作案，而且他一定受了惊吓。巡官请老妇人在次日之前设法查清丢了些什么，并劝她几夜之内不要独自一人在公寓过夜。老妇人觉得巡官大惊小怪，但既然看门人也同意他的意见，她只得打电话向女儿求援，说她碰到了一点小麻烦。

【课文讲解】

A spot of bother: A bit of bother

L58-01 end 9'11"

L58-02 begin 12'29"

背熟: **Her shopping had tired her and her basket had grown heavier with every step of the way home.**

exhausted / tired out / worn out / wear out

Her basket had grown heavier and heavier
Eg: Having a lesson tired me and my school bag had grown heavier with every step of the way home.

背熟: **In the lift her thoughts were on lunch and a good rest**

in the lift she thought about her lunch and a good rest.

her thoughts 作主语

thoughts ... on

Eg: I didn't notice you at that time because my thoughts were on the textbook.

Your thoughts must be on them.

背熟: **but when she got out at her own floor, both were forgotten in her sudden discovery that her front door was open.**

in the belief that (L53)

Public officials can make mistakes or act over-zealously in the belief that they are serving the public.

for such a monstrous piece of negligence

negligence 不可数名词

a piece of negligence

when: at the moment

背熟: **following her regular practice she had shut them before going out.**

confusion: chaos

背熟: **It was as clear as daylight**

Eg: He is as stubborn as a mule.

You are as poor as a church mouse.

obviously

背熟: **Her first impulse was to go round all the rooms looking for the thieves**

regain: recover 恢复

L58-02 end 12'29"

L58-03 begin 11'38"

she was ready to set off to search for any intruders who might still be lurking in her flat with the porter's assistance.

go through: search

as though : as if

背熟: **At least sorting out the things she**

should have discarded years ago was now being made easier for her.

forced: broken

背熟: there was no trace of sth.

bundle: parcel

a bundle of hay

entry WTO

Lesson59 begin 1:59:27 Lesson59A begin 32:39 L59-01 begin 10'38"

§ **Lesson 59 Collecting 收藏**

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

●amass v. 积聚

●indiscriminate adj. 不加选择的

●clutter n. 一堆杂物

●string n. 细线

●requisite n. 必需品

●mania n. 癖好

●sketch n. 草图, 图样

●remote adj. (机会, 可能性) 少的, 小的

●strong-minded adj. 意志坚强的

●relaxation n. 休息, 娱乐

●verify v. 查证, 核实

●bearing n. 关系, 联系

●like-minded adj. 志趣相投的

●specimen n. 标本

●constructively adv. 有益的, 积极的

●contented adj. 心满意足的

●boredom n. 烦恼, 无聊

给大家 **5** 分钟的时间复读课文, 挑选出 **collect** 的同义词

Paragraph 1

amass

l.7 accumulate

collected

n.

collecting

treasure

l.20 collection

l.22 addition

l.23 hobby

l.25 the latest find

◆amass v. 积聚

gather: (小型)聚集

assemble: (大型)集会

amass: (书面化)积聚, 所积累的东西有很高的价值

accumulate

collect: 收藏

collect stamps

collect matchboxes

collect tax

apparently: obviously

creature: living thing

in her sudden discovery that...

in the belief that

本课比较简单, 可作为练习口语的材料, 用自己的话去复述这篇文章。

L58-03 end 11'38" Lesson58 end 33:13

collect parcel

store / hold up: 大量贮藏

◆◆indiscriminate adj. 不加选择的

Eg: He is indiscriminate in making friends.

uncritical 不加以评判的

critical :批评的, 批判的

L59-01 end 10'38" (60-01)

L59-02 begin 10'56"

Eg: He is uncritical while going shopping.

unselective 不加以选择的

haphazard adj. 任意的, 无计划的

make haphazard remarks 妄加评论, 随口乱说

random adj. & n. 任意的, 胡乱的

at random

Eg: This is my random guess.

casual adj. 随便的(漫不经心)

casually adv.

undiscriminating adj. 不加以区别的

discriminate: 加以选择

Read: undiscriminating; unselective;

uncritical; haphazard; random; casual; at

random; desultory

desultory : 随意的(无条理)

Eg: The careful study of a few books is better than the desultory reading of many.

◆clutter n. 一堆杂物

piles of junk / clutter litter that floor

◆string n. 细线

string : 连锁的

a string of: 一串

◆requisite n. 必需品

living requisite

necessity: 生活必需品, 必不可少的因素

◆◆mania n. 癖好

have a mania for doing sth.: 有做某事的癖好(狂热)

L59-02 end 10'56"

L59-03 begin 11'11"

craze: 狂热, 时尚
be crazy about
hobby: 很重视 (不会忽略)
mania: 癖好 (老年人)
desire: n. 做某事的强烈愿望
have desire for (to do) sth.
madness n. 疯狂的行为
be mad about
insanity n. 疯狂 (=madness)
insane adj. 失支理智的
Eg: His insanity is unexpected.

◆sketch n. 草图, 图样
◆remote adj. (机会, 可能性) 少的, 小的
slight
possibility / chance
Eg: The chances are remote that he will pass his examination.
good
The chances that he will leave the hospital for new year celebration are good.

◆strong-minded adj. 意志坚强的
◆relaxation n. 休息, 娱乐
entertainment

◆◆◆verify vt. 查证, 核实
Eg: You must verify the numbers / statistics.
verify the facts
certify: 证明, 保证
confirm: 证实
Eg: My boss can confirm that I was here at that time.
document n. 文件; v. 用文件证明
Eg: Please document what you said just now.
I don't believe you. I only believe in document.
substantiate: 证明 (某事有根据)

L59-03 end 11'11"

Lesson59A end 32:39

Lesson59B begin 33:48

L59-04 begin 11'49"

Eg: I can substantiate it.
validate: 使生效, 确认, 证实
valid: 有效的
Eg: We must validate the law.
When we use a new teaching method, we must validate it at first.
prove: 证明证实是否怎样
Read: verify / certify / confirm / document / validate / prove / substantiate
check
Eg: Please check the figures / statistics.

◆bearing n. 关系, 联系
relation / connection
association: 联想

◆like-minded adj. 志趣相投的
Eg: We'd like to make friends with like-minded people.

◆specimen n. 标本
◆constructively adv. 有益的, 积极的
◆◆◆contented adj. 心满意足的
pleased / satisfied / delighted
Eg: Robert was not only pleased with my arrival but also delighted with my little gift.
be contented with sth. / sb.

◆boredom n. 烦恼, 无聊
monotonous / tedious / tired / tiresome / bored

【Text】

Lesson 59 Collecting 收藏

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

听录音, 然后回答以下问题。

What in particular does a person gain when he or she becomes a serious collector?

People tend to amass possessions, sometimes without being aware of doing so. Indeed they can have a delightful surprise when they find something useful which they did not know they owned. Those who never have to move house become indiscriminate collectors of what can only be described as clutter. They leave unwanted objects in drawers, cupboards and attics for years, in the belief that they may one day need just those very things. As they grow old, people also accumulate belongings for two other reasons, lack of physical and mental energy, both of which are essential in turning out and throwing away, and sentiment. Things owned for a long time are full associations with the past, perhaps with relatives who are dead, and so they gradually acquire a value beyond their true worth.

Some things are collected deliberately in the home in an attempt to avoid waste. Among these I would list string and brown paper, kept by thrifty people when a parcel has been opened, to save

buying these two requisites. Collecting small items can easily become a mania. I know someone who always cuts sketches out from newspapers of model clothes that she would like to buy if she had the money. As she is not rich, the chances that she will ever be able to afford such purchases are remote; but she is never sufficiently strong-minded to be able to stop the practice. It is a harmless bait, but it litters up her desk to such an extent that every time she opens it, loose bits of paper fall out in every direction.

20 Collecting as a serious hobby is quite different and has many advantages. It provides relaxation for leisure hours, as just looking at one's treasures is always a joy. One does not have to go outside for amusement, since the collection is housed at home. Whatever it consists of, stamps, records, 25 first editions of books, china, glass, antique furniture, pictures, model cars, stuffed birds, toy animals, there is always something to do in connection with it, from finding the right place for the latest addition, to verifying facts in reference books. This hobby educates one not only in the chosen subject, but also in general matters which have some 30 bearing on it. There are also other benefits. One wants to meet like-minded collectors, to get advice, to compare notes, to exchange articles, to show off the latest find. So one's circle of friends grows. Soon the hobby leads to travel, perhaps to a meeting in another town, possibly a trip abroad in search of a rare specimen, for collectors are not confined to any one country. Over the years, one may well become an authority on one's hobby and will very probably be asked to give informal talks to little gatherings and then, if successful, to larger audiences. In this way self-confidence grows, first from mastering a subject, then from being able to take about it. Collecting, by occupying spare time so constructively, makes a person contented, with no time for boredom.

参考译文

人们喜欢收藏东西，有时并没有意识到自己这样做。确实，一旦无意之中从自己的收藏品中找到某件有用的东西时，可以给人一种惊喜的感觉。那些从来不必搬家的人们成了一种无所不容的收藏家。他们专门收藏那些只能被称作杂货的东西。他们在抽屉里，碗柜中、阁楼上堆放着一些不用的东西，一放就是好几年，相信总有一天需要的正好是那些东西。人们年老之后也喜欢收藏东西，不过是出于两个不同的原因：一是体力，精力均告不佳，这二者是清除无用的东西必不可少的因素；另一原因是感情因素。东西搁得时间久了，便会充满着与过去岁月的联系，比方说与死去的亲戚有关。因此这些东西慢慢获得了一种超出它本身的价值。

居家度日，有目的地收藏某些东西是为了防止浪费。这些东西中我想举出线绳和包装纸为例。节俭的人们打开包裹后便把这两样必备的东西收藏起来。省得日后去买。收集小玩艺儿很容易着迷。我认识一个人，她总喜欢从报纸上剪下流行服装的图样，等以后有钱时去买服装。由于她并不富裕，她买得起这些服装的可能性十分渺茫。但她又缺乏足够坚强的意志把这一收集活动停下来。这种习惯无害，只把写字台里堆得满满当当，以致每次打开抽屉总能带出许多纸片四处飞扬。

作为一种严肃的业余爱好的收藏活动完全是另外一回事，它具有许多益处。它可以使人在闲暇中得到休息，因为欣赏自己收藏的珍品总会充满了乐趣。人们不必走到户外去寻求娱乐，因为收藏品都是存放在家中。不管收藏品是什么，邮票、唱片、头版书籍、瓷器、玻璃杯、老式家具、绘画、模型汽车、鸟类标本，还是玩具动物，都为新增添的收藏品寻找摆放位置到核对参考书中的事实，总归有事可做。这种爱好不仅能使人从选择的专题中受到教育，而且也能从与之有关的一般事物中获得长进。除此之外，还有其他的益处。收藏者要会见情趣相投的收藏者，以获取教益，交流经验、交换收藏品，炫耀自己的最新收藏。朋友的圈子就这样不断扩大。用不了多久，有这种爱好的人便开始旅行，也许是去另一个城市参加会议，也可能是出国寻找一件珍品，因为收藏家是不分国籍的。一人积了多年经验会成为自己这种爱好的权威，很可能应邀在小型集会上作非正式的讲话。如果讲得好，可能向更多人发表演说。这样，你自信心不断增强，先是因为掌握一门学问，接下来是因为能够就此发表见解。收藏活动通过富有建设性地利用业余时间使人感到心满意足，不再有无聊之日。

【课文讲解】

注意写作风格，与 L41 和 L43 课完全不一样。

对比：分析事物之间的差异（通过事物比事物法）

背熟：People tend to amass possessions, sometimes without being aware of doing so. amass possession

tend to: 喜欢，有..... 倾向

unaware of doing so

背熟：Things owned for a long time are full associations with the past, perhaps with relatives who are dead, and so they gradually acquire a value beyond their true worth.

possession 财产，所有物 belongings

People tend to amass valuable items.

L59-04 end 11'49"

L59-05 begin 11'34"

because they gradually acquire a value beyond their true worth.

Eg: I can not estimate the true value of my photographs in terms of money.

Some things are collected deliberately in the home in an attempt to avoid waste.

It is a harmless bait, but it litters up her desk to such an extent that every time she opens it, loose bits of paper fall out in every direction.

Collecting as a mania is a harmless habit

has many advantages / harmless habit

Collecting, by occupying spare time so constructively, makes a person contented, with no time for boredom.

Collecting as a serious hobby

回到第一自然段第 2 句

have a delightful surprise

I am a collector of what can be described as valuable stamps.

I know a person of what can be described as bookworm.

in the belief that == believe in
in the thought that == think in

L59-05 end 11'34"

L59-06 begin 10'32"

Eg: I did so in the belief that you could help me.

I said so in the thought that I wouldn't hurt you.

under the impression that

Eg: I am under the impression that the diamonds are really beautiful.

very: 加强语气

at exactly that moment == at that very moment

belongings

Eg: I failed my examination for two reasons, lack of hard work, being late for the examination.

sentiment: 情感

sentimental 多愁善感的

deliberately

背熟: Some things are collected deliberately in the home in an attempt to avoid waste.

in an attempt to do sth.: 竭尽全力做某事

Eg: He rarely goes shopping in an attempt to save up.

thrifty == economical

save doing sth. 免掉做某事的麻烦

save the trouble of doing sth.

L59-06 end 10'32"

Lesson59B end 33:48

Lesson59C begin 52:59

L59-07 begin 10'28"

clothes--> purchase

sufficiently == enough 放在所修饰的 adj. 前

practice: 个人的习惯做法 == mania == habit

every time == whenever

背熟: Collecting as a serious hobby is quite different and has many advantages. It provides relaxation for leisure hours, as just looking at one's treasures is always a joy.

collection: 强调收藏品

collecting: 强调的是动作

Collecting stamps is my favourite hobby.

illustrate collecting

as: 就象什么一样

relaxation == entertainment: 休息, 娱乐

treasures == valuable collection

amusement == relaxation

is housed at home

whatever it consist of == whatever it is made up of

consist of == be made up of 由.....组成

comprise, constitute

背熟: there is always something to do in connection with it, (it 指 collection)

From to 从什么到什么

L59-07 end 10'28"

L59-08 begin 10'25"

背熟: **This hobby educates one not only in the chosen subject, but also in general matters which have some bearing on it.**
not only... but also ...

have bearing on sth. 与什么密切相关
relation to, be related to, have relation to
advantage, privilege, benefit

notes == collection
find == collection

背熟: So one's circle of friends grows.

in search of == for
be confined to: 限定在什么区域范围之内
Eg: He is confined to the box.
We are confined to three meals.

over the years == as time goes on
well 用来加强语气
背熟: In this way self-confidence grows.

Collecting, by occupying spare time so constructively, makes a person contented, with no time for boredom.

背熟: **Collecting, by occupying spare time so constructively, makes a person contented, with no time for boredom.**

L59 注意每一段的段首和段尾, 通过对比来表述了两种不同的收藏。

L59-08 end 10'25"

L59-09 begin 13'42"

make as if to do == pretend to do: 装着要做某事的样子

Eg: He made as if to help me.

make believe: 假装

Eg: He made believe that he knew everything about the secret.

make it : 说定了, 成功了

Eg: He thought he would arrive here at 8 o'clock and he made it

make up to : 奉承, 献媚 kiss sb's boots, flatter

make a clean breast of == confess completely: 完全坦白

Eg: He made a clean breast of what he did to the girl.

【Vocabulary】P266

Choose five of the following words and phrases and give for each another word or phrase of similar meaning to that in which

the word or phrase is used in the passage:
amass (l.1); being aware (l.1); move house (l.4); attics (l.6); gradually acquire (l.10); thrifty (l.12); in very direction (l.17)

amass == accumulate

being aware == conscious

move house 搬家 move from our house to new one

attic: 阁楼 a small room directory below the roof of the building

gradually acquire == get / gain / obtain step by step 渐渐获得

thrifty == frugal == economical == not wasteful

in every directions == everywhere

【Multiple choice questions】

Comprehension

1 What differentiates the indiscriminate collector from the serious one?

a. What he collects is only of personal rather than communal interest.

b. He lacks the physical and mental energy to go out and about.

c. His possessions are varied but over the years they gain in value.

d. He confines his collection to the home and therefore does not travel.

differentiate: 与.....不同, 区别是什么

communal: 共同的, 普遍的

2. The author's friend is typical of the indiscriminate collector in that ____.

a. she keeps newspapers in the hope that one day they may come in useful

b. she collects sketches of clothes to save herself the cost of buying them

c. she is too narrow-minded to be able to stop a sentimental practice

d. she never gets round to sorting out the clutter she has accumulated

in that == because

get round to do: 抽时间来做某事

3 The serious collector can spend his leisure time ____.

a. at home, as his collection is sufficient entertainment in itself

b. at the same time as looking joyfully at his treasures

c. educating himself and others by verifying facts in reference books

d. occupying himself by constructing a house for his collection

sufficient == ample == enough == adequate

Structure

4 _____ belongings people accumulate. There are two reasons for this...(II.7-9)

- a. As they got older more
In getting older there are more
c. Only when they get older, do more
The older they get the more

5 _____ in the home in an attempt to avoid waste.(I.II)

- a. People deliberately collect
deliberately collect some things
c. People collect deliberately
collect deliberately some things

deliberately 应放在动词之前或宾语之后

6 ----but it litters up her desk _____ that every time she opens it...(II.16-17)

- a. so far
b. as long as
c. in as much
d. so much

7 Something to do, from finding the right place _____ the latest addition to...(II.21-22)

- a. where he puts
b. in order to put
c. for to put
d. to put

为何不能选 a. 没有说明谁放置

不定式 to 做定语，所强调的内容是将要发生的

Eg: I want to get a pen to write with.

8 ----and then,if _____ successful,to larger audiences.(II.28-29)

- a. they will be
b. one is
c. it has been
d. they were

如果表示任意的一个人，采用的最好的主语是 one.

Vocabulary

9 Some things are collected _____ in the home so as to avoid waste.(I.II)

- a. systematically
b. intentionally
c. purposefully
d. organizationally

L59-09 end 13'42"

L59-10 begin 13'36"

deliberately: 深思熟虑地，精心考虑地

systematically: 有体系地

intentionally: 有意图地，经过考虑地，故意地

intend to do / intention / have intention to do / intentionally

purposely == on purpose : 有目的地

organizationally: 有组织地

10 Collecting as a serious hobby is _____ and has many advantages.(I.I8)

- a. altogether separate
b. rather unlike

Lesson60 1:18:41 Lesson60A 36:00

c. fairly diverse d. very distinguished

unlike: 强调事物的外在不同

diverse: 截然相反的

distinguished: (人) 杰出的，出色的，著名的

separate adj. 分开的

11 ----the right place for the latest addition to _____ facts in reference books.(II.22-23)

- a. insuring
b. certifying
c. identifying
d. checking

原文用 verify

certify / prove / check (核对)

certify: 证明，保证

identify: 确立，确立身份

12 ----but also in general matters which _____. (II.23-24)

- a. stand up to it
b. relate to it
c. bear it out
d. carry it off

have some bearing on it == have connection with it == be related to it : 与之相关的

stand up to it 经得起考验

bear out: 证明，证实

carry off: 成功完成 (应付)

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. A 2. D 3. A 4. D 5. B 6. C
7. C 8. B 9. B 10. A 11. D 12. B

如何用另一种写作方式来组织作文:

论说文 (说明文和议论文的结合): 说明一种观点，然后用例证说服他人接受你的观点

论说文常用的风格:

1. 阐述性的: 针对某一问题下面阐述作者的观点，主要是针对某一事物或观点的必要性、重要性、正确性或优越性，危害性或内在实质进行阐述，只需要表明观点，申述理由即可: We need to broaden our English knowledge.

2. 比较性的: 主要是比较两种或两种以上事物各自的优点、缺点，来论证一种比另一种更好，一般来讲写作方式有整体比较 (事物比事物)，逐项比较 (事实比事实): How to solve the problem of heavy traffic. 主要是在比较 advantage / disadvantage

L59-10 end 13'36"

L59-11 begin 4'58"

Lesson 45 ---- 阐述性的论说文

Lesson 41 ---- 比较性的论说文

L59-11 end 4'58" Lesson59C end 52:59 Lesson59 end 1:59:27 L60-01 begin 7'45"

§ Lesson 60 **Too early and too late** 太早和太晚

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

- punctuality n. 准时
- rural adv. 农村的
- disregard v. 不顾，无视
- intellectual n. 知识分子
- abstruse adj. 深奥的
- coordinate v. 协调
- reproach v. 责备
- puncture v. 刺破（轮胎）
- diversion n. 改道，绕道
- trial n. 讨厌的事，人
- fraction n. 很小一点儿
- flourish n. 挥舞（打手劳）
- microscopic adj. 微小的
- adamant adj. 坚定的，不动摇的

◆punctuality n. 准时
punctual: adj. 守时
be punctual to the minute

◆rural adv. 农村的
urban adj. 城市的

◆disregard v. 不顾，无视
disregard sth
disregard == ignore
pay no attention to
take no notice of
in disregard of
treat sb. with disregard: 怠慢某人

◆intellectual n. 知识分子

◆abstruse adj. 深奥的
abstract: 抽象的
Eg: I am not good at mathematics, because the subject is not only abstract but also abstruse.

◆◆coordinate v. 协调
Eg: Our efforts need to be further coordinated for higher efficiency.

efficiency: == be efficient: 效率

Eg: If you want to complete an ideal job with your classmates as quickly as possible, I think you must coordinate everything as much as you can.

coordinate work: 协调工作

arrange: 安排

Eg: Who will arrange the party?

How can I arrange the paragraph?

organize: 组织

Eg: It's your duty to organize our meeting.

harmonize: vt.& n. 协调，使调和，配和音

L60-01 end 7'45"

L60-02 begin 13'35"

Eg: The music is harmonized.
We have to harmonize our work.

◆reproach v. 责备
blame / scold / reprehend
Eg: Don't reproach / blame him for such a little thing.
blame sb. for sth.
reproach n.

Beyond reproach 无可指责
Beyond doubt: 毫无疑问
Beyond understanding 无法理解
Beyond description 无法描述
Eg: The problem is beyond / above me. 这个问题难倒了我

◆puncture v. 刺破（轮胎）
◆diversion n. 改道，绕道
◆trial n. 讨厌的事，人
nuisance
trial: 审讯，审判，尝试，实验
Eg: After his trial, he set out with his new plane. 试飞之后，他开着飞机出发了。

◆fraction n. 很小一点儿
◆flourish n. 挥舞（打手势）
gesticulate v. 打手势
◆microscopic adj. 微小的
microphone: 麦克风
microfilm: 微型胶卷
microwave oven: 微波炉

◆◆◆adamant adj. 坚定的，不动摇的
steady: 稳定的

Eg: He is living a steady life.
strong-minded / firm / stable
obstinate / stubborn
stable: (人)坚定的

Eg: If you are adamant, nothing is difficult for you to study English.

If you are adamant, you never give up easily.

give up == yield == surrender: 放弃，投降
yielding / surrendering

unyielding / unsundering == adamant

Eg: He is (so) adamant (as) to stick to his stupid idea.

All the students here are adamant

enough to study English hard.

【Text】

Lesson 60 Too early and too late 太早和太晚

Listen to the tape then answer the question below.

听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Why did the young girl miss the train?

5

10

15

20

25

Punctuality is a necessary habit in all public affairs in civilized society. Without it, nothing could ever be brought to a conclusion; everything would be in state of chaos. Only in a sparsely-populated rural community is it possible to disregard it. In ordinary living, there can be some tolerance of unpunctuality. The intellectual, who is working on some abstruse problem, has everything coordinated and organized for the matter in hand. He is therefore forgiven if late for a dinner party. But people are often reproached for unpunctuality when their only fault is cutting things fine. It is hard for energetic, quick-minded people to waste time, so they are often tempted to finish a job before setting out to keep an appointment. If no accidents occur on the way, like punctured tires, diversions of traffic, sudden descent of fog, they will be on time. They are often more industrious, useful citizens than those who are never late. The over-punctual can be as much a trial to others as the unpunctual. The guest who arrives half an hour too soon is the greatest nuisance. Some friends of my family had this irritating habit. The only thing to do was ask them to come half an hour later than the other guests. Then they arrived just when we wanted them.

If you are citing a train, it is always better to be comfortably early than even a fraction of a minute too late. Although being early may mean wasting a little time, this will be less than if you miss the train and have to wait an hour or more for the next one; and you avoid the frustration of arriving at the very moment when the train is drawing out of the station and being unable to get on it. An even harder situation is to be on the platform in good time for a train and still to see it go off without you. Such an experience befell a certain young girl the first time she was traveling alone.

She entered the station twenty minutes before the train was due, since her parents had impressed upon her that it would be unforgivable to miss it and cause the friends with whom she was going to stay to make two journeys to meet her. She gave her luggage to a porter and showed him her ticket. To her horror he said that she was two hours too soon. She felt in her handbag for the piece of paper on which her father had written down all the details of the journey and gave it to the porter. He agreed that a train did come into the station at the time on the paper and that it did stop, but only to take on mail, not passengers. The girl asked to see a timetable, feeling sure

30

that her father could not have made such a mistake. The porter went to fetch one and arrive back with the station master, who produced it with a flourish and pointed out a microscopic 'o' beside the time of the arrival of the train at his station; this little 'o' indicated that the train only stopped for mail. Just as that moment the train came into the station. The girl, tears streaming down her face, begged to be allowed to slip into the guard's van. But the station master was adamant: rules could not be broken and she had to watch that train disappear towards her destination while she was left behind.

参考译文

准时是文明社会中进行一切社交活动时必须养成的习惯。不按时将一事无成，事事都会陷入混乱不堪的境地。只有在人口稀少的农村，才可以忽视准时的习惯。在日常生活中人们可以容忍一定程度的不按时。一个专心钻研某个复杂问题的知识分子，为了搞好手头的研究，要把一切都协调一致，组织周密。因此，他要是赴宴迟到了会得到谅解。但有些人不按时常常因为掐钟点所致，他们常常受到责备，精力充沛、头脑敏捷的人极不愿意浪费时间，因此他们常想做完一件事后再去赴约。要是路上没有发生如爆胎、改道、突然起雾等意外事故，他们决不会迟到。他们与那些从不迟到的人相比，常常是更勤奋有用的公民。早到的人同迟到的人一样令人讨厌。客人提前半小时到达是令人讨厌的。我家有几个朋友就有这令人恼火的习惯。唯一的办法就是请他们比别的客人晚来半小时。这样，他们可以恰好在我们要要求的时间到达。

如果赶火车，早到总比晚到好，哪怕早到一会儿也好。虽然早到可能意味着浪费一点时间，但这比误了火车等上一个多小时坐下班车浪费的时间要少，而且可以避免那种正好在火车驶出站时赶到车站，因上不去车而感到的沮丧。更难堪的情况是虽然及时赶到站台上，却眼睁睁地看着那趟火车启动，把你抛下。一个小姑娘第一次单独出门就碰到了这种情况。

在火车进站 20 分钟前她就进了车站。因为她的父母再三跟她说，如果误了这趟车，她的东道主朋友就得接她两趟，这是不应该的。她把行李交给搬运工并给他看了车票。搬运工说她早到了两个小时，她听后大吃一惊。她从钱包里摸出一张纸条，那上面有她父亲对这次旅行详细说明，她把这张纸条交给了搬运工。搬运工说，正如纸条所说，确有一趟火车在那个时刻到站，但它只停站装邮件，不载旅客。姑娘要求看到时刻表，因为她相信父亲不能把这么大的事弄错。搬运工跑回去取时刻表，同时请来了站长。站长拿着时刻表一挥手，指着那趟列车到站时刻旁边一个很小的圆圈标记。这个标记表示列车是为装邮件而停车。正在这时，火车进站了。女孩泪流满面，央求让她不声不响地到押车员车厢里去算了。但站长态度坚决，规章制度不能破坏，姑娘只得眼看那趟火车消逝在她要去的方向而撇下了她。

【课文讲解】

本篇是议论文，是考试当中常见的一种题型

in civilized society == in modern society

necessary == essential

背熟: **Eg: Mania is a habit we develop for a long time which is harmless.**

bring sth. to conclusion: 得出结论

L60-02 end 13'35"

L60-03 begin 14'41"

背熟: **Without it, nothing could ever be brought to a conclusion; everything would be in state of chaos.**

平行句式，平行结构，同义词的重复，关键词的使用

Everything would be in confusion / a state of chaos / disorder

Eg: Hard work is our necessity to study English.

Without it, we could not get any success.
/ nothing would be complete.

倒装: only 引导介词短语，时间/条件状语放在句首，句子要部分倒装。

背熟: **In ordinary living, there can be some tolerance of unpunctuality.**

in ordinary living == in our daily life

tolerance = the state to tolerate something terrible.

Nothing can be worse than this.

No forms of transport could be faster than airplane.

punctual --> unpunctual; punctuality --> unpunctuality

背熟: **has everything coordinated and organized for the matter in hand.**

keep sb. occupied

cut things fine 把时间安排得不留余地; 掐钟点

do sth. before doing

be tempted to do 特别想要做某事

be eager / anxious / desperate to do

L60-03 end 14'41"

Lesson60A end 36:00

Lesson60B begin 42:40

L60-04 begin 12'30"

prefer to do

would like to do

would rather / sooner do

would prefer to do

Eg: I can't resist the temptation to buy the beautiful dress.

I'm quite / particularly tempted to buy the beautiful dress.

descent: 降临

Eg: Darkness descended very soon.

on time--> keep punctuality

Some people can be forgiven because of what they do even though they are unpunctual.

背熟: **The over-punctual can be as much a trial to others as the unpunctual.**

nuisance --> trial

背熟: **The only thing to do was ask them to come half an hour later than the other guests.**

Eg: The only thing to do is help you in this way.

My job is teaching. / My job is to teach.

如果当不定式做表语，主句结构当中也出现了不定式，做表语的不定式 to 符号应该被略掉，以避免重复。

Eg: The only thing to do is help you in this way.

What I want you to do is help me.

Paragraph 2

What does the writer aim at?

He just wants to illustrate to show that punctuality is quite important.

The over-punctual is as irritating as the unpunctual, but on some occasions, we'd better keep over-punctuality.

L60-04 end 12'30"

L60-05 begin 15'11"

comfortably

mean doing sth.

less

draw up: 停车

draw (pull) out of station: 离站

背熟: you avoid the frustration of arriving at the very moment when the train is drawing out of the station and being unable to get on it.

When we get failures over and over again, we always get the frustration inside our heart.

the frustration inside you can prevent you from doing what you are doing

in good time == on time

befall: sth. bad happen to

Eg: Such a bad experience befall him.

due: 按照计划（安排）而正常进行

Eg: The meeting is due to begin at 9 o'clock tomorrow morning.

The train is due to set off at 3 pm.

What happened to her? What befell her?

impress upon sb. that 再三地叮嘱某人 repeat sth. over and over again
forgive --> forgivable --> unforgivable

make two journeys to meet her: 往返两次做什么

to her horror / terror / fear

on which 定语从句

only, 往往表示很遗憾的心情

Eg: I hurry to the store only to find it was closed.

背熟: The girl asked to see a timetable, feeling sure that her father could not have made such a mistake.

feeling sure that...

be brought up to do / have learnt to do

Eg: We have learnt to expect that trains are punctual.

We have been brought up to eat certain foods.

produce it with flourish

just as: 恰恰在这个时刻

背熟: The girl, tears streaming down her face, begged to be allowed to slip into the guard's van.

背熟: she had to watch that train disappear towards her destination while she was left behind.

disappear towards: 朝着什么什么消失

L60-05 end 15'11"

L60-06 begin 15'07"

Punctuality is a necessary habit, we'd better keep punctuality, but you know, over-punctuality is irritating as unpunctuality, but on some occasions, we'd better be over-punctual.

【Vocabulary】P270

Choose **five** of the following words and phrases and give for each another word or phrase of similar meaning to that in which the word or phrase is used in the passage: a state of chaos (l.3); sparsely-populated (l.3); disregard (l.4); reproached (l.8); setting out (l.10); diversions (l.11); destination (l.33).

a state of chaos == confusion / disorder

sparsely-populated: 人口稀疏的

overpopulated / overpeopled: 人口众多的

sparsely == few people = with not many people

disregard == take no notice of == pay no attention == ignore

reproached == blamed severely == reprehended

setting out: 出发 == setting off == starting
set out / start / set off / make / leave / head for: 出发去往某处

diversion: 绕道 == taking another road to avoid having traffic jam

industrious: 勤劳的 == diligent

destination 目的地 == terminal

【Multiple choice questions】Comprehension

1 The only people who can afford to neglect the exercise of punctuality are _____ .

- a. ordinary citizens who have nothing to do with publicity
- b. people who live in remote places where there are few people
- c. intellectuals who have to deal with unexpected problems
- d. people who are forced to work overtime in order to finish a job.

neglect == disregard == ignore

sparsely populated, few people

Only in a sparsely-populated rural community is it possible to disregard punctuality.

2 People who cut things fine are usually _____ .

- a. delayed by accidents on the roads
- b. energetic, quick-minded people

c. no more irritating than the over-punctual
d. reproached for being late for appointments
cut things fine / cutted fine / cut time fine

3 The girl was very upset when the train came into the station because _____.
a. her parents would not forgive her for missing it
b. she had two hours to wait before the next train arrived
c. she was going to have to make a second journey to reach her destination
d. the station master insisted that passengers were not allowed on to it

Structure

4 Without it, it would be impossible _____ to a conclusion. (I.2)
a. to have ever brought anything b. ever to bring anything
c. to bring nothing ever d. nothing to be brought ever

it is / will be / would be possible for sb. to do sth.

5 The time you _____ waste through being early will be less than ... (I.17)
a. must b. might c. should d. can
through: 通过
Eg: Although being early may mean wasting a little time

6 If you are catching a train, you _____ comfortably early than ... (II.16-17)
a. are better being b. would be better
c. had better be d. will be better to be

had better, 上级对下级或有经验的人对没有经验的人

7 ---- the frustration of arriving _____ the train is drawing out ... (II.18-19)
a. just as b. immediately that c. in a while d. as soon as

8 And she had to watch that train disappear towards her destination _____. (I.33)
a. and left her behind b. and leave behind her
c. leaving her behind d. while it left behind her

Vocabulary

9 In ordinary living, unpunctuality can be tolerated _____ ... (II.4-5)
a. out of kindness b. on occasion c. to a certain extent d. in varying degrees
in varying degrees: 在不同的程度上 (不断变化)

10 The over-punctual can be just as _____ to others as the unpunctual. (I.12)
a. detestable b. trying c. provident
d. inconsiderate
trial: 讨厌的事
trying adj. 气人的
detestable: 可恨的, 可憎的
provident: 有先见之明的, 有深谋远虑的
considerate == thoughtful: 体贴的,
inconsiderate: 没有慎重考虑的, 不周到的

11 ---- since her parents had _____ that it would be unforgivable ... (II.22-23)
a. stressed the point b. given the impression
c. marked it down d. given notice
impress upon: 再三嘱托
stress the point
give the impression: 给某人以印象

12 _____ the train came into the station. (I.31)
a. Only then b. Instantly c. At that very moment
d. Precisely

【Key to Multiple choice questions】

1. B 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. B 6. C
7. A 8. C 9. C 10. B 11. A 12. C

L60-06 end 15'07" Lesson60B end 42:40 Lesson60 end 1:18:41